



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

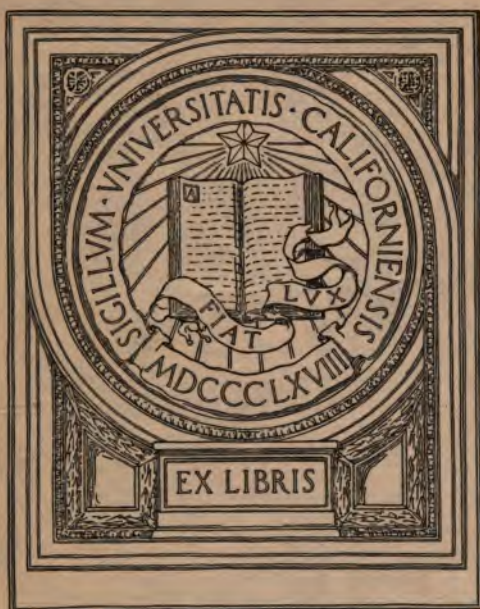
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

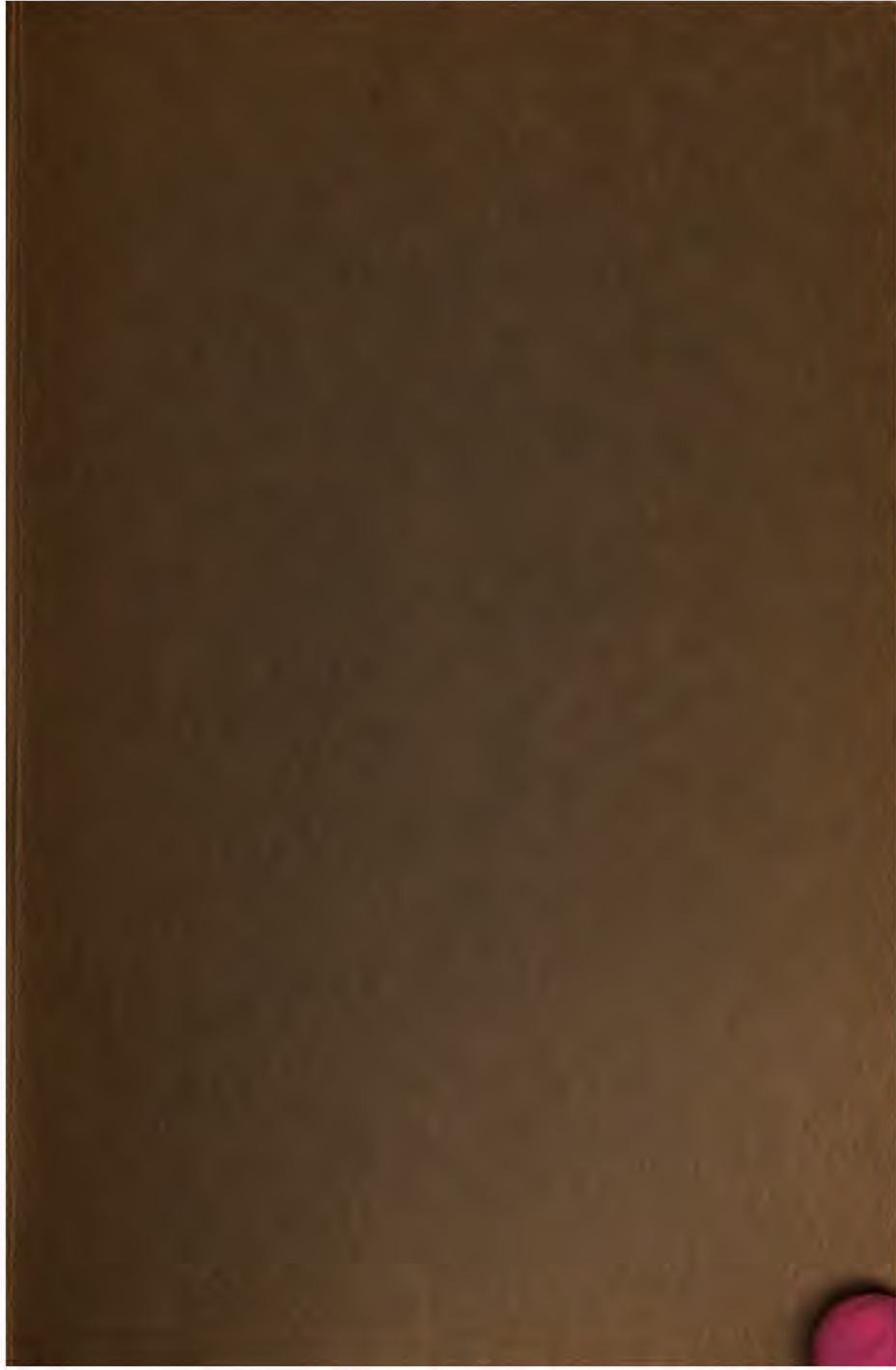


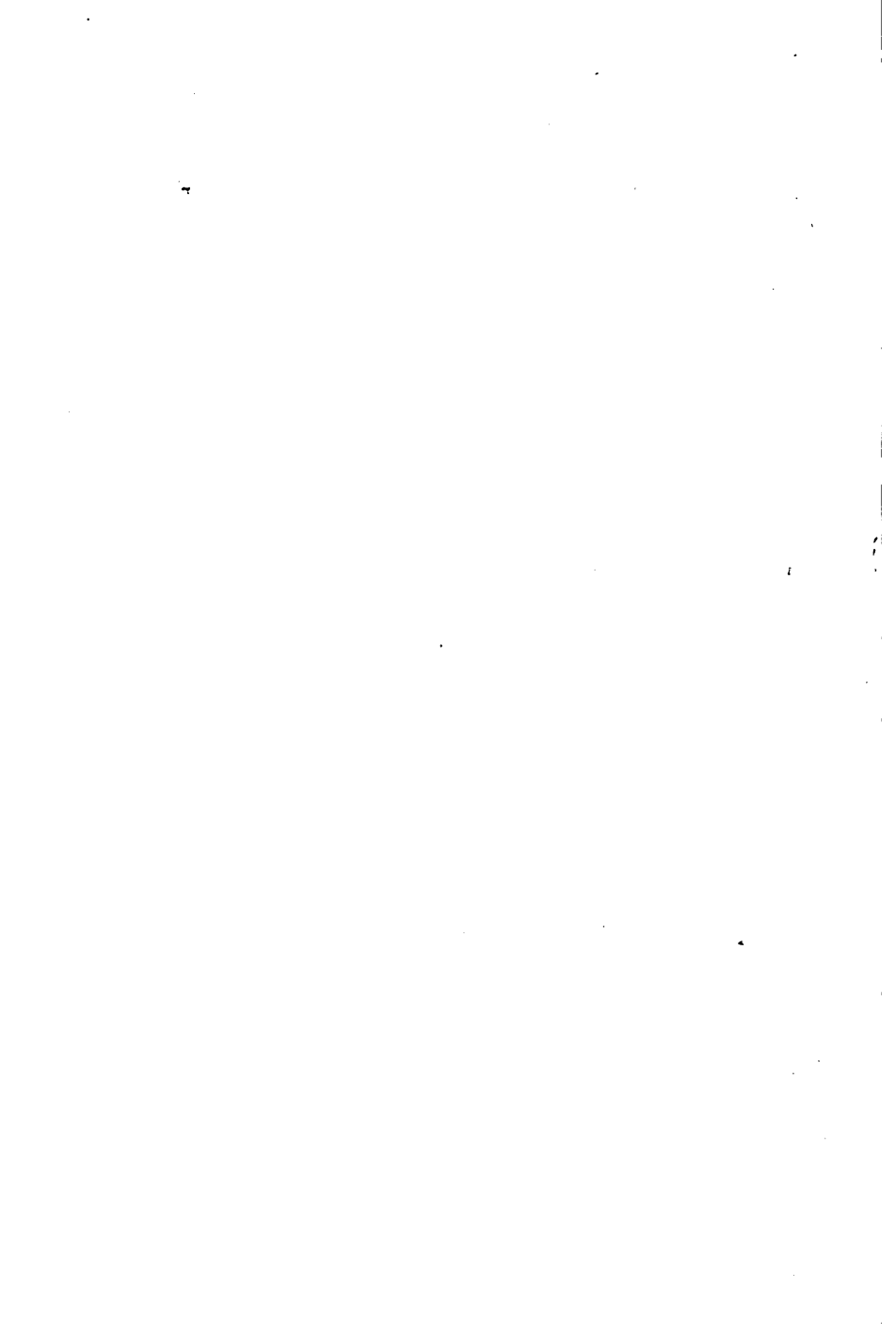
Б 14 437



EX LIBRIS

62





THE SPANISH LANGUAGE

AS NOW SPOKEN AND WRITTEN

By the same Author

**A NEW SPANISH READER
ON MODERN LINES**

Crown 8vo, cloth boards, 2s. 6d. net

BLACKIE & SON, LTD., LONDON, GLASGOW, BOMBAY

•THE SPANISH LANGUAGE•

AS NOW SPOKEN AND WRITTEN

A COMPLETE THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL
GRAMMAR DESIGNED FOR EVERY CLASS OF
LEARNER • WITH COPIOUS EXAMPLES AND
EXERCISES

BY *R. D. Monteverde*

R. D. MONTEVERDE, B.A.(Madrid)

Professor and Lecturer in Spanish in Birkbeck College, London;
and the Municipal Technical Institute, West Ham; Examiner and
Lecturer for the London County Council; Sworn Translator
Spanish Legal Expert, &c.

BLACKIE AND SON LIMITED

50 OLD BAILEY LONDON

GLASGOW AND BOMBAY

1913

786
M 781
2

NO. 1111
CHURCH

PREFACE

The present work is submitted to the public as the result of the almost unremitting labour of many years, and of long experience in teaching Spanish.

Its author, a native of Spain, had not only the advantage of a liberal education in his own country, but by a residence of many years in England has acquired a thoroughly competent knowledge of the English language and of the needs of students of the Spanish tongue.

In every division of the book it has been his aim to minimize, as far as practicable, every obstacle that the Spanish language presents to the student, and to make every difficulty subordinate to rule; thus rendering the acquisition of this rich, expressive, and manly language a pleasing task. The principles of Spanish Grammar will be found clearly expounded and enforced by suitable exercises, each rule and observation being accompanied by appropriate examples. The greater number of the sentences intended to elucidate the peculiar construction and genius of the Spanish language have been selected from the works of the best Castilian writers.

The latest decisions of the Royal Spanish Academy, especially with respect to the new orthography, have been adopted, and it is carefully pointed out wherein the new differs from the old, so that the learner, in reading Spanish works not printed with the new orthography, may know in what the difference consists.

The section on Spanish pronunciation has been care-

fully drawn up, and experience has proved that the system adopted by the author has not been unsuccessful.

He has attempted to employ clearness and simplicity in every section of this Grammar: he has given special attention to the conjugation of the irregular verbs; he has devoted much care to the elucidation of the respective meanings and uses of the Spanish substantive verbs *ser* and *estar*; and has endeavoured to remove some of the obscurity in which the nature and use of the Spanish subjunctive mood, especially in its imperfect tense, have hitherto been more or less involved.

In conclusion, the author invites the attention of the public to the fact that the acquisition of the Spanish language is daily becoming of greater importance: in addition to its now being acknowledged a very essential branch of a mercantile education, it has become almost indispensable for the South American markets; and its interest in a literary point of view is rapidly increasing, in proportion as the works of the more celebrated Spanish writers become better known to the English public, and more justly appreciated.

LONDON, 1912.

CONTENTS

	Page
ORTHOGRAPHY - - - - -	I
THE ARTICLES - - - - -	13
The Definite Article - - - - -	13
The Indefinite Article - - - - -	24
The Neuter Article - - - - -	31
NOUNS - - - - -	34
Number of Nouns - - - - -	34
Augmentative and Diminutive Nouns - - - - -	39
Gender of Nouns - - - - -	40
Case of Nouns - - - - -	49
ADJECTIVES - - - - -	63
Agreement with the Noun - - - - -	63
Position of the Adjective - - - - -	72
Degrees of Comparison - - - - -	78
Numeral Adjectives - - - - -	89
Prepositions employed with Adjectives - - - - -	97
PRONOUNS - - - - -	103
Personal Pronouns - - - - -	103
Possessive Pronouns - - - - -	118
Demonstrative Pronouns - - - - -	125
Relative Pronouns - - - - -	131
Interrogative Pronouns - - - - -	137
Indefinite Pronouns - - - - -	141
VERBS - - - - -	151
Conjugation and Syntax of Verbs - - - - -	151
Use of the Tenses - - - - -	160
Formation and Syntax of Participles - - - - -	177
The Auxiliary Verbs - - - - -	181
The Regular Verbs - - - - -	197

	Page
VERBS (<i>Continued</i>)	
Negative and Interrogative Verbs - - - - -	218
Government of Verbs - - - - -	221
Entirely Irregular Verbs - - - - -	238
Classification of Spanish Verbs - - - - -	266
The Participle - - - - -	274
Verbal Adjectives - - - - -	281
A List of the Irregular Verbs in Alphabetic Order -	284
Additional Notes on the Spanish Verbs - - -	287
I. Negative Form of the Auxiliary <i>Haber</i> , to have	287
II. Negative Form of an Active Verb - - -	290
III. Model of the Conjugation of a Passive Verb -	291
IV. Model of the Conjugation of a Neuter Verb -	293
V. Model of the Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb	295
VI. Model of the Conjugation of an Impersonal Verb	297
VII. Irregular Verbs and their Conjugation - -	299
ADVERBS - - - - -	329
PREPOSITIONS - - - - -	336
CONJUNCTIONS - - - - -	343
Special Meanings of Certain English Conjunctions, with their Corresponding Translations in Spanish - -	343
The Common Conjunctions - - - - -	346
INTERJECTIONS - - - - -	350
APPENDICES - - - - -	354
I. Idiomatical Expressions - - - - -	354
II. Spanish Proverbs - - - - -	356
III. Substantives having different Meanings as they are used with the Masculine or Feminine Article -	357
IV. List of the Abbreviations most commonly used in Spanish - - - - -	359
V. Familiar and Complimentary Phrases - - -	363
VI. Epistolary Correspondence - - - - -	365
VII. Commercial Terms - - - - -	367

SPANISH GRAMMAR

Grammar is the science that teaches the just manner of expressing our ideas, in speaking or writing. It embodies a collection of rules drawn from the established usages of a people speaking a language with propriety and precision. This definition explains the nature of Grammar as applied to all languages in *general*: *particular* Grammar teaches the principles peculiar to any particular language, as the Spanish Language; to obtain a correct knowledge of which we must conform to the rules established by the ROYAL ACADEMY OF MADRID, and to the usages adopted by the best Castilian writers and speakers.

ORTHOGRAPHY

The Spanish Alphabet in many respects corresponds with the English, the names and arrangement of letters being much the same, though the sounds are often quite different. It consists of twenty-eight letters, of which **a, e, i, o, u** are vowels, and the rest are consonants; **y**, however, is generally considered a vowel when it follows another vowel, or stands by itself; and a consonant when preceding a vowel. Every Spanish vowel has a complete and fixed sound as pointed out below. Consonants have no distinct sounds by themselves, but in combination with vowels they form syllables and words. Each of the vowels may constitute a syllable by itself. **Ch** and **ll** are both regarded as simple consonants. There is no **w** in

Spanish; and the letters **k** and **w** occur only in foreign words, as *kan* (khan), *kilometro*, *wiste* (whist); but their place may be taken by **c**, **qu**, and **v**. Ex.: *can*, *quilómetro*, *viste*.

THE SPANISH ALPHABET

Name Sounds of Letters

A	a	ah.	N	n	ainay (enneh).
B	b	bay.	Ñ	ñ	ainyay (ennieh).
C	c	thay.	O	o	oh.
CH	ch	chay.	P	p	pay (peh).
D	d	day (deh).	Q	q	koo.
E	e	ai (eh).	R	r	airay, erreh (soft trill).
F	f	effeh.	RR	rr	airray,erreh (with a strong trill).
G	g	ch ¹ eh.	S	s	aissay (esseh).
H	h	ahchay (ahcheh).	T	t	teh (tay).
I	i	ee (i-latina).	U	u	oo (as in ooze, or in moon).
J	j	chotah. ¹	V	v	veh (vay).
L	l	elleh (ailay).	X	x	aikiss (ehkis).
LL	ll	ailyay (ellieh).	Y	y	yay or ee (i-griega).
M	m	aimay (emmeh)	Z	z	thehtah (thaytah).

There are five vowels in Spanish: three strong, **a**, **e**, **o**; and two weak, **u**, **i**.

A is sounded as **a** in *father*.

E „ „ **e** in *entry*, and as **a** in *fate*.

I „ „ **i** in *fatigue*, *sink*, *ink*.

O „ „ **o** in *for*.

U „ „ **oo** in *cool*, or in *moon*, *rule*, *blue*, *true*.

SOUND AND POWER OF THE LETTERS, ACCORDING TO THE ORTHOGRAPHICAL ALTERATIONS RECENTLY MADE BY THE ROYAL ACADEMY OF MADRID

[An acute accent is placed on the accented syllable of every Spanish word in the Examples, until the pupil arrives at the section where the general rule for accentuation will be given.]

A sounds like **a** in *father*, never like **a** in *man* or *and*.
Ex.: *cárta*, *alabár*, *canásta*, *áma*, *náta*, *sála*.

¹ This *ch* sounds somewhat like *ch* in the Scotch word *loch*.

- B** There is a very slight distinction in Spanish between the sound of this letter and that of the **v**, from the circumstance of both being pronounced much softer than in English. Though in both languages the lips are pressed together in pronouncing the **b**, and the lower lip touches the upper teeth in uttering the **v**, the pressure employed in each letter is much less in Spanish than in English. Ex.: *báta, bébe, bien, boca, bulto, abdicár, obtenér, váso, vino, voto*.

The **b** in Spanish may be placed immediately before **l** and **r**, which can never take place with the **v**. Ex.: *blánco, brotár*. The **b** may also terminate syllables and words, but the **v** never can. Ex.: *ab-sórto, obtenér, Job*. The syllables **am, em, im, om, um** require **b** after them; and **an, en, in, on, un** require **v**. Ex.: *ámbito, embúdo; envidia, invocár*. Some writers omit the **b** after **s** in certain words, and others retain it; thus, *oscúro*, or *obscúro*; *sus-tancia*, or *substancia*, &c.

- C** before **e** and **i** is pronounced like **th** in *theft, thin*. Ex.: *céna, cifra, nación*. And like **k** when it precedes **a, o, u**, or a consonant. Ex.: *cáma, cóla, cúbo, cláro, crítico*. It has likewise the sound of **k** when it comes after a vowel in the same syllable. Ex.: *accedér, técnico*.

- CH** This double consonant now sounds like **ch** in *chess*, as noticed above. Ex.: *chalán, léche, chico, hécho, chupa*. Formerly, in words of Hebrew and Greek origin, it had the sound of **k**, when the vowel following it was marked with the circumflex accent—Ex.: *archângel, chímica*—but this practice is obsolete, and such words are now written *arcángel, química*.

- D** is very differently pronounced in Spanish from what it is in English. The difference of sound between the Spanish and the English **d** arises from the distinct manner in which the two nations employ the organs

of speech in pronouncing it. For instance, it is uttered in English by striking the tongue against the upper gums, whereas Spaniards, in pronouncing the *d*, slightly touch the teeth with the tongue, as the English do in pronouncing the *th* in the words *they*, *though*; and observe carefully, that this sound issues from the chest, and is therefore never like *th* in *thin* or *bath*. This special manner of pronouncing the *d* in Spanish is most striking when it immediately follows a vowel, whether that vowel be in the same syllable or word as itself, or in the one immediately preceding it. Ex.: *tódo*, *amádo*, *adjúnto*, *cuádra*, *la dáma*, *una dósis*. It is pronounced more like the English *d* at the beginning of a sentence, or when immediately preceded by a consonant (whether that consonant be in the same word as itself, or not), except *d* or *z*, on account of the lisping qualities of these two letters. Ex.: *Dichos del mún-do*, *cuérda*, *cálandra*, *los dádos*, *un alférez de la ciudad de Madrid*. At the end of a word, however, it is almost mute, but preserves a little of the lisp—Ex.: *bondád*, *ardíd*—though it is heard more distinctly in the imperative mood. Ex.: *Id á cása*—*Veníd con-migo*. Observe, also, the following examples: *Don Alejándro pasó por Madrid con dos criádos de Don Pédro*. *Déme Ustéd médio duro*. *Me diéron dos docé-nas y dos*.

- E** This vowel, as before remarked, sounds like the English *e* in *ell*, *entry*, and as *a* in *fate*. Ex.: *expelér*, *meréce*, *présénte*, *eleménto*.
- F** sounds as in English. Ex.: *fáma*, *fóro*, *Africáno*, *fláco*, *fárho*, *fórma*.
- G** before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant, and after a vowel, sounds as the English *g* similarly placed. Ex.: *gála*, *góma*, *gústó*, *gráno*, *glándula*, *ignórár*. It has the same sound before the diphthongs *ue*, *ui*, in which the *u* is silent. Ex.: *guér-ra*, *guisár*. But

should the *u* be marked with the diæresis, the *u* must be sounded. Ex.: *agüero*, *argüir*, *vergüenza*. It has a *guttural* sound before *e* and *i*, nearly resembling the aspiration of the English *h* or the *ch* in German and in Scottish words. Ex.: *giro*, *gente*. It is silent when seen before *n*, in words derived from the Greek. Ex.: *gnómon*, *gnómico*; but the *g* in such words is now dropped; as *nómon*, *nómico*.

H is now considered a silent letter by the SPANISH ACADEMY, and is therefore not aspirated, except when it precedes the diphthong *ue*; but even then the aspiration is exceedingly weak. Ex.: *huéso*, *huévo*.

I sounds like the English *i* in *ill*, or first *e* in *even*. Ex.: *irrisible*, *invadir*, *circo*, *ida*, *indivisible*.

J has always a guttural sound, like that of the guttural *g* just described. Ex.: *jabón*, *jamón*, *jergón*, *relój*, *Méjico*, *Quijóte*, *junta*.

K This letter is only retained in a few foreign proper names, and sounds as in English.

L sounds as in English. Ex.: *lavar*, *mal*, *blanco*, *letra*, *lirio*, *lustre*, *lobo*.

LL has a liquid sound, like the English *ll* in *million*, *stallion*, *bullion*, &c. Ex.: *llave*, *llegár*, *cabállo*, *lluvia*, *élla*, *éllo*. The Spanish word *millón* (a million), except as regards accent, sounds very like the English word *million*.

M sounds as in English. Ex.: *áma*, *móda*, *médio*, *mamá*, *mitád*, *alúmno*, *médio*.

N sounds as in English. Ex.: *náda*, *nido*, *nóble*, *núnca*, *núdo*, *pan*, *montón*, *bién*.

Ñ This letter, with a waving line over it, called the *tilde*, has a liquid sound, like the English *n* followed by *y*, being pronounced like *ni* in *onion*, *pinion*, or like the French *gn* in *mignonette*, *campagne*. Ex.: *niña*, *tañér*, *compañía*, *señór*, *doña*, *dueño*.

- O** sounds much the same as the English *o* in *ode*, *obey*.
Ex.: *oponer*, *tómo*, *sóplo*. **O** is always very pure, as in *go*. Ex.: *óigo*, *cómo*, *sólo*, *ótro*; and if it is at the end of a word and the following noun begins with *u*, the *o* is scarcely audible. Ex.: *¿Ha visto Usted?* (Have you seen?)
- P** sounds as in English. Ex.: *pálo*, *ápto*, *plán*, *própio*. Its employment before *h*, which combination represented in Spanish, as it still does in English, the sound of *f*, is obsolete, the *f* being now used instead. Ex.: *philosophia*—now written, *filosofía*.
- Q** before *ue* and *ui* sounds like *k*. Ex.: *quéso*, *quítar*. Before *üe*, *üi*, and *ua*, *uo* it used to sound like the English *q*; but this mode of spelling is laid aside by the SPANISH ACADEMY, and such words as were written *qüestión*, *qüidár*, *quánto*, are now spelled *cuestión*, *cuidár*, *cuánto*; so that the *q* is, by modern writers, only retained before *ue*, *ui*, without the diæresis.
- R** has sometimes a rough and sometimes a smooth sound. It has the rough sound at the beginning of a word—Ex.: *rábia*, *róbo*; when the syllable that precedes it ends in a consonant—Ex.: *hón-ra*, *mal-róto*, *ab-rojár*, *Is-raél*; also when it is doubled—Ex.: *cárro*, *barril*, *ferro-carril*. On all other occasions it has the smooth sound—Ex.: *a-brír*, *cárta*, *arádo*, *pérta*, *pádo*. Observe, however, that even the smooth sound of the Spanish *r* is more distinctly heard than that of the English *r* generally.
- S** always sounds like *s* in the English words *sing*, *us*; but never like *s* in *muse*. Ex.: *sal*, *espáldas*, *sítio*, *subir*, *gástos*.
- T** sounds as in English. Ex.: *tása*, *tréinta*, *atlántico*, *tómo*, *túmbo*.
- U** sounds like *u* in *full*, or *oo* in *ooze* (as already noted). Ex.: *usúra*, *tribu*, *lugúbre*, *urbáno*.

V See the letter B.

X This letter was formerly employed to express two sounds, the one like that of **ks**, the other a guttural sound, like that of the Spanish **j**. This latter sound is now abolished for the **x**, which, since the recent decision of the ROYAL ACADEMY, is only employed to express that of **ks**. Ex.: *axioma*, *éxito*, *fénix*, *extrémo*, *óxido*. Thus, all those words which were formerly written with **x** to indicate the guttural sound, are now written with **j** before **e** and **i**. Ex.: *jabón*, *jicara*, *cajón*, *jámon*, *reloj*, *jóya*, *júlio*. Some modern writers, until the above decision of the ROYAL ACADEMY OF MADRID, discarded the **x** altogether, and used to write such words as *experto*, *extrémo*, with **s**, thus—*esperto*, *estrémo*; but the ACADEMY has properly disapproved of the substitution; first, because it needlessly obscured the etymology of words, and secondly, because words of different meaning are confounded by it, as *expiar*, to expiate, and *espiar*, to spy. Others, in substituting **cs** for **x** before a vowel, as in *acsioma*, *ecsámen*, instead of *axioma*, *exámen*, have introduced a still more vicious innovation; since not only is the original orthography of the words thus disguised, but two letters are employed to represent imperfectly the sound of one.

Y as a vowel, sounds like the Spanish **i**. Ex.: *hay*, *ley*, *voy*. As a consonant it sounds rather stronger than the English **y** in *yes*. Ex.: *yo*, *ya*.

Z always sounds like **th** in the English words *thank*, *bath*; never like **th** in *that*, *bathe*. Ex.: *zagál*, *zorra*, *feliz*, *voz*, *zéta*, *cizáña*.

ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS

There are three of these in Spanish :

1. **El acento** (the acute accent), a dash from the right to the left (') over the vowel on which the stress has to be laid ;

2. **La tilde** (~), a wave line over the ñ ; and

3. **La crema** or **diéresis** (¨), two dots over the ü. ?

The apostrophe is not used in Spanish.

CAPITAL LETTERS

Capital initial letters are used at the beginning of sentences or verse lines, and for proper nouns, titles, and their attributes. All other substantives, and even noun-adjectives expressing nationality, are written with small letters.

A TABLE EXHIBITING ALL THE PECULIAR CHANGES OF SOUND IN SPANISH CONSONANTS, PRODUCED BY THEIR VARIOUS COMBINATIONS WITH VOWELS

ca, co, cu.	In these the c sounds like k .
ce, ci.	And here like th in <i>theme, thin</i> .
ac, ec, ic, oc, uc.	c after any vowel sounds like k .
da, de, di, do, du.	{ d sounds like th in <i>they, bathe</i> ; but never like th in <i>theory, bath</i> .
ad, ed, id, od, ud.	
ga, gue, gui, go, gu.	{ In these the g sounds like the English hard g , and the u is mute before e and i .
gua, güe, güi, guo.	
ge, gi.	Here the g is hard also, but the u is sounded.
ag, eg, ig, og, ug.	In these the g has the <i>guttural</i> sound.
ja, je, ji, jo, ju.	j after a vowel sounds like the English hard g .
lla, lle, lli, llo, llu.	{ j before and after a vowel has always the <i>guttural</i> sound.
ña, ñe, ñi, ño, ñu.	
qua, que, qui, quo.	These sound as <i>lyá, lyé, &c.</i>
que, qui.	And these as <i>nyá, nyé, &c.</i>
ax, ex, ix, ox, ux.	Here the u is sounded.
za, ze, zi, zo, zu.	And here the u is mute.
az, ez, iz, oz, uz.	{ The x is now only used at the end of a syllable, and has the sound of ks .
	{ z before and after a vowel has always the sound of th in <i>thin, bath</i> ; but never that of th in <i>they, bathe</i> .

OF INITIAL AND FINAL LETTERS

Every consonant may begin a Spanish word or syllable; but the only consonants that can terminate a word are **b, d, j, l, m, n, r, s, t, x, z**; and all except **ch, h, ll, ñ, q, v** may end a syllable. Any one of the vowels may begin and end a word or syllable.

Strictly speaking there are no double letters in Spanish, for even the **ll** is not considered a double letter. Two letters of the same denomination may frequently be seen together in the same word, but then each belongs to a different syllable, and therefore cannot be considered as a double letter. The only letters that may be so repeated in Spanish are the vowels **a, e, i, o**, and the consonants **c, n, r**, and when so employed each must be distinctly heard. Ex.: *Sa-a-vé-dra, le-ér, pi-i-si-mo, lo-ór, ac-cé-so, en-no-ble-cér, cár-ro.*

OF THE DIVISION OF SYLLABLES

A consonant between two vowels forms a syllable with the second vowel. When two consonants come between two vowels each belongs to its nearest vowel, unless the second consonant be **l** or **r**, in which case they both form a syllable with the second vowel. Ex.: *re-la-ti-vo, ar-ró-jo, ha-blár, a-pre-tár.* The **ll** always goes to the following consonant. Ex.: *ca-llár, bu-llir.* From this rule are excepted all compound words, which are divided by separating the syllable added to the simple word; thus, *des-atendér, sub-altérno*; and all those having an **s** before **l** or **r**; thus, *is-leño, Is-rael.* When three consonants come between two vowels, the first two go to the first vowel, and the third to the second. Ex.: *cóns-ta, obs-tár.* And when four consonants come together, they are divided two and two. Ex.: *cons-truír, abs-traér.*

OF DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS

A *diphthong* is the union of *two vowels*, and a *triphthong* of *three vowels* in a syllable. In English, in a combination of two, or even three vowels, it frequently occurs that the sound of one only, or a sound different from that of either of the vowels in the combination, is heard. Observe, however, that in pronouncing the Spanish diphthongs and triphthongs care must be taken to give to each vowel the sound which it has in the alphabet. The following is a list of all the Spanish diphthongs and triphthongs, and to guide the student an accent is placed on the vowel which should have the greatest stress of voice:—

ái	Ex. tomáis.	ói	Ex. soís.
áu	jáula.	óy	soy.
áy	hay.	uá	suáve.
eá	etérea.	ué	huésped.
éi	pléito.	uí	fuí.
éo	idóneo.	úy	muy.
éu	déuda.	uó	cuóta.
éy	ley.	íai	cambidís.
íá	aciágo.	íei	renunciéis.
ié	ciélo.	uái	averiguáis.
ió	biómbo.	uéi	evacuéis.
íu	ciudad.	uéy	buey.
oé	héroe.		

Observe that in diphthongs and triphthongs the accent always falls on the vowel which is first in the order of the alphabet, except in the combinations of *io* and *oi*, in which it falls on the *o*.

ON THE ACCENT

1. The *acute* accent, thus (´), is employed in Spanish with words in which the stress of the voice, as regards the syllable on which it should fall, deviates from the general rule.

Every Spanish word has one accented or stressed syllable; and, as a *general* rule, words ending in a *con-*

sonant have the accent on the *last* syllable, and those ending in a *vowel* on the *last but one*; but as there are exceptions to this rule, every word deviating from it is always marked with the acute accent over the syllable requiring the stress. The stress is on the same syllable in the plural as in the singular. Verbs, however, have a peculiar accentuation of their own, which will be treated of separately.

Ex.: *Leccion, macis, sagaz, altar, pedestal, corazon, redentor, encomendar, felicidad, moralidad, indemnificacion, desacobardar. Mente, casa, tribu, mudanza, orgullo, sufrible, desarmado, continente, indicativo, inconsiderado, desalumbradamente.* All these are accented regularly. *Dócil, ámbar, cáliz, café, música, épico, lírico, químico, incómodo, espíritu, alegórico, escolástico.* These as exceptions have the accent marked.

2. The above rule applies also to words ending in two vowels, whether they form diphthongs or not. Ex.: Diphthongs—*serio, agua, concordia, puntapié.* It has to be observed, however, that those ending in *ea, eo, oe*, must be marked with the accent on the syllable on which the stress falls. Ex.: *etérea, virgíneo, héroe.* Not diphthongs—*cria, río, empleo, albacea, sarao, canoa.* Words of more than two syllables, nevertheless, ending in *ia* or *io*, are marked with the accent. Ex.: *filosofía, navío.*

3. Words ending in *-y* have the stress on the last syllable, and receive no accent. Ex.: *convoy, virey.*

4. Surnames ending in *ez*, being acute on the penult, receive no accent. Ex.: *Fernandez, Martinez.*

5. Words in the plural number retain the stress on the same syllable which has it in the singular, except *carácter*, the plural of which is *carácterés*.

6. Adverbs ending in *-mente*, formed from adjectives that deviate from the general rule of accentuation, correspond as regards their accent with the adjectives from which they are derived: as *bárbaramente*, from *bárbaro*; *intrépidamente*, from *intrépido*; but in those formed from

adjectives that follow the general rule, the stress falls on the first syllable of the termination *-mente*: as *grande-mente*, from *grande*; *singularmente*, from *singular*; and no mark of accent is required. All superlatives ending in *-ísimo* receive the accent on the first syllable of this termination; as *bellísimo*, *fertilísimo*.

7. When monosyllables have more than one signification, the accent is employed to distinguish them, thus—

tú, thou.	tu, thy.
él, he.	el, the.
mí, me.	mi, my.
sí, oneself, yes.	si, if.
sé (from <i>ser</i>), be thou.	se, oneself.
dí (from <i>dar</i>), I gave.	di (from <i>decir</i>), say thou.
dé (from <i>dar</i>), let him give, or he may give.	de, of or from.
ó, or.	O, interjection <i>oh</i> .
qué, what, used interrogatively or in exclamation.	que, the relative, and conjunction <i>that</i> .
vé (from <i>ir</i>), go thou.	ve (from <i>ver</i>), he sees.

The preposition *á* (to), and the conjunctions *é* (and), *ó*, or *ú* (or), are always accented.

Qué, what; *quién*, who; *cuál*, which; *cuándo*, when; *cuánto*, how much; *cómo*, how; and *dónde*, where, are also accented when used interrogatively, or as exclamations, but not otherwise.

8. The diæresis (··), as established by the ROYAL ACADEMY, is now only employed over the *u* of *ue* and *ui*, when both vowels are sounded after *g*; as in *agüero*, *argüir*, *vergüenza*, *ungüento*. However, in poetry it is allowed to be used over the first vowel of a diphthong, to add, for the sake of the metre, another syllable to a word.

9. The note of interrogation is employed in Spanish both at the beginning and at the end of an interrogative word or sentence. The one at the beginning is inverted

thus (*¿*), and its use is to warn the reader that what follows is a question. The same occurs with the note of exclamation or admiration, which in the like manner is used inverted thus (*¡*), to warn the reader; as, *¿Y sabeis su casa, Sancho?* . . . *¿Y habeisla visto algún día por ventura?* (And do you know her house, Sancho? . . . And have you ever seen her by chance?)

If, however, the sentence begins with a word which of itself denotes its interrogative or exclamatory meaning, the word so used is written with an accent (as noticed before), and the inverted note is dispensed with: as, *Cuándo vendrá?* (When will he come?) *Quién es?* (Who is it?) *Qué ruido!* (What a noise!) *Qué lástima!* (What a pity!)

The other punctuation marks are employed alike in both languages.

THE ARTICLES

1. In Spanish we have to consider the *definite*, the *indefinite*, and the *neuter* article.

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

2. The *definite* article has several forms, or inflections, being made to agree in *gender*, *number*, and *case* with the noun to which it is prefixed. Ex.:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Mas.</i>	El hombre, the man. Del hombre, of the man.	Los hombres, the men. De los hombres, of the men.
<i>Fem.</i>	La mujer, the woman. Á la mujer, to the woman.	Las mujeres, the women. Á las mujeres, to the women.

3. The article *el* drops the *e* when it is preceded by the preposition *de* (*of*, or *from*), and *á* (*to*, or *at*); thus, instead of *de el* and *á el*, we must say *del* and *al*. Ex.:

Del rey, of the king.	Del libro, of the book.
Al rey, to the king.	Al libro, to the book.

4. A noun *singular* of the *feminine* gender beginning with **a** or **ha**, and having the stress of voice on the *first* syllable, requires the *masculine* instead of the *feminine* article: thus, instead of **la alma** (the soul), **la habla** (the speech), **la ala** (the wing), we must say **el alma**, **el habla**, and **el ala** for the sake of euphony, although these nouns are of the *feminine* gender. This infringement on the laws of grammar is allowed by the ROYAL ACADEMY OF MADRID in order to avoid the unpleasant, broad sound (or hiatus) which the concurrence of the same two vowels would produce, when the accent is on the first syllable of the noun; for which reason the rule does not apply to feminine nouns beginning with **a** or **ha** having the accent on any syllable but the first: therefore we say **la alcoba** (the alcove), **la alcaparra** (the caper), **la hacienda** (the estate), **la habilidad** (the ability); nor does it apply to feminine nouns in the *plural* number, since in them the intervening **s** prevents the clashing of the two vowels: as **las almas** (the souls), **las hablas** (the speeches).

Plural of Nouns: General Rule.—Nouns ending in a vowel add **s**, and those in a consonant and **y** add **es**. Those ending in **z**, change this consonant into **c** before adding **es**. Adjectives that accompany nouns must agree with them in gender and number: the masculine termination **o** of adjectives becomes **a** for the feminine, and **s** is added to form the plurals.

WHEN EMPLOYED ALIKE IN BOTH LANGUAGES

5. The definite article is employed in both languages before nouns taken in a *particular* or *definite* sense. Ex.:

El hombre elocuente huye de la aridez del estilo didáctico.	The eloquent man flies from the aridity of the didactic style.
La divinidad de sus ingenios, y la alteza de sus conceptos.	The divinity of their geniuses, and the loftiness of their ideas.

6. Before adjectives substantively used in a general sense; that is, when they express the whole of the kind denoted by their meaning. Ex.:

Los avaros y los codiciosos nunca
están satisfechos.

The *avaricious* and *the covetous*
are never satisfied.

7. Before nouns and adjectives that express a whole nation, a whole sect, &c. Ex.:

Los Alemanes son muy industri-
triosos.

The Germans are very industrious.

Hablo de los Protestantes; no de
los Católicos.

I speak of *the Protestants*; not of
the Catholics.

8. It is employed before a noun singular that expresses a whole species or kind. Ex.:

El caballo es animal noble.

The horse is a noble animal.

La uva crece con abundancia en
España.

The grape grows abundantly in
Spain.

9. Also before nouns that are singular in their kind. Ex.:

La luna es satélite de la tierra.

The moon is a satellite of *the earth*.

10. Before the names of seas, rivers, and mountains. Ex.:

El Atlántico, el Tajo, y los Alpes.

The Atlantic, the Tagus, and the Alps.

11. Before the proper names of particular individuals; before surnames employed in the plural number, and when used figuratively. Ex.:

La Vénus de Ticiano.

The Venus of Titian.

Está relacionado con los Monte-
verdes.

He is related to *the Monteverdes*.

Calderon puede llamarse el Shak-
spere de España.

Calderon may be styled *the Shak-
spere* of Spain.

NOTE.—It is omitted in both languages before nouns employed in the aggregate. Ex.:

España, Francia, Inglaterra,
Italia, y Alemania (todas) se
hicieron casi á un mismo
tiempo reinos independientes
bajo un nuevo sistema político.

Spain, France, England, Italy,
and Germany were (all) made,
almost at the same period,
independent kingdoms under a
new political system.

WHEN USED IN SPANISH AND NOT IN ENGLISH

12. The definite article is used in Spanish before all nouns taken in a *general* and *unlimited* sense; that is, nouns in which the whole of the kind or species denoted by them is included. Ex.:

Las acciones buenas se desprecian si nacen del arte, y no de la virtud.	Good actions are despised if they spring from art, and not from virtue.
La industria y la diligencia son hijas de la esperanza.	Industry and diligence are the offspring of hope.

13. Before the names of the four quarters of the globe; before the names of empires, kingdoms, provinces, and countries; and before the four seasons of the year. Ex.:

La América tiene mas variedad de clima que la Europa.	America has greater variety of climate than Europe.
La Austria es un imperio muy poblado.	Austria is a very populous empire.
La España produce todo lo necesario para la vida: la Andalucía es una de sus provincias fértiles.	Spain produces all the necessaries of life: Andalusia is one of her fertile provinces.
Algunos llaman á la Australia la quinta división del globo.	Some call Australia the fifth division of the globe.
La primavera es mas agradable que el invierno.	Spring is more agreeable than winter.

Exception 1st.—It is generally omitted in Spanish before the name of a country, a kingdom, a province, &c., when a part of it only is comprehended in the name. Ex.:

Fui á Inglaterra.	I went to England.
Viene de Francia.	He comes from France.
Viven en Granada.	They live in Granada.

Exception 2nd.—It is also frequently omitted before the names of kingdoms, provinces, &c., when they are preceded by a preposition; unless they are personified. Ex.:

En España no hay tanto crepúsculo como en Inglaterra.	In Spain there is not so much twilight as in England.
Los actos de la Rusia con respecto á la Polonia.	The proceedings of Russia with respect to Poland.

Exception 3rd.—As the article is omitted in both languages before *proper* names of individuals and places, so it is omitted before the names of kingdoms, provinces, &c., bearing the same names as their capital cities. Ex.:

Venecia y Génova eran antiguamente estados independientes.

Venice and Genoa were anciently independent states.

14. Nouns in the third person, denoting the title, dignity, profession, &c., of an individual, require the definite article. Ex.:

La Reina Victoria.

Queen Victoria.

El General D. y el Capitan M.

General D. and Captain M.

El señor y la Señora B.

Mr. and Mrs. B.

15. When several nouns follow one another in a sentence, the article is frequently repeated before each, particularly if they differ in gender; and if a preposition precede the article, it is likewise frequently repeated. (This, however, is not to be taken as a fixed rule, since it often yields to fancy or taste.) Ex.:

En el siglo de oro no habia la fraude, el engaño, ni la malicia mezclandose con la verdad y llaneza.

In the golden age neither fraud, deceit, nor malice mingled itself with truth and simplicity.

La ignorancia y el error, enemigos de la pública tranquilidad; de la prosperidad de las naciones; del orden, y de la subordinación.

Ignorance and error, the enemies of public tranquillity; of the prosperity of nations; of order, and of subordination.

16. The days of the week are sometimes, and the hour of the day is always, preceded by the definite article in Spanish; and the preposition *on* used in English before the days of the week is not translated. Observe also, by the following examples, how the time of the day is expressed in Spanish. Ex.:

Volveré á verle el Domingo, á la una, ó á las dos.

I shall see you again *on* Sunday, at one or two o'clock (literally, "at *the* one or at *the* two").

No vaya hasta Lunes á **las** cuatro y media, ó **Martes á las** siete ménos cuarto.

Do not go till Monday at half-past four, or Tuesday at a quarter to seven ("at *the* four and a half—at *the* seven less a quarter").

Esté Vd. (Usted) aquí Miércoles ó Jueves á **las** ocho ménos diez minutos; ó **Viernes, ó Sábado, á las** nueve y veinte minutos.

Be here *on* Wednesday or Thursday, at ten minutes to eight; or Friday or Saturday, at twenty minutes after nine.

NOTE.—Vd. is pronounced in Spanish *Usted*. See the meaning of this abbreviation in observation on the second personal pronoun, page 23. (Also see section on Indefinite Pronouns.)

17. When the noun *casa*, *house*, signifies *home*, *residence*, or *dwelling*, it is used without the article. Ex.:

Me voy á casa. Estamos cerca de casa.

I am going home. We are near home.

Está en casa de su tío.

He is at his uncle's.

WHEN USED IN ENGLISH AND NOT IN SPANISH

18. The definite article is not used in Spanish before numeral adjectives following the names of sovereigns, potentates, &c. Ex.:

Isabel Segunda.
Leopoldo Primero.

Isabelle *the* Second.
Leopold *the* First.

19. It is omitted when we speak of the *titles* of books, chapters, &c. Ex.:

Esta obra se intitula *Historia de España*.
Capítulo cuarto, verso primero.

This book is entitled *The History of Spain*.
Chapter *the* fourth, verse *the* first (or "the" may be omitted).

But if we allude to the subject of the work, or any particular part of it, we employ the article. Ex.:

La Historia de España trata también de su literatura.
En el capítulo primero encontramos, &c.

The History of Spain treats also of its literature.
In the first chapter we find, &c.

20. The article is omitted, except before the first noun (if required there), when several nouns are used in apposition; that is, when several nouns follow each other, all alluding to the same person or thing. Ex.:

Madrid, capital de España, y
residencia de su corte.

Entra Cide Hamete, coronista de
esta grande historia, con estas
palabras, &c.

Madrid, *the* capital of Spain, and
residence of its court.

Cidi Hamet, *the* chronicler of this
great history, commences with
these words, &c.

21. When nouns are used in a *partitive* sense, they admit no article in either language, unless we wish to refer to some particular object. Ex.:

Déme Vd. agua.

¿Quiere Vd. dinero?

Ella posée talento y hermosura.

Déme Vd. del vino de que bebí
ayer.

Give me (*some*) water.

Do you want (*any*) money?

She possesses wit and beauty.

Give me (*some*) of *the* wine of
which I drank yesterday.

In these examples we see that something, such as *some* or *any*, or *a little*, is understood, which in both languages may be either expressed or not, for which reason these phrases may also be given thus:

Déme Vd. **un poco** de agua.

¿Quiere Vd. **algún** dinero?

Ella posée **algún** talento y **alguna**
hermosura.

Déme Vd. **un poco** del vino de que
bebí ayer.

Give me *some*, or *a little*, water.

Do you want *any* money?

She possesses *some* wit and *some*
beauty.

Give me *some of the* wine of which
I drank yesterday.

Un poco de is equivalent to *a little*, or *a small portion*, or *quantity of*. **Algún** means *some*, or *any*. It is derived from the indefinite pronoun **alguno**, which changes its last vowel into **a** for the feminine gender, and an **s** is added to it to form the plural number; but when it precedes a noun masculine singular it drops the **o**. Ex.:

¿Necesita Vd. dinero **alguno**?

Présteme Vd. **algún** libro, algunos
poemas, algunas novelas.

Do you require *any* money?

Lend me *some* book, *some* poems,
some novels.

Exercise on the Definite Article

VOCABULARY

pencil, *lápiz* (*m.*).
 box, *caja* (*f.*).
 book, *libro* (*m.*).
 bird, *pájaro* (*m.*).
 chair, *silla* (*f.*).
 rose, *rosa* (*f.*).
 knife, *cuchillo* (*m.*).
 penknife, *cortaplumas* (*m.*).
 cotton, *algodon* (*m.*).
 scissors, *tijeras* (*f.pl.*).
 pen, *pluma* (*f.*).
 child, *niño* (*m.*).
 doll, *muñeca* (*f.*).
 paper, *papel* (*m.*).
 dog, *perro* (*m.*).
 cherry, *cereza*, *guinda* (*f.*).
 sealing-wax, *lacre* (*f.*).
 bread, *pan* (*m.*).
 hat, *sombrero* (*m.*).
 horse, *caballo* (*m.*).
 coat, *levita* (*f.*).
 cat, *gato* (*m.*).
 letter, *carta* (*f.*).
 ledger, *libro mayor* (*m.*).
 clerk, *dependiente* (*m.*).
 firm, *razon social*, *casa* (*f.*).
 client, *cliente* (*m.*).
 gentleman, *caballero* (*m.*).
 house, *casa* (*f.*).
 soldier, *soldado* (*m.*).
 gun, *fusil* (*m.*).
 Englishman, *Ingles* (*m.*).
 money, *dinero* (*m.*).
 Thames, *Támesis* (*m.*).
 bridge, *punte* (*m. or f.*).
 England, *Inglaterra* (*f.*).
 France, *Francia* (*f.*).
 Spain, *España* (*f.*).
 Italy, *Italia* (*f.*).
 Germany, *Alemania* (*f.*).

battleship, *buque de guerra* (*m.*).
 army, *ejército* (*m.*).
 king, *rey* (*m.*).
 palace, *palacio* (*m.*).
 year, *año* (*m.*).
 season, *estacion* (*f.*).
 Spring, *primavera* (*f.*).
 Summer, *verano* (*m.*).
 Autumn, *otoño* (*m.*).
 Winter, *invierno* (*m.*).
 children, *hijos* (*m.pl.*).
 church, *iglesia* (*f.*).
 door, *puerta* (*f.*).
 lion, *leon* (*m.*).
 tiger, *tigre* (*f.*).
 strength, *fuerza* (*f.*).
 love, *amor* (*m.*).
 glory, *gloria* (*f.*).
 brave, *valiente* (*m.*).
 Atlantic, *atlántico* (*m.*).
 ocean, *océano* (*m.*).
 form, *forma* (*f.*).
 government, *gobierno* (*m.*).
 colony, *colonia* (*f.*).
 nation, *nacion* (*f.*).
 doctor, *médico* (*m.*).
 assistant, *asistente*, *ayudante* (*m.*).
 people, *gente* (*f. sing.*).
 virtue, *virtud* (*f.*).
 beauty, *hermosura* (*f.*).
 poem, *poema* (*m.*).
 delicacy, *delicadeza* (*f.*).
 style, *estilo* (*m.*).
 road, *camino* (*m.*).
 city, *ciudad* (*f.*).
 several, *varios*.
 magnificent, *magnifico*.
 other, *otro*.

Tener, to have, to hold, or to possess.

Present Indicative

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
yo	tengo, I have, or I possess.	nosotros (m.)	} tenemos, we have.
tú	tienes { thou hast.	nosotras (f.)	
	you have (<i>familiar</i>).	vosotros (m.)	} tenéis, you have
él	} tiene { he has.	vosotras (f.)	
ella		ellos (m.)	} (familiar). they have.
Vd.	you have (<i>polite</i>).	ellas (f.)	
		Vds.	} tienen { they have. you have (<i>polite</i>).

Observations:—

1. The English auxiliary verb *to do*, in interrogative or negative sentences, is not translated in Spanish. Ex.: ¿Tiene Vd. un caballo? *Do you possess a horse?*—No, señor, yo no tengo un caballo. No, sir, I do not possess a horse.

2. The negative particle *no* always stands immediately before the verb.

3. We = *nosotros*, -as, and you (*pl. fam.*) = *vosotros*, -as, contrary to the usage of the other Romance languages, have in Spanish separate terminations for the masculine and feminine.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I have the pencil. I have the box. Have I the books? Thou hast the bird. Thou hast the chair. Hast thou the roses? He has the knife. He has the boots. Has he the penknives? She has the cotton. She has the scissors. Has she the pens? You have (*masc. sing.*) the child. You have (*fem. sing.*) the doll. Have you the paper? We have the dog. We have the cherries. Have we the sealing wax? You have (*2nd pers. plur.*) the bread. You have (*2nd pers. plur.*) the hat. Have you the horses? They have (*masc.*) the coats. They have (*fem.*) the cats. Have they the letters? The clerk has the ledger. Has the firm any clients? The gentlemen have some houses. Have the soldiers any guns? The Englishmen have money. The Thames has many bridges. England and France have battleships and armies. The King of Spain has a magnificent palace. The year has four seasons: Spring,

Summer, Autumn, and Winter. King George the Fifth has a love for his country. The church has several large doors. Lions possess more strength than tigers. The Jupiter of Phidias. The love of glory animates (*anima*) the brave. The Tagus flows into the Atlantic Ocean. France, Spain, Italy, and Germany have different forms of governments. England possesses more (*mas*) colonies than (*que*) any other nation. Doctor Bailey has an assistant. Many (*mucha*) people have no appreciation (*no tiene aprecio*) for (*para*) virtues. The beauty of the poem. The delicacy of the style. The road to the city.

READING EXERCISE

Verbs *ser* and *estar* - *to be*

Estamos en la primavera. Los árboles frutales (*fruit trees*) están en flor. Los labradores (*farmers*) están arando (*ploughing*) la tierra (*ground*); después (*then*) sembrarán (*they will sow*) el grano (*grain*). Los niños plantarán legumbres (*will plant vegetables*). La primavera es la estación más bella del año (*year*). ¿Les gusta á Vds. (*polite plural—do you like?*) el verano tanto (*as well*) como (*as*) el invierno? Damos la bienvenida (*we welcome*) á cada (*each*) estación á su llegada (*as it comes*). Nos gustan (*we like*) los días largos (*long days*) y las noches cortas (*short evenings*). ¿Cuántas estaciones hay? (*hay, are there*). Hay cuatro estaciones. ¿Cuáles son? (*what are they*). Son la primavera, el verano, el otoño y el invierno.

OBSERVATION ON THE PRONOUNS

From the above exercise the pupil will learn what are the forms of the first, second, and third personal pronouns in Spanish. Here we must remark that the *second personal pronoun* is only employed in Spanish in addressing those persons with whom we are on terms of great intimacy; also by parents to their children, but not by children to their parents; by uncles and

aunts to their nephews and nieces; between brothers, sisters, and cousins; sometimes by masters to their servants: it is also used in scripture and in poetry. In novels and romances we frequently see the second personal pronoun *plural* used in Spanish in addressing persons for whom a high respect is entertained.

But in polite conversation, or in addressing strangers, instead of the second personal pronoun, *Usted* is used with both genders in the singular number, and *Ustedes* in the plural. *Usted* is an abbreviation of *Vuestra Merced*, a term nearly equivalent in meaning to *your grace*, or *your honour*. In writing, *Usted* is thus contracted, *Vd.* Some write it thus, *Vm.*; others *V.* An *s* is added to either mode of abbreviation to form the plural number; and observe, that the verb and the possessive pronoun are put in the *third* person singular to agree with *Vd.*, and in the third person plural to agree with *Vds.*

Observe also that the adjective which refers to *Vd.* or *Vds.* agrees in gender and number with the person or persons to whom these abbreviations allude. Ex.:

¿ Está <i>Vd.</i> bueno, caballero?	Are you well, sir?
¿ Están <i>Vds.</i> cansadas, señoras?	Are you tired, ladies?

CONVERSATION

Somebody knocks at the door.	Alguno llama á la puerta.
See who knocks.	Vé quien llama.
Who is there?	¿ Quien está ahí?
A friend.	Gente de paz.
Sir, it is a gentleman.	Señor, es un caballero.
For whom does he enquire?	¿ Por quien pregunta?
For you.	Por <i>Vd.</i>
Show him in.	Que pase adelante.
Your servant, sir.	Servidor de <i>Vd.</i> , caballero.
Sir, I am yours.	Señor, yo lo soy de <i>Vd.</i>
I come to solicit a favour.	Vengo á solicitar una gracia.
You may command me.	Mande <i>Vd.</i> cuanto guste.
Do me the favour to send this letter to your uncle.	Hagame <i>Vd.</i> el favor de mandar esta carta á su tío de <i>Vd.</i>
I will do it with pleasure.	Lo haré con mucho gusto.

Sir, I am very much obliged to you.

You are very welcome, sir.

When will your brother return to London?

Has he been long gone to his villa?

He has been there three months.

He will not come back till the end of November, or the beginning of December.

I shall come and see him as soon as I know that he is in London.

Señor se lo agradezco infinito.

Para servir á Vd. caballero.

¿ Cuando volverá á Lóndres su hermano de Vd.?

¿ Hace mucho que se fué á su quinta?

Hace tres meses que está allá.

No volverá hasta fines de Noviembre ó principios de Diciembre.

Vendré á verle 'tan pronto que sepa que está en Londres.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

1. The English indefinite article, **a** or **an**, is rendered **un** in Spanish before a noun masculine, or its adjective, and **una** before a noun feminine. Ex.:

Un libro, un buen caballo, un agente, una casa, una bella mujer.	A book, a good horse, an agent, a house, a fine woman.
--	--

Before *feminine substantives*, beginning with *accented a* or *ha* (as already explained), the masculine article is used, for the sake of euphony, and where *h* is silent and the accent is on the first syllable, the article **un** is substituted for **una**. Ex.: **un** ave, *a bird* (for **una** ave); **un** ama, *a mistress* (for **una** ama); **un** alma, *a soul* (for **una** alma); **un** águila, *an eagle*; **un** arma, *a weapon*; **un** ala, *a wing*; **un** harpa, *a harp*.

In the plural, however, the feminine article reappears. Ex.: **unas** alas (*some wings*), **unas** armas, **unas** águilas, &c.

Before all the masculine substantives which require the definite article, **el**, the final *o* of the indefinite article, **uno**, is dropped; as: **un** hombre, **un** soldado.

2. The English *indefinite* article employed before nouns of weight, measure, number, or distance, in speaking of

their value or rate, is translated by the *definite* article (which of course is often used in English in the same way). Ex.:

Dos duros la vara.	Two dollars <i>a</i> yard.
Seis peniques la libra.	Six pence <i>a</i> pound.
Tres chelines el ciento.	Three shillings <i>a</i> hundred.
Á razon de diez reales la legua.	At the rate of ten reals <i>a</i> league.

3. Sometimes **por** is used instead of **el** or **la**, in similar cases. Ex.:

Á razon de seis duros por vara.	At the rate of six dollars <i>per</i> yard.
Á diez duros por ciento.	At ten dollars <i>per</i> cent.
Quince reales por legua.	Fifteen reals <i>per</i> league.

4. When **a** or **an** is employed in English as a numeral adjective, and means particularly **one**, it is translated into Spanish also by the numeral adjective. Ex.:

Aquí hay una onza de oro y una libra de plata.	Here is <i>an</i> ounce of gold and <i>a</i> pound of silver.
--	---

WHEN THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE IS USED IN ENGLISH AND NOT IN SPANISH

5. The *indefinite article* is omitted in Spanish before nouns expressive of the *rank, profession, religion, country, &c.*, of an individual, when these nouns are preceded by a verb. Ex.:

El es embajador.	He is <i>an</i> ambassador.
Yo soy Inglés y ella es Francesa.	I <i>am an</i> Englishman, and she <i>is a</i> Frenchwoman.
Su padre es protestante.	His father <i>is a</i> Protestant.
Llegó aquí capitán, y pronto le hicieron coronel.	He <i>arrived</i> here <i>a</i> captain, and was soon <i>made a</i> colonel (lit. "soon they made him").

But when any such nouns refer to an individual we wish to particularize, the article should be employed in Spanish. Ex.:

El es un oficial que se distinguió en la batalla de Talavera.	He is <i>an</i> officer that distinguished himself in the battle of Talavera.
--	---

6. It is omitted in Spanish when employed in English before a noun denoting the different inclinations of the mind, and motives of action. Ex.:

Tenía inclinación de decirle.	I had <i>a</i> mind to tell him.
Estaba de mal humor.	He was in <i>a</i> bad humour.
Tengo motivo para negarlo.	I have <i>a</i> motive for denying it.

7. It is likewise omitted before nouns in apposition, and before a word or member of a sentence that specifies the nature of the antecedent noun, or that distinguishes in any particular manner the person or thing represented by it. Ex.:

Cádiz, ciudad de Andalucía.	Cádiz, <i>a</i> town of Andalusia.
La gratitud, cualidad noble del alma.	Gratitude, <i>a</i> noble quality of the mind.
Lope de Vega, poeta insigne español.	Lope de Vega, <i>a</i> distinguished Spanish poet.

Thus, also, it is omitted before a phrase inserted in another by way of parenthesis or in apposition. Ex.:

Esto cantaba Elicio, pastor en las riberas del Tajo, &c.	Thus sung Elicio, <i>a</i> shepherd, on the borders of the Tagus, &c.
--	---

8. Also when employed in English before a noun preceded by a word denoting comparison. Ex.:

Tan bella mujer, <i>or</i> mujer tan bella.	So beautiful <i>a</i> woman.
Hombre tan elocuente como Ciceron.	As eloquent <i>a</i> man as Cicero.
Tal persona; tal gusto.	Such <i>a</i> person; such <i>a</i> pleasure.

9. It is also omitted after the word *qué*, *what*, used in exclamation or surprise before a noun. Ex.:

Qué ruido! Qué bella vista!	What <i>a</i> noise! What <i>a</i> fine view!
-----------------------------	---

10. It is omitted before the adjective *cierto*, *certain*, when used in an indefinite manner; but when *cierto* means *sure*, it may be employed with or without the indefinite article. *Cierto* changes the final *o* into *a*, when it refers to a noun feminine. Ex.:

Cierto hombre y cierta mujer me digeron que . . .	<i>A</i> certain man and <i>a</i> certain woman told me that . . .
Es (<i>una</i>) cosa cierta.	It is <i>a</i> certain thing.

11. It is dispensed with in the title of a book. Ex.:

Diccionario Español.	<i>A</i> Spanish Dictionary.
Gramática Inglesa.	<i>An</i> English Grammar.
Ensayo sobre la Educación.	<i>An</i> Essay on Education.

12. It is omitted before the fractional parts of an integer. Ex.:

Dos y medio.	Two and <i>a</i> half.
Libra y cuarto.	One pound and <i>a</i> quarter.
Cuatro varas y tercio.	Four yards and <i>a</i> third.

Also before an integer preceded or followed by a fractional part. Ex.:

Media onza.	Half <i>an</i> ounce.
Dos tercios de vara.	Two-thirds of <i>a</i> yard.
Docena y cuarto.	<i>A</i> dozen and <i>a</i> quarter.
Legua y dos tercios.	<i>A</i> league and two-thirds.

Likewise before a *hundred* and a *thousand*. It is retained, however, before a *million*, but not before *half* a million, nor a *million and a half*. Ex.:

Cien libras: mil pesos.	<i>A</i> hundred pounds; <i>a</i> thousand dollars.
Un millon de reales.	<i>A</i> million of reals.
Medio millon de libras.	Half <i>a</i> million of pounds.
Millon y medio de duros.	<i>A</i> million and <i>a</i> half of dollars.

Exercise on the Indefinite Article

VOCABULARY

fortune, <i>fortuna</i> (<i>f.</i>).	inkstand, <i>tintero</i> (<i>m.</i>).
capricious, <i>caprichoso</i> .	dozen, <i>docena</i> (<i>f.</i>).
deity, <i>deidad</i> (<i>f.</i>).	yard, <i>vara</i> (<i>f.</i>).
guilty, <i>criminal</i> .	travel, we, <i>caminamos</i> .
conscience, <i>conciencia</i> (<i>f.</i>).	rate, <i>razon</i> (<i>f.</i>).
perpetual, <i>perpetuo</i> .	league, <i>legua</i> (<i>f.</i>).
torment, <i>tormento</i> (<i>m.</i>).	ship, <i>buque</i> (<i>m.</i>).

sails, <i>anda</i> .	detestable, <i>detestable</i> .
mile, <i>milla</i> (<i>f.</i>).	gains, <i>gana</i> .
guinea, <i>guinea</i> (<i>f.</i>).	victory, <i>victoria</i> (<i>f.</i>).
shilling, <i>chelin</i> (<i>m.</i>).	fine, <i>bella</i> (<i>f.</i>).
bookbinder, <i>encuadernador</i> (<i>m.</i>).	beautiful, <i>hermoso</i> .
bookseller, <i>librero</i> (<i>m.</i>).	garden, <i>jardin</i> (<i>m.</i>).
German, <i>Aleman</i> (<i>m.</i>).	idea, <i>idea</i> (<i>f.</i>).
traitor, <i>traidor</i> (<i>m.</i>).	certain, <i>cierto</i> .
mountain, <i>monte</i> (<i>m.</i>).	friend, <i>amigo</i> (<i>m.</i>).
famous, <i>famoso</i> .	mine, <i>mio</i> .
residence, <i>residencia</i> (<i>f.</i>).	speaks, <i>habla</i> .
muses, <i>musas</i> (<i>f.pl.</i>).	evidence, <i>evidencia</i> (<i>f.</i>).
officer, <i>oficial</i> (<i>m.</i>).	fact, <i>hecho</i> (<i>m.</i>).
service, <i>servicio</i> (<i>m.</i>).	ounce, <i>onza</i> (<i>f.</i>).
duel, <i>desafio</i> (<i>m.</i>).	gold, <i>oro</i> (<i>m.</i>).
colonel, <i>coronel</i> (<i>m.</i>).	silver, <i>plata</i> (<i>f.</i>).
historian, <i>historiador</i> (<i>m.</i>).	treatise, <i>tratado</i> (<i>m.</i>).
reign, <i>reinado</i> (<i>m.</i>).	world, <i>mundo</i> (<i>m.</i>).
cruel, <i>cruel</i> (<i>m. and f.</i>).	how much? <i>¿cuánto?</i>

Ser, to be; estar, to be

Present Indicative

yo soy, I am.	yo estoy, I am.
tu eres, thou art.	tu estás, thou art.
el } es { he is.	el } está { he is.
ella } es { she is.	ella } está { she is.
Vd. } you are.	Vd. } you are.
nosotros (as) somos, we are.	nosotros (as) estamos, we are.
vosotros (as) sois, you are.	vosotros (as) estais, you are.
ellos } son { they are.	ellos } están { they are.
ellas } son { they are.	ellas } están { they are.
Vds. } you are.	Vds. } you are.

[There are two verbs "to be". *Ser* is used for a permanent state, and *estar* for a temporary one. Rules for the various uses of these verbs are given later.]

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

[The numbers indicate the order of the words in Spanish.]

Fortune is a capricious² deity¹. A guilty² conscience¹ is a perpetual² torment¹. I bring (*traigo*) a book, an inkstand, and a dozen (of) pens (*plumas*, *f.*). How much a yard? Two dollars a pound (*libra*, *f.*). Six dollars (*duros*, *m.*) a hundred. We travel at the rate of ten

leagues a day (*dia, m.*). The ship sails six miles an hour. Give me (*déme Vd., polite sing.*) a dozen at two guineas a dozen. I will let you have (*Le daré á Vd., pol. sing.*) nine pounds at a shilling a pound. He is a bookbinder and his brother (*hermano*) a bookseller. He is a German and she is an Englishwoman. He acts (*obra*) like (*como*) a traitor. Parnassus, a mountain of Phocis, is famous for being (*ser, inf.*) the residence of the Muses. Captain M., an officer in the Spanish² service¹, fights (*pelea*) a duel with Count (*conde, m.*) N., an Italian² colonel¹. Cornelius Tacitus, a famous Latin² historian¹, was born (*nació*) in the reign of Nero, a cruel and detestable prince. He gains a complete victory. She has such a fine house, and so beautiful a garden. What an excellent (*bellísima*) idea! What a fine horse! A certain friend of mine (*mio*) speaks to me about a certain person (*persona, f.*). It is certain² evidence¹ (*evidencia, f.*) of the fact. It is worth (*vale*) a thousand pounds. I lend him (*le presto*) a hundred dollars. This palace costs (*cuesta*) a million of dollars, and that (*y ese or aquel*) a million and a half to maintain (*mantener*). Give me two dollars and a half. Here is an ounce and a half of gold, and half an ounce of silver. A Treatise on Philosophy. A History of the World.

READING EXERCISE

Yo tengo un caballo. El tiene una hacienda (*estate*). Nosotros tenemos una casa. Vosotras tenéis un libro. Ella tiene una casa grande. Ellos tienen un perro. ¿No tiene Vd. un reloj (*watch*)? ¿Tiene el niño un espejo (*mirror*)? Vosotros tenéis hambre (*hunger*). ¿Tienes tú una flor? ¿Tiene el hermano un caballo? Mi tia (*aunt*) tiene mucho dinero. La reina tiene un magnifico jardin (*garden*). Vd. tiene una escuela (*school*). ¿No teneis vosotros plumas y tinta? Nosotros tenemos pan y queso (*cheese*). ¿Tiene el hermano un fusil? El soldado tiene mi fusil. Nosotros tenemos un buen maestro (*master*).

¿Tiene él muchos amigos (*friends*)? ¿Tiene Vd. algún vino? ¿Cuánto dinero tiene Vd.? Yo tengo muy poco capital.

CONVERSATION

I beg to thank you for your timely notice.

Please excuse this trouble.

✓ I have much more to say to you.

Properly speaking, you are not allowed to do it.

I am not a good judge of this article.

✓ There is no doubt about it.

I will not impose this burden upon you.

✓ This is labour lost.

It was unintentionally if I overlooked it.

✓ At that rate, you have no excuse at all.

He is in reduced circumstances.

I shall see you shortly.

✓ What must I say?

✓ I believe he is in the right.

He disapproved of your having said it.

The behaviour of that man raised suspicions in my mind.

I am in want of nothing.

I have imparted it to him.

In vain I speak, for you do not listen to me.

✓ What is going on?

I am near-sighted.

Where were you born?

✓ I am accustomed to it.

Le agradezco á Vd. su noticia oportuna.

Dígnese Vd. dispensar esta molestia.

Tengo aun mucho que decirle á Vd.

Si he de decir verdad, no se le permite á Vd. hacerlo.

Mi opinión es imperfecta de este artículo.

No hay duda de ello.

Yo no impondré á Vd. esta carga.

Este es trabajo perdido.

Si lo pasé por alto fué por descuido.

En ese caso no tiene Vd. excusa.

Ha atrasado mucho. Está apurado de medios.

Luego le verá á Vd.

¿Qué debo decir?

Creo que tiene razon.

Ha desaprobado el que Vd. lo haya dicho.

La conducta de este hombre me ha hecho sospechar.

No carezco de nada.

Se lo he participado.

Hablo en vano, puesto que Vd. no me escucha.

¿De qué se trata?

Soy corto de vista.

¿Adónde nació Vd.

Estoy acostumbrado á ello.

THE NEUTER ARTICLE

The neuter article *lo* is employed, first, before adjectives in the *singular* number used as substantives, expressing some abstract quality; and observe, that all Spanish adjectives may be so converted into substantives, by simply prefixing the article *lo* to them. Ex.:

Es menester ejercitarse en ver como en sentir, y en juzgar de **lo hermoso** por los ojos, y de **lo bueno** por el sentimiento moral.

It is necessary to exercise oneself in seeing as in feeling, and to judge of *the beautiful* (or *that which is beautiful*) by the sight, and of *the good* (or *that which is good*) by the moral feeling.

Here we see that *lo* stands in the place of *that which is*, or of *what is*. We may likewise employ in Spanish, though, perhaps, with less elegance, those words, the place of which is supplied by the neuter article *lo*; thus, *juzgar de aquello que es hermoso*, &c.; and *de aquello que es bueno*, &c., or *de lo que es hermoso*, &c., and *de lo que es bueno*, &c.: in either way they mean *that which is beautiful*, or *what is beautiful*; and *that which is good*, or *what is good*. In such instances neither the masculine nor the feminine article could be employed, since there is no noun with which it could agree. The *lo*, therefore, stands in the place of *lo que es*; *that which is*, or *what is*.

Secondly, the neuter article *lo* is frequently employed with the words *que* and *cual*, before verbs; *lo que* meaning *what*, or *that which*, and *lo cual*, *which*, or *the which*. Ex.:

Estos trabajos, moderadamente tomados, se acostumbran los nombres á sufrir y hacer **lo que** deben; **lo cual** no podrian hacer ni sufrir, si, &c.

These labours, exercised with moderation, accustom men to bear and to do *what* they ought; *which* they would never be able to do nor to bear, if, &c.

And here, also, the neuter article is brought in to refer

to some act or occurrence, to which, not being expressed by a noun, no gender can be attributed; hence neither the masculine nor the feminine article could be employed.

Exercise on the Neuter Article

VOCABULARY

work, *obra* (*f.*).
 treats, *trata*.
 on *or* upon, *sobre*.
 sublime, *sublime*.
 solid, *sólido*.
 useful, *útil*.
 just, *justo*.
 greater, *mayor*.
 value, *estimación*.
 little, *poco*.
 wise, *sabio* (*m.*).
 much, *mucho*.
 vigour, *vigor* (*m.*).
 awful, *terrible*.
 glitters, *reluce*.

rich, *rico*.
 desirable, *apetecible*.
 always, *siempre*.
 easy, *fácil*.
 obtain, *conseguir*.
 under, *bajo*.
 pen, *pluma* (*f.*).
 new, *nuevo*.
 beauty, *hermosura* (*f.*).
 tender, *tierno*.
 softness, *suavidad* (*f.*).
 energetic, *enérgico*.
 sublimity, *sublimidad* (*f.*).
 said, *dijo*.
 gold, *oro* (*m.*).

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

The work treats of the sublime and beautiful. Let us prefer (*preferamos*) that which is solid and useful. Let him abide (*que se limite*) by what is just. Of greater value (*mayor estimación*) is the little that the wise man knows (*sabe*), than the much that the rich man possesses (*tiene*). What is most (*mas*) desirable is² not¹ always the most easy to obtain. The beautiful acquires (*toma*) under his pen new beauty (*hermosura*); the tender, new softness; the energetic, new vigour; the awful, new sublimity. I listened (*escuché*) to all what (or, that which) he said, by which I learnt (*supe*) that, &c. What I know (*lo que yo sé*) is not (*no es*) what you think (*piensa*). All that glitters (*reluce*) is not gold. I did (*hice*) what he desired me (*me encargó*) to do, which (or, the which) was (*fué*) the following (*siguiente*).

READING EXERCISE

Es hora de estudiar (*study*) su (*your*) lección de español. Ponga atención (*pay attention*) en lo que (*to what*) dice (*says*) su maestro (*teacher*) y haga por aprovecharse (*try to improve*). Inés pronuncia bien (*well*) y tiene buen acento (*accent*). Ahora (*now*) voy (*I go or am going*) al banco para cobrar (*to cash*) esta letra (*this draft*). ¿Me haría Vd. el favor de darme (*give me*) el importe (*amount*) de esta letra? Vd. es inglés, ¿no es verdad? (*are you not*). Sí, señor (*yes, sir*). Entonces (*then*) es preciso (*it is necessary*) ser (*to be*) identificado (*identified*); es una de las reglas (*rules*) de este banco. Muy bien (*very well*), señor, aquí (*here*) está (*is*) el Señor Monteverde para indentificarme (*to identify me*). Endosaré (*I will endorse*) la letra á la orden (*order*) de la Señora de Aro. Muy bien. ¿Qué especie de dinero (*money*) desea Vd.? (*do you wish*). Sirvase Vd. (*please*) darme (*give me*) oro inglés, es decir (*viz*) en libras esterlinas (*£ sterling*). Estoy muy agradecido (*I am very much obliged*). No hay de que (*you are very welcome*). Buenos días (*good morning, good day*). Á Dios (*goodbye*). Todo principio (*all beginning*) es difícil. Buenas tardes, Señora Varella. ¡Me alegro tanto de ver á Vd.! (*good afternoon, Mrs. Varella. I am so glad to see you*).

CONVERSATION

Our expenses are heavy.
Did you observe his haughty manner?

I am pretty sure it was so.

I must deny myself the pleasure of seeing you.

I am curious to know the result.

I find no fault with it.

I soon found out your intention.

This is a pretty state of affairs!

(0504)

Nuestros gastos son considerables.

¿Reparó Vd. su arrogancia?

No abrigo muchas dudas de que fuese así.

Tengo que negarme el gusto de ver á Vd.

Tengo curiosidad de saber el resultado.

No hallo falta alguna en ello.

Adiviné luego cual era su designio.

¡ En buena nos hemos metido !

My orders are imperative.
 He cannot deny having said so.
 He has not deigned to give me a
 reply.

Please avoid all disputes.

I want a positive answer.

We know him of old.

That will never do.

I missed my chance.

You have made a good move.

We could not possibly do more.

We will not submit to such treat-
 ment.

This news gave me a shock.

Mis órdenes son imperativas.
 No puede negar haber dicho así.
 No se dignó contestarme.

Le suplico á Vd. que evite toda
 contienda.

Preciso una contestación termi-
 nante.

Le conocemos de antiguo.

Eso no conviene.

No cogí la ocasion.

Vd. ha andado acertado.

Es imposible hacer mas de lo que
 hemos hecho.

No nos someteremos á semejante
 tratamiento.

Esta noticia me conmovió.

NOUNS

NUMBER OF NOUNS

1. Nouns have two numbers, the singular and the plural. When the Spanish noun ends in a vowel on which the stress of voice does *not* fall, its plural is formed by adding **s** to the noun in the singular number, as: *estrella*, star; *estrellas*, stars; *ave*, bird; *aves*, birds; *catálogo*, catalogue; *catálogos*, catalogues.

2. When the noun ends in **a** or **i** accented, or in **y**, the plural is formed by the addition of **es**. The same takes place with nouns ending in a consonant, except **z**, in which latter the plural is formed by changing the **z** into **ces**: *bajá*, pasha; *bajáes*, pashas; *jabalí*, wild boar; *jabalíes*, wild boars; *ley*, law; *leyes*, laws; *barril*, barrel; *barriles*, barrels; *luz*, light; *luces*, lights.

From the above rule are excepted—*mamá*, mamma; *papá*, papa; and *sofá*, sofa; which take only an **s** in the plural.

The very few Spanish nouns that end in *e*, *o*, and *u*, accented, take *s* alone in the plural; as *corsé*, corset; *corsés*, corsets; *rondó*, rondo; *rondós*, rondos; *ambigú*, medley; *ambigús*, medleys.

3. Nouns ending in *s* accented on the penult, or antepenult, are written alike in both numbers: as *éxtasis*, ecstasy or ecstasies; *crísis*, crisis or crises.

4. There are some nouns which from their nature have always a plural signification, and consequently require that the article employed with them be in the plural number: such are *albricias*, a reward; *alicates*, pincers; *andas*, bier; *angarillas*, hand-barrow; *antiparras*, spectacles; *bofes*, lungs; *brágas*, breeches; *calzoncillos*, drawers; *carnevolendas*, last three carnival days; *cosquillas*, tickling; *despabiladeras*, snuffers; *efemérides* (*f.*), ephemeris; *enaguas*, under-petticoat; *fauces* (*f.*), gullet; *llares* (*f.*), pot-hanger; *maitines*, matins; *modales*, manners; *nupcias*, wedding; *parillas*, gridiron; *preces*, prayers; *semejas*, similitude; *tenazas*, tongs; *tercianas*, ague; *tinieblas*, darkness; *trébedes*, trevet; *visperas*, vespers; *viveres*, provisions; and a few others not much used.

5. There are others which, notwithstanding their plural termination, have not a plural signification, and therefore require the article in the singular number: such are *azotacalles*, lounge; *besamanos*, court day; *brindis*, saluting toast; *sacacorchos*, corkscrew; *sacatrapos*, gun-worm; *guardapiés*, over-petticoat; *sacabotas*, bootjack; *sacamuelas*, tooth-drawer; *cortaplumas*, penknife; and a few more, little used.

Exercise on the Plural of Nouns

VOCABULARY

la hermosura, the beauty.
el pájaro, the bird.
la melodía, the melody.
la voz, the voice.

el bosque, the wood.
muy, very.
extensos, extensive.
el rebaño, the flock.

el prado, the meadow.
 la delicadeza, the nicety.
 la lengua, the language.
 el alef, the gillyflower.
 la abundancia, the abundance.
 hasta, until.
 la carcel, the prison.
 la industria, the industry.
 la escuela, the school.
 la reforma, the reform.
 nunca, never.
 provecho, benefit.
 la sentencia, the sentence.
 el juez, the judge.
 el hombre, the man.
 la mujer, the woman.
 fiel, faithful.
 el ministro, the minister.
 la ley, the law.
 sus, their.
 el pueblo, the country.
 el discípulo, the scholar.
 el libro, the book.
 la pluma, the pen.
 el maestro, the master.
 el cortaplumas, the penknife.
 espacioso, roomy.
 el caballo, the horse.
 la yegua, the mare.
 el potro, the colt.
 el arroz, the rice.

el saco, the bag.
 la cajita, the little box.
 el cuchillo, the knife.
 el papel, the paper.
 la vergüenza, the shame.
 la edad, the age.
 el vestido, the dress.
 la tia, the aunt.
 mañana, to-morrow.
 el queso, the cheese.
 nada, nothing.
 la muestra, the sample.
 la oblea, the wafer.
 el tenedor, the fork.
 la cuchara, the spoon.
 el plato, the plate.
 el vaso, the glass.
 la letra de cambio, the bill of exchange.
 el conocimiento de embarque, the bill of lading.
 la factura, the invoice.
 los zapatos, the shoes.
 la flor, the flower.
 el perro, the dog.
 el documento, the document.
 el dinero, the money.
 el almidon, the starch.
 cuando, when.
 el tiempo, the weather.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

[Observe that in all the future exercises every Spanish noun will be put in the singular number, whatever may be that of the corresponding noun in English. The student will therefore have to consider the number of the English noun previous to translating it, and be guided by the rules for the formation of the plural of Spanish nouns when required.]

The beauty of the birds, and the melody of their voices. The woods in those countries are very extensive. The flocks in the meadows. The niceties of the languages. The gillyflowers and roses grew in abundance (*crecian en*

abundancia). Until prisons be converted (*se conviertan*) into houses of industry and schools of reform we shall never draw any benefit (*nunca sacaremos provecho*) from the sentences of the judges. Men and women should be faithful to each other (*unos con otros*). Those ministers framed good laws for their countries. The scholars received the books and pens from their masters. There is the penknife. Those garrets (*zaguizamis*) are very roomy. The flowers of those gardens are beautiful (*hermosas*). There would be (*habría*) few contentions (*contiendas*), frauds (*fraudes*), and perjuries (*perjurios*), if men would set (*pusiesen*) bounds (*límites*) to their (*sus*) desires. The pashas were seated (*sentados*) on rich (*ricos*) sofas. The different theses which they advocated (*apoyaban*). He has written several rondos. The manners of that gentleman are very polished (*finos*).

READING EXERCISE

“Tener, to have, to hold, or to possess.”

Yo tengo un libro. ¿Qué tengo yo? Vd. tiene un libro. ¿Qué tiene Antonio? Él tiene un tintero. ¿Qué tienen Vds.? Nosotros tenemos un pájaro. ¿Tienen los niños alguna cosa? Sí; tienen la lacre.

¿Qué teneis vosotros? Nosotros no tenemos nada. ¿Cuándo tendrán Vds. los caballos, las yeguas, y los potros. Nosotros los tendremos pasado mañana.

¿Qué tenían Vds. en ese saco? Teníamos arroz, sal, pimienta, queso, almidon y dinero. Si Vds. tuvieran dos sacos, ¿me darían uno? Si tuviéramos dos, le daríamos uno. ¿Qué tenía Vd. en la cajita? Tenía cuchillos, tenedores, cucharas, platos y vasos. ¿Qué tuvieron los hombres? Ellos tuvieron papel, letras de cambio, obleas, facturas, conocimientos, y muestras diversas. ¿Tendrá Vd. todos los documentos esta noche? No, Señor; los tendré mañana. Celebro la ocasión de conocer á Vd. Gracias. El gusto es mio, señora. Hace un tiempo her-

moso, ¿no es verdad? ¿Tiene Vd. muchos amigos? Sí; tengo muchísimos en Sur America. Porqué tenían vergüenza de ser vistos? Porque no tenían zapatos. ¿Tenían los dos la misma edad? No; Andrés tenía más edad que Paco. ¿Tenéis vosotros una flor? Yo tengo el vestido. Ella tiene un perro. El niño tiene un hermano y una tia. (Yo¹) tengo la rosa. (Yo²) tengo un libro. Mi hermano tiene un perro.

CONVERSATION

He has no voice at all in the matter.	No tiene voz en capítulo.
I am positive that you said so.	Estoy segurísimo de que Vd. lo ha dicho.
Your prediction has been verified.	Su predicción de Vd. ha salido verídica.
We hope you will reconsider your decision.	Esperamos que Vd. vuelva á meditar su decisión.
It is with reluctance I mention it to you.	Es con repugnancia que se lo menciono á Vd.
I made a search all over the place.	He buscado por todas partes.
I shall see you shortly.	Luego le veré á Vd.
To sum up the whole matter.	Para recapitular el asunto.
As yet he suspects nothing.	Hasta ahora nada sospecha.
We did not think him capable of doing such a thing.	No le creíamos capaz de hacer tal cosa.
This is a mere empty threat.	Es solo una amenaza vana.
I soon get tired of it.	Pronto me cansa.
I wish to know what I am to expect.	Deseo saber lo que debo esperar.
You are too exacting in your demands.	Es Vd. muy exigente en sus demandas.

¹ If the verb "to have" is not an *auxiliary* verb, i.e. used with a past participle, as: I *have* loved, we *shall have* found; but a principal verb, as: I *have* (i.e. possess) a book, he *had* (i.e. he possessed) a friend; the Spaniards do not use *haber*, which is only an auxiliary, but *tener*; properly "to hold". Thus: I have a book, is not rendered by *Yo he un libro*, but by *Yo tengo un libro*, i.e. I "hold" a book (in my possession).

² The personal pronouns are usually *omitted* before the verb. We give them here, in order to acquaint the pupil with these forms. Although the 2nd person singular is rarely used in English, we give it here in order that the pupil may become accustomed in its use in Spanish.

You may feel quite easy about it.	Puede Vd. estar tranquilo á tal respecto.
It matters little.	Poco importa.
Thus the matter rests at present.	Tal es el estado en que se encuentra el asunto.
I question his ability.	Dudo su talento.
He appears to be devoid of shame.	Parece sin vergüenza.
Please drop this subject.	Sírvase Vd. dejar el asunto.

AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE NOUNS

6. These derivatives denote larger or smaller objects of their kind than those which their primitives express. They are formed in Spanish by the addition of various terminations to the noun in its primitive form, the final vowel, should it have one, being dropped.

7. Nouns *augmentative*, of the masculine gender, are formed by the addition of the letters *on*, *ote*, or *azo*; those of the feminine gender, by *ona*, *ota*, or *aza*. These terminations are equivalent in their meanings to the English words *big*, *large*, *stout*, *tall*, and such like. Ex.:

<i>Primitives</i>	<i>Derivatives</i>
Hombre, a man.	Hombron, hombrazo, a tall or large man.
Mujer, a woman.	Mujerona, mujerota, a very tall, stout woman.
Sombrero, a hat.	Sombrerote, a large or big hat.

Hombron also signifies a man distinguished for talent or valour.

8. The terminations **azo** and **iza** are sometimes used also to express the injury that a weapon is capable of inflicting, and the gender of the noun so employed follows the rule of the termination of these additional. Ex.:

La mató de un pistoletazo.	He killed her with a pistol shot.
Me tiró en tierra de un garrotazo.	He knocked me down with the blow of a bludgeon.
Le di una buena paliza.	I gave him a good beating with a stick.

9. By a double termination some augmentatives ending

in **on** and **ona** acquire a greater force; as from *picaron*, *picaronazo*; from *mujerona*, *mujeronaza*.

10. Nouns *diminutive* are formed by the addition of the terminations **in**, **illo**, **ito**, **ico**, **ete**, **uelo** to the masculine; the feminine are formed by adding **a** to the termination **in**, and by changing the final vowel of the others into **a** (dropping the final vowel of the primitive nouns of either gender ending in **one**). It should be observed, however, that diminutives ending in **ito** and **ico** denote not only *smallness*, but have a kind of endearing meaning; and those that end in **illo**, **uelo** generally denote *contempt* or *disgust*.
Ex.:

<i>Primitives</i>	<i>Derivatives</i>
Muchacho, a boy.	{ Muchachito, a little boy.
	{ Muchachillo, a pitiful little fellow.
Casa, a house.	{ Casita, a nice little house.
	{ Casilla, a mean little house.

11. Many of the diminutive terminations may acquire a still further diminutive signification by adding other terminations to them: thus, *chico*, small; *chiquito*, or *chiquitillo*, very small; *chiquiritito*, a tiny little thing.

These rules, however, are not always strictly uniform; practice alone can make the pupil familiar with the peculiar meanings of these terminations, of which, besides those already mentioned, many others may be formed at fancy, but the student is recommended to exercise caution, as these terminals must not be indiscriminately added; thus *Teresilla*, *amiguillo*, *perrejo*, *caseja*, &c., are not used.

GENDER OF NOUNS

12. Gender is that property in nouns which marks the distinction of sex, or an analogous distinction. Thus in English there are the *masculine* and *feminine*, and what is called the *neuter* gender: the *masculine* being applied to living creatures of the *male* kind, the *feminine* to those of the *female* kind, and the *neuter* generally to inanimate

objects, with some exceptions. In Spanish, however, there are but *two* genders in nouns, the *masculine* and the *feminine*; and the gender of Spanish nouns is distinguished, firstly, by their signification, as all animate objects are of the gender of their respective sex, and the rank, professions, employments, kindred, and so forth of persons are of the gender of the individuals to which they belong; secondly, by their termination—namely, nouns ending in *a*, *d*, or *ion* are generally of the *feminine* gender, those that end in any other letter are mostly *masculine*.
Ex.:

Fem. **Inocencia**, innocence.

Virtud, virtue.

Relación, relation.

Masc. **Honor**, honour.

Sombrero, hat.

Valle, valley.

Though this rule has exceptions, it is an easy one to be guided by. A list of the exceptions will here follow. Observe, first, however, that there are two other distinctions in the gender of nouns to be considered, and that there are one class called *common*, from being equally applied to male and female—for instance, *el tigre*, the tiger; *la tigre*, the tigress; *un albacéa*, an executor; *una albacéa*, an executrix—in which the article in Spanish marks the distinction of sex. A second class are called *epicene*, being those nouns that express both genders by the same word—as, *el pato*, the duck or the drake; *la hiena*, the he or she hyena; but the article prefixed to them does not vary to mark their gender; to point out which, it is necessary to add some word to them descriptive of their sex, as *el pato macho*, *el pato hembra*; *la hiena macho*, *la hiena hembra*; *macho* signifying male, and *hembra* female.

13. The gender of nouns that are used in the *plural* number only—such as *la tenazas*, the tongs; *el sacacorchos*, the corkscrew—is distinguished by their terminations, supposing they could be used in the singular number; except *efemérides*, diary; *fauces*, gullet; *fases*, phases; *llares*, pot-hanger; *preces*, prayers; *trébedes*, trevet, which are feminine.

GENDER OF NOUNS THAT REFER TO KINDRED, RANK, PROFESSION, ETC.

14. The greater part of those that refer to males end in *o*, and some in *e*; the feminine termination is formed by changing those final vowels into *a*; thus, *hermano*, *hermana*, brother, sister; *tio*, *tia*, uncle, aunt; *criado*, *criada*, male servant, female servant; *monje*, *monja*, monk, nun. Those ending in *r*, add an *a* for the feminine; as *autor*, *autora*, male author, female author; *pescador*, *pescadora*, fisherman, fisherwoman.

The gender in the following nouns of kindred is denoted by different words being applied to either sex, viz. *padre*, *madre*, father, mother; *marido*, *mujer*, husband, wife; *padraastro*, *madrastra*, stepfather, stepmother; *yerno*, *nuera*, son-in-law, daughter-in-law; *padrino*, *madrina*, godfather, godmother; *hombre*, *mujer*, man, woman; *soltero*, *doncella*, bachelor, maid.

The following are distinguished by various terminations, viz.: *emperador*, *emperatriz*, emperor, empress; *rey*, *reina*, king, queen; *príncipe*, *princesa*, prince, princess; *duque*, *duquesa*, duke, duchess; *marques*, *marquesa*, marquis, marchioness; *conde*, *condesa*, earl, countess; *baron*, *baronesa*, baron, baroness; *abad*, *abadesa*, abbot, abbess; *actor*, *actriz*, actor, actress; *cantor*, *cantatriz*, male and female singer; *comadron*, *comadre*, man-midwife, midwife.

LIST OF EXCEPTIONS IN THE GENDER OF NOUNS

Masculine nouns ending in *a*

<i>adema</i> , prop.	<i>e</i> / <i>clima</i> , climate.
<i>albacea</i> , executor.	<i>e</i> / <i>cometa</i> , comet.
<i>alcabala</i> , excise duty.	<i>e</i> / <i>crisma</i> , chrism.
<i>alméa</i> , storax.	<i>c</i> / <i>día</i> , day.
<i>anagrama</i> , anagram.	<i>e</i> / <i>diafragma</i> , diaphragm, midriff.
<i>antípoda</i> , antipode.	<i>e</i> / <i>diagrama</i> , diagram.
<i>apoteigma</i> , apothegm.	<i>e</i> / <i>digama</i> , digamma.
<i>axioma</i> , axiom.	<i>e</i> / <i>dilema</i> , dilemma.
<i>carisma</i> , divine gift.	<i>e</i> / <i>diploma</i> , diploma.

e/ dogma, dogma.	e/ minimista, student.
e/ drama, drama.	paradigma, paradigm.
edema, oedema.	e/ paradoxa, paradox.
e/ enigma, enigma.	paragua, umbrella.
entimema, enthymeme.	e/ pentagrama, musical-stave.
e/ epigrama, epigram.	e/ planeta, planet.
e/ Etna, Ætna.	e/ poema, poem.
e/ guardacosta, custom-house boat,	e/ prisma, prism.
coastguard.	e/ problema, problem.
e/ guardaropa, wardrobe.	progimnasma, essay.
guardavela, topsail tackle.	e/ síntoma, symptom.
e/ idioma, idiom.	e/ sistema, system.
Jesuita, Jesuit.	e/ sofá, sofa.
largomira, telescope.	sofisma, sophism.
e/ lema, lemma.	tapaboca, slap on the mouth.
e/ maná, manna.	e/ tema, theme.
e/ mapa, map.	teorema, theorem.
metaplasma, metaplasms.	

Masculine nouns ending in d

adalid, a chief, leader.	e/ cespel, turf.
alamud, door-bar.	e/ huesped, guest.
e/ almud, a measure.	e/ laud, lute.
archilaud, species of lute.	e/ sud, south.
e/ ardid, stratagem.	e/ talmud, talmud.
e/ ataud, coffin.	

Masculine nouns ending in ion

e/ embrion, embryo.	e/ morrion, murrain.
e/ gorrion, sparrow.	e/ sarampion, measles.

Feminine nouns ending in e

alache, shad.	la certidumbre, certainty.
alsine, chickweed.	la chinche, bug.
anade, duck.	la churre, grease.
anagálide, pimpernel.	la clase, class.
la ave, fowl, bird.	la clave, key.
la azumbre, a measure.	la clemátide, climber.
la barbarie, barbarity.	la cohorte, cohort.
la base, basis.	la compage, joint.
la calle, street.	la corambre, hides.
calvicie, baldness.	la corriente, stream.
capelárdente, funeral pile.	la corte, court.
la carne, flesh.	la costumbre, custom.
la catástrofe, catastrophe.	la crasicie, fatness.

la ninfa

	creciente, flood-tide.		mole, mass.
1a	crenche, the parting of the hair.		molice, effeminacy.
1a	cumbre, summit.		muchedumbre, multitude.
1a	dulcedumbre, sweetness.	la	muerte, death.
	elatine, waterwort.	la	mugre, dirt.
ca	epígrafe, epigraph.	la	nave, ship.
	epipáctide, bastard hellebore.	la	nieve, snow.
la	esferóide, spheroid.	la	noche, night.
	especie, species.	la	nube, cloud.
1a	estirpe, race or origin.		paralage, parallax.
	etiópide, clary, an herb.		paraselene, mock-moon.
1a	falange, phalanx.	la	parte, a part.
1a	fase, phase.	la	patente, patent.
1a	fé, faith.		péplide, wild purslain.
1a	fiebre, fever.	la	pesadumbre, grief.
1a	frenté, front, forehead.	la	peste, the plague.
	fuelle, bellows.	la	pirámide, pyramid.
1a	fuelle, fountain.		píxide, pix.
la	gente, people.		planicie, plain.
la	hambre, hunger.	la	plebe, rabble.
	helgine, pellitory.		podre, pus.
	helice, helix.		prole, issue.
	hemionite, hemionite.		quiete, repose.
la	herrumbre, rust of iron.		salumbre, oxide of salt.
	hipérbole, hyperbole.	la	salve, salve regina.
	hipocístide, hypocistas.		sangre, blood.
	hojaldre, kind of pancake.		sede, a see.
la	incertidumbre, uncertainty.	la	serpiente, serpent.
1a	indole, temper.		servidumbre, servitude.
1a	ingle, groin.		sirte, quicksand.
	intemperie, intemperateness.	la	suerte, chance.
	lande, kind of acorn.	la	tarde, afternoon.
	landre, glandular swelling.		teame, a kind of stone.
1a	laringe, larynx.		techumbre, roof.
1a	laude, praise.	la	torre, tower.
la	leche, milk.		trabe, a beam.
1a	lente, lens.		trípode, tripod.
la	liebre, hare.		troge, granary.
	lite, litigation.	1a	ubre, udder.
la	llave, key.		urdiembre, warp.
la	lumbre, fire.		varicie, varix.
ca	mansedumbre, meekness.		velambre, nuptial rites.
	menguante, ebb-tide.		vislumbre, glimmering.
la	mente, the mind.		

Feminine nouns ending in i or y

diócesi, diocese.
 graciadei, gratiola, an herb.
 grei, flock.
 ley, law.

metrópoli, metropolis.
 palmacriste, palmachristi.
 paráfrasi, paraphrase.

Feminine nouns ending in l

aguamiel, hydromel.
 cal, lime.
 capital, capital.
 cárcel, prison.
 col, cabbage.
 decretal, decretal.

hiel, gall.
 miel, honey.
 piel, skin.
 sal, salt.
 señal, signal.
 vocal, vowel.

Feminine nouns ending in n

amazon, stowage.
 barbechazon, fallowing time.
 binazon, second ploughing.
 cargazon, cargo.
 clavazon, row of nails.
 crin, mane.
 desazon, uneasiness.
 imágen, image.

plomazon, a gilder's cushion.
 razon, reason.
 sarten, frying-pan.
 sazón, season.
 segazon, reaping time.
 sien, temple (part of the head).
 sinrazon, injustice.
 trabazon, splicing.

Feminine nouns ending in o

mano, hand.

nao, ship.

Feminine nouns ending in r

bezar, bezoar.
 flor, flower.
 labor, labour.

segur, axe.
 zoster, shingles (a disease).

Feminine nouns ending in s

anagiris, bean trefoil.
 antiperistasis, antiperistasis.
 apoteosis, apotheosis.
 bilis, bile.
 colapiscis, isinglass.
 crisis, crisis.
 diatrásis, diathrasis.
 diésis, diesis.
 emfitéusis, emphyteusis.
 epífsis, epiphysis.
 epiglótis, epiglottis.

etites, ætites.
 galiópsis, dead-nettle.
 hematites, hæmatite.
 hipóstasis, hypostasis.
 lis, flower-de-lys.
 macis, mace.
 metamorfósis, metamorphosis.
 metempsicosis, metempsychosis.
 mies, crop.
 paraláxis, parallax.
 paralísis, palsy.

parénesis, parenesis.	la	andéresis, remorse.
polis pástos, engine to raise weights.	la	sintáxis, syntax.
la raquísis, rickets.	la	tésis, thesis.
res, herd of cattle.	la	tísis, phthisis.
selenites, selenite.	la	tos, cough.

Feminine nouns ending in

la cerviz, cervix.	la	nuez, nut.
cocatriz, cockatrice.	la	paz, peace.
codorniz, quail.	la	perdiz, partridge.
la coz, kick.	la	pez, pitch.
la cruz, cross.	la	pómez, pumice.
la faz, visage.	la	raiz, root.
la haz, bundle.		sobrehaz, surface.
hez, dregs.		sobrepelliz, surplice.
la hoz, sickle, defile.	la	tez, complexion.
la luz, light.	la	vejez, old age.
la matriz, matrix.	la	vez, time.
la nariz, nose.	la	voz, voice.
la niñez, childhood.		

And almost all those nouns ending in *ez* denoting qualities in the abstract; as *brillantez*, brilliancy; *escasez*, scarcity; and many others.

There are also a few nouns of which the gender is not generally settled, as some authors consider them masculine and others feminine. The following is a list of them:—

albalá, certificate, docket.	emblema, emblem.
anatema, anathema.	hipérbole, hyperbole.
arte, ¹ art.	mar, ² sea.
azúcar, sugar.	márgen, margin.
calor, heat.	nema, letter-seal.
canal, canal.	órden, ³ order.
cisma, schism.	pringue, grease.
cútis, skin.	punte, bridge.
dote, dowry.	tribu, tribe.

¹ *Arte* is always feminine when used in the plural number.

² The compounds of *mar* are universally feminine; as *bajamar*, low water; *plenamar*, high water.

³ *Orden* is feminine when it means *order*, in the sense of command.

Exercise on the Gender of Nouns

VOCABULARY

el orgullo, the pride.
 la ignorancia, the ignorance.
 la inocencia, the innocence.
 el amor, the love.
 la virtud, the virtue.
 la cima, the summit.
 el monte, the mountain.
 la fertilidad, the fertility.
 la tierra, the soil.
 la compañía, the company.
 la situación, the situation.
 la enfermedad, the disease.
 la voz, the voice.
 recientemente, recently.
 la uña, the finger-nail.
 la mano, the hand.
 derecha, right.
 izquierda, left.
 el dedo, the finger.
 el dedo del pie, the toe.
 la cabeza, the head.
 la nariz, the nose.
 la boca, the mouth.
 el brazo, the arm.
 la pierna, the leg.
 el codo, the elbow.
 la rodilla, the knee.
 la muñeca, the wrist.
 azul, blue.
 el país, the country.

el tratado, the treatise.
 por, by.
 historiador, historian.
 con, with.
 la figura, the figure.
 la circunstancia, the circumstance.
 el objeto, the object.
 el sistema, the system.
 la cruz, the cross.
 el honor, the honour.
 la brillantez, the brilliancy.
 el terreno, the land.
 el planeta, the planet.
 el pulgar, the thumb.
 el índice, the first (index) finger.
 el cordial, the second finger.
 el anular, the third finger.
 el meñique, the little finger.
 el pie, the foot.
 el cuello, the neck.
 el ojo, the eye.
 la oreja, the ear.
 el hombro, the shoulder.
 el tobillo, the ankle.
 el corazón, the heart.
 el hígado, the liver.
 la espalda, the back.
 el estómago, the stomach.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

Self-love (*amor propio*) and pride are the offspring (*hijos*) of ignorance. Innocence, honour, and the love of virtue are estimable (*apreciable*). The summits of the mountains are very pleasant. Cultivation contributes (*contribuye*) to the fertility of the soil. I require a footman (*lacayo*) and a maid-servant (*criada*). My nephew (*so-*

brino, m.) and niece (*sobrina, f.*) are just arrived (*acaban de llegar*). Who is her husband? Is that lady his wife? His son-in-law and daughter-in-law are going in company with the marquis and marchioness. The situation of the country. The treatise appears (*parece*) to have been written (*escrito*) by an historian. The duke and duchess were (*estaban*) walking (*paseando*) with the earl and countess. Amplification or (*ó sea*) climax is a figure of speech (*retórica*) that gradually heightens (*va subiendo de grado en grado*) the circumstances of an object. They follow (*siguen*) the same system. He was decorated (*condecorado*) with the cross of honour. The symptoms of the disease. It is the custom (*costumbre*) of the times. The brilliancy of their voices. The aridity (*aridez*) of that land. On the map (*mapa*) are seen all the planets and comets recently discovered (*descubiertos*).

READING EXERCISE

¿Cuántos dedos tiene Vd.? Tengo diez: cinco en la mano derecha y cinco en la mano izquierda. ¿Cómo se llaman? El pulgar, el índice, el cordial, el anular y el meñique. ¿Cuántos dedos tiene Vd. en el pie? Tengo cinco dedos en cada pie; tengo dos pies. Dígame algo más de su persona. Tengo una cabeza, una nariz, una boca y un cuello. Tengo dos ojos, dos orejas, dos hombros, dos brazos y dos piernas. Tengo dos codos y dos rodillas. ¿Cuántas muñecas tiene Vd.? Tengo dos muñecas y dos tobillos. ¿Tiene Vd. dos corazones? No, no tengo más que un corazón y un hígado. También tengo estómago y espalda. ¿Tiene Vd. muchos huesos en el cuerpo? Sí, señor. Todo el mundo tiene muchos huesos. ¿De qué color son los ojos de Vd.? Son azules. Los suyos son castaños (*brown*). Vd. tiene hermosos ojos. Los ojos son el espejo (*mirror*) del alma.

CASE OF NOUNS

1. Case is that declension, or variation, to which nouns and pronouns are subject, in their different positions with regard to other nouns and pronouns, or to verbs and prepositions. For instance, a noun that is the *subject* of a verb, that *governs* the verb, or brings the verb into agreement with it, is in a very different relation, or *case*, from a noun that is governed *by* or is the *object* of a verb. In the sentence *The man struck me*, it is obvious that *man* is in a different relation, or state, as regards the verb from what it is in *I struck the man*. In the first example *man*, the noun, is said to be the *subject* of the verb *to strike*; *man* is the *agent* of that verb. But in the second, *man* is governed *by* the verb, and is the *object* upon which the action or energy of that verb falls. In the first case the person *acts*; in the second he is *acted upon*. Similarly, the pronoun *I*, the subject, has quite a different form from the pronoun *me*, the object.

2. Besides these two cases of acting and being acted upon, a noun or pronoun may be in the case of *possessing* some person or thing; as, *Here is Edward's book*; in which example *Edward's* denotes the possessor of an article expressed by the noun *book*. It may likewise be in the case of having something *sent* or *directed* to it; as, *I sent the letter to Henry*; where *Henry* is the *receiver* of the *letter*. It may also be in the case of having something *separated* or *taken away* from it; as, *He took the book from the shelf*; where we see that the noun *shelf* is in the case of having something *taken away* from it. Or it may be in the case of being *instrumental* in the performing of an action; as, *The letter was carried by John*; in which *John* is regarded as in the *instrumental* case, John being the instrument in conveying the *letter*. Here, then, are nouns exhibited in five different positions of cases—namely, that of *acting*, that of *being acted upon*, that of *possessing*, that of *receiving*, and that of having something

separated, and in being *instrumental* in the performance of an action (the latter two being included by grammarians in one case). These different cases are called the **Nominative**, which denotes the actor or subject; the **Genitive**, the *possessor*; the **Dative**, the *receiver*; the **Accusative**, the *sufferer of an action*; and the **Ablative**, either that which has something *separated from* it, or that which is *instrumental* in the performance of an action.

3. The names by which the cases are designated are of Latin origin; and the following is the manner in which nouns are declined in Latin, Spanish, and English:—

Nominative	...	...	Dominus,	El Señor,	The Lord.
Genitive or Possessive	...	...	Domini,	Del Señor,	Of the Lord.
Dative	...	...	Domino,	Al Señor,	To the Lord.
Accusative or Objective	...	...	Dominum,	Al Señor,	The Lord.
Ablative	...	...	Domino,	Por el Señor,	By the Lord.

We here see that in Latin neither article nor preposition is required to distinguish the cases of the nouns, the terminations alone of the nouns being adequate to that purpose; but in Spanish and very frequently in English, prepositions are employed for this end.

Not always is the same preposition used with the same case in Spanish and English; indeed, very frequently a preposition is employed in one language and not in the other. This is a subject of some difficulty in all languages, and, as regards the Spanish and English, it will be amply treated upon in its place.

4. In addition to the above five cases, we see in Latin grammars another case, called the **Vocative**; as *Domine*, *O Señor*, *O Lord*. But this case may be reasonably dispensed with in those languages in which nouns have not the inflections of Latin nouns, since a noun in the *vocative* case is evidently a nominative in a different attitude; and even in many Latin nouns these two cases have the same form.

5. The cases, as before observed, are marked in Latin by the terminations of the noun; in English, one

case, namely the possessive, is frequently formed by the addition of an *s* with the apostrophe; as, *the Lord's*. In Spanish, as in French and Italian, the noun itself never undergoes any variation to denote case; but pronouns frequently do, in both Spanish and English.

6. We will now proceed to the explanation and application of the cases. Observe, first, that the nominative, being the case that governs or requires a verb to be in *agreement* with it, is itself never governed; the accusative is governed by verbs; the genitive, the dative, and the ablative are governed by prepositions.

7. A noun or pronoun is in the *nominative* case when it names a person or thing in a state of *being* or *doing* anything at any period; as, *Charles is ill. He has written a letter. The ship will sail to-morrow.* In these examples, *Charles*, *he*, and the *ship* are each in the nominative case: the noun *Charles* denotes a person who is in a *state of being* ill; the pronoun *he* refers to a person who has performed some action, namely, that of *writing*; and the noun *ship* describes an inanimate object about to do something, namely, to *sail*. Therefore the person or thing that *is*, or that *acts*, is in the nominative case; and as *being* and *action* are expressed by verbs, the nominative *governs* the verb, and is the *subject* or *agent* of the verb.

The following are some examples, in Spanish and English, of nouns and pronouns in the nominative case:—

José está durmiendo.

Él escribe bien.

Los árboles crecen.

Ellos han hablado.

Joseph is asleep.

He writes well.

The *trees* grow.

They have spoken.

8. A noun or pronoun is in the *genitive* or *possessive* case when it describes anything as the *possessor* of any person or thing; as, *Maria's fan. His sword.* Or when it describes any person or thing to which another noun *relates*; as, *The laws of the country. The Prince of Wales.* In these examples, the noun *Maria* and the pronoun *his* are in the *genitive* case; the former being the *possessor*

of the noun *fan*, the latter of the noun *sword*. *Country* and *Wales* are likewise in the genitive case, because the noun *laws* relates to the first, and the noun *Prince* to the second. *De, of*, is the only preposition employed in the genitive case. Observe that *de* governs the ablative case when it means *from, by, out, of, &c.*, and is only employed in the genitive case when it means *of*. (See paragraph 12.)

The following examples in the genitive case are:—

El caballo de Pedro.
El reinado de Augusto.
Su libro. Sus plumas.

Peter's horse.
The reign of *Augustus*.
His book. *Their* pens.

9. Nouns denoting persons or things to whom or to which anything is *given, sent, or directed*, or anything is *intended*, are in the *dative* case; as, *I gave the book to Horace. He sent James a present. Frederick bought the desk for Alfred. They wrote him a letter.* In these examples we see that the nouns *Horace, James, Alfred*, and the persons represented by the pronoun *him*, have *respectively* something *given, sent, directed to, or intended for* them; and that they are the *receivers* of the things so *given, sent, &c.* Nouns in the *dative* case are preceded by the prepositions *á* or *para, to* or *for*. Pronouns in this case are sometimes, but not always, preceded by prepositions. (See the Declension of Pronouns after paragraph 13.)

Observe that a noun or pronoun in the *dative* case is not the *direct* or *immediate* object of the verb; that is, the action of the verb does not fall immediately upon it; it is in the *indirect* object; the thing *given, sent, &c.*, is the immediate object of the verb, and in the *accusative* or *objective* case, as we shall presently see.

Examples in the *dative* case:

Escribí al Capitan.
Él lo compró para Elena.
Le enviarán la carta.
Ella les ha dado la noticia.

I wrote *to the Captain*.
He bought it *for Helen*.
They will send *him* the letter.
She has given *them* the news.

NOTE.—The prepositions *á* and *para* govern the dative case only when the noun which they precede receives the benefit or injury of the action of the verb, as in the above examples; otherwise they govern the accusative. (See paragraph 11.)

10. A noun or pronoun is in the *accusative* or *objective* case when it represents the person or thing affected by some action done to it, or on which the action of the verb falls; as, *James beat Henry. Charles vexed him.* In the first example, *Henry* is the *object beaten*; the action of the verb falls on him. In the second, the person represented by the pronoun *him* is the object of the verb *to vex*, and is affected by the action of that verb. All nouns and pronouns in this case are the *immediate* or *direct objects* of the verb, as noticed before. Generally speaking, when the noun in the accusative case represents a *person*, it is preceded in Spanish by the preposition *á*. (See observations on this preposition, paragraph 13.)

Examples in the accusative case:

Ignacio ama *á* Carlota.

He escrito una carta.

Teresa le vio.

Él la estima.

Ignatius loves *Charlotte*.

I have written a *letter*.

Theresa saw *him*.

He esteems *her*.

11. Besides the preposition *á*, the following prepositions sometimes govern the accusative case, namely, *ante*, *contra*, *entre*, *hacia*, *hasta*, *para*, *según*, *tras*. Ex.:

Respondió *á* la carta.

Compareció *ante* el juez.

Dió *contra* la peña.

Le hallé *entre* la gente.

Van *hacia* Valencia.

Fueron *hasta* Segovia.

Salió *para* Madrid.

Es *según* la ley.

Tras el Duque venia el Conde.

He answered *the* letter.

He answered *before* the judge.

It struck *against* the rock.

I found him *amongst* the people.

They are going *towards* Valencia.

They went *as far as* Segovia.

He set out *for* Madrid.

It is *according to* law.

After the Duke came the Count.

The preposition *por*, *through*, *by*, also governs the accusative when preceded by verbs denoting movement; as, *Pasó por mi ventana* (He passed *by* my window). But

when it is preceded by verbs that do not denote movement, it governs the *ablative* case; as, Lo hice por yerro (I did it *through* mistake). Agrada por su cortesia (He pleases *by* his courteous behaviour). The preposition *sobre*, *above*, *upon*, likewise governs the accusative when it denotes *moral superiority*; as, La caridad es sobre todas las virtudes (Charity is *above* all virtues). But when it denotes *locality*, it governs the *ablative*; as, Está sobre la mesa (It is *upon* the table).

12. A noun or pronoun is in the *ablative* case when it denotes a person or thing in the state of having something *taken away* or *separated* from it; as, He drew the money from his pocket. They separated the child from the mother. Here the nouns *pocket* and *mother* are in the *ablative* case, because each has had something *taken* or *separated* from it. The person or thing that is *instrumental* in the doing of an action, or that denotes the *means through* or *by* which a thing is done, is likewise in the *ablative* case; as, He succeeded through the aid of his friends. The box was sent by the coach.

Besides the prepositions *de*, *por*, and *sobre*, already mentioned, the following are also employed in the *ablative* case—namely, *con*, *with*; *desde*, *from*; *en*, *in*; *sin*, *without*. Examples in the *ablative* case:

He recibido una carta de mi socio.	I have received a letter from my partner.
Traje este libro de la librería.	I brought this book from the library.
Lo hizo de or por envidia.	He did it through envy.
Murió de una caída.	He was killed by a fall.
La música está sobre el piano.	The music is upon the piano.
Fueron con él.	They went with him.
Vengo desde Granada á caballo.	I come from Granada on horseback.
Van en coche.	They are going in a coach.
Estoy sin dinero.	I am without money.

NOTE.—For the English student the above distinctions of case are chiefly of importance as bearing on the employment of the prepositions, since the noun keeps the same *form* in whatever case it stands.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE EMPLOYMENT OF THE PREPOSITION *á* WITH THE ACCUSATIVE OR OBJECTIVE CASE

13. Active verbs in Spanish generally govern a noun in the accusative case with the preposition *á*, if it represent a person. The use of the preposition *á* is to point out the immediate object of the verb, when it is not sufficiently denoted without its assistance; a circumstance that very frequently occurs in Spanish, from the great variety of syntactical inversion which the language admits, as will be observed by the following sentence, which may, with the same words, be expressed in six different ways without altering the sense in the least; and where, but for the preposition, we could not ascertain which of the two nouns was the nominative and which the object of the verb (see Construction of Nouns, paragraph 14). Ex.:

Cain mató á Abel.	}	Cain killed Abel.
Cain á Abel mató.		
Á Abel mató Cain.		
Á Abel Cain mató.		
Mató Cain á Abel.		
Mató á Abel Cain.		

When the immediate object of the verb is not an animate being, the preposition *á* is seldom used; except, sometimes, when both the nominative and the accusative are of the same number, in which latter case the preposition may be of use to prevent ambiguity. Ex.: *El árbol arbrigó á la casa* (The tree sheltered the house).

Here the preposition points out *casa* to be the *object* of the verb; and if the syntactical *order* of the sentence be inverted thus, *Á la casa abrigó el árbol*, still *casa* appears in the objective case; but if we dispense with the preposition *á* in the sentence, as it now stands its meaning would be quite the opposite to what it was in its original form, since it would signify, *The house sheltered the tree*.

Sentences occur in which there are two nouns of the same number, one in the *accusative*, the other in the *dative* case, and both representing *persons*; as, *We sent the captain to the merchant*. Now, if in translating this sentence into Spanish we employ the preposition *á* before both nouns, it would produce ambiguity, for we should not know whether the person sent was the captain or the merchant. Therefore, to avoid obscurity in instances of this nature, we should dispense with the preposition in the *accusative* case, and employ it only in the *dative*; thus, *Enviámos el capitán al negociante*.

Upon the whole, therefore, there seems always to have existed a tendency to the general adoption of the preposition *á* before *personal* nouns in the accusative case. And as regards nouns that do not represent persons, it would be advisable to employ the preposition in such sentences as are ambiguous without it; and, generally, where ambiguity might result from its omission. This method^{*} would be the safest to practise, and would harmonize with the idiom of the Spanish language.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS WITH THE ARTICLE

Masculine nouns referring to persons

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>el hombre,</i>	the man.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>del hombre,</i>	of the man.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>al hombre or para el hombre,</i>	to <i>or</i> for the man.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>al hombre,</i>	the man.
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>por, de, en, sin, con, sobre</i> <i>el hombre,</i>	by, from, in, without, with, upon the man.

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>los hombres,</i>	the men.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>de los hombres,</i>	of the men.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>á or para los hombres,</i>	to <i>or</i> for the men.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>á los hombres,</i>	the men.
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>por, &c., los hombres,</i>	by, &c., the men.

Feminine nouns referring to persons

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	la mujer,	the woman.
<i>Gen.</i>	de la mujer,	of the woman.
<i>Dat.</i>	á or para la mujer,	to or for the woman.
<i>Acc.</i>	á la mujer,	the woman.
<i>Abl.</i>	por, &c., la mujer,	by, &c., the woman.

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	las mujeres,	the women.
<i>Gen.</i>	de las mujeres,	of the women.
<i>Dat.</i>	á or para las mujeres,	to or for the women.
<i>Acc.</i>	á las mujeres,	the women.
<i>Abl.</i>	por, &c., las mujeres,	by, &c., the women.

Masculine nouns referring to things

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	el libro,	the book.
<i>Gen.</i>	del libro,	of the book.
<i>Dat.</i>	al libro or para el libro,	to or for the book.
<i>Acc.</i>	el libro,	the book.
<i>Abl.</i>	por, &c., el libro,	by, &c., the book.

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	los libros,	the books.
<i>Gen.</i>	de los libros,	of the books.
<i>Dat.</i>	á or para los libros,	to or for the books.
<i>Acc.</i>	los libros,	the books.
<i>Abl.</i>	por, &c., los libros,	by, &c., the books.

Feminine nouns referring to things

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	la carta,	the letter.
<i>Gen.</i>	de la carta,	of the letter.
<i>Dat.</i>	á or para la carta,	to or for the letter.
<i>Acc.</i>	la carta,	the letter.
<i>Abl.</i>	por, &c., la carta,	by, &c., the letter.

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	las cartas,	the letters.
<i>Gen.</i>	de las cartas,	of the letters.
<i>Dat.</i>	á or para las cartas,	to or for the letters.
<i>Acc.</i>	las cartas,	the letters.
<i>Abl.</i>	por, &c., las cartas,	by, &c., the letters.

CONSTRUCTION OF NOUNS

14. In the natural order of construction of Spanish nouns the nominative precedes, and the accusative follows, the verb, as is the case in English; but this order, for the sake of energy, elegance, or euphony, may be inverted in Spanish at pleasure, the nominative being placed after, and the accusative before, the verb. The latter inversion, however, does not occur so frequently as the former. The latitude which this inversion of the syntactical order is allowed in Spanish gives to it a power, facility, and beauty which perhaps no other modern language possesses to the same extent. Ex.:

Nominative after the verb

Con la precipitada ruina del imperio de occidente **varió** del todo el **semblante** político de la Europa; y **cesando** desde entonces las **relaciones** y **mutuos intereses** de las partes principales de aquel gran cuerpo social, y **quebrantados** los **eslabones** que unian las vastas provincias del imperio con su capital, que los débiles mortales llamaban ciudad eterna, se **vieron** como de repente nacer, crecer, y levantarse sobre las ruinas y escombros del viejo imperio todas las **monarquías** modernas.

Dió voces la castísima **Susana** entonces, y **viendo** los atrevidos **viejos**, &c.

Así en todas las lenguas, **arde** el **corazon**, **ciega** la **cólera**, **embriaga** el **amor**.

With the precipitate ruin of the empire of the west, the political aspect of all Europe changed entirely; and the relations and mutual interests of the principal parts of that great social body ceasing from that period, and the links being broken that united the vast provinces of the empire with the capital, which weak mortals called the eternal city, all the modern monarchies were seen to spring up suddenly, grow, and raise themselves on the ruins and fragments of the old empire.

The chaste Susanna then called aloud, and the daring old men seeing, &c.

Thus, in all languages, the heart kindles, anger blinds, love intoxicates. . . .

Accusative before the verb

Pocas cosas tenemos que no sean comunes á todos.

Tenemos muchas habilidades que feliz **fin** nos **prometen**.

Few things we possess that are not common to all.

We have many abilities that promise us a happy end.

15. The genitive, the dative, and the ablative always follow the preposition by which they are governed. Ex.:

La casa es de Juan.

Enviaron la noticia á Pedro.

Irán con el criado.

The house is John's.

They sent the news to Peter.

They will go with the servant.

The order of these sentences may be inverted, as far as regards the position of the verb. Still, however, the preposition must invariably precede the noun; as, *Es de Juan la casa. Á Pedro enviaron la noticia. Con el criado irán.*

16. When in English two nouns follow each other, the first being used like an adjective to specify the material, kind, purpose, occupation, or the like, of the other, their order is reversed in the translation, and the second noun in Spanish is placed in the genitive case, preceded by the preposition *de*. Ex.:

Mesa de caoba.

Cerradura de puerta.

Relojes de oro.

Oficial de artillería.

Mahogany table.

Door lock.

Gold watches.

Artillery officer.

17. The same inversion of order is likewise observed when one or more possessive cases follow one another in English; and the nouns are all translated in a retrograding order. Ex.:

Los rayos del sol.

La hermana de la esposa de mi
tio.

The sun's rays.

My uncle's wife's sister.

Sometimes the same order is used in English also. In such cases, whether the second noun be preceded by *of* or by *to*, it always requires *de* in Spanish. Ex.:

Son primos del duque.

El cumplimiento de las leyes del
estado.

They are cousins to (or of) the
duke.

The fulfilment of the laws of the
state.

If the English noun with the possessive sign ('s) be preceded by *of*, the preposition and article are required before both nouns in Spanish. Should, however, one of

the nouns be preceded by a possessive pronoun, this supplies the place of the article. Ex.:

Dos de los criados del duque.

Two servants of the duke's.

Uno de los ministros de su
majestad.

One of her majesty's ministers.

18. There are sentences in English in which a noun that should follow the sign of the possessive case ('s) is omitted, being readily supplied mentally; as, *He lives at the general's*; where the 's shows that *house* or *residence* must be understood. In such instances the order of the foregoing example is observed in the translation, translating *house* or *residence* by *casa*. Ex.:

Vive en casa del general.

He lives at the general's.

Vengo de casa del médico.

I come from the doctor's.

Exercise on the Construction of Nouns

VOCABULARY

el corazon, the heart.
la fortuna, the fortune.
la estimación, the estimation.
la obra, the work.
el valor, the valour.
la virtud, the virtue.
el acto, the act.
la guerra, the war.
el castillo, the castle.
la ofensa, the offence.
el diario, the newspaper.
el correo, the post.
la pistola, the pistol.
la hija, the daughter.
la cadena, the chain.
la cama, the bed.
la cortina, the curtain.
la muselina, the muslin.
el edificio, the edifice.
el mármol, the marble.
la columna, the column.
el interior, the interior.

la paja, the straw.
el guante, the glove.
el bronce, the bronze.
la seda, the silk.
la cinta, the ribbon.
el zapatero, the shoemaker.
el sastre, the tailor.
la conducta, the conduct.
la muerte, the death.
la derrota, the defeat.
el trono, the throne.
el cuadro, the picture.
el rebaño de ovejas, the flock of
sheep.
arrear, to drive.
el río, the river.
lavar, to wash.
la lana, the wool.
las tijeras, the shears.
trasquilar, sheep-shearing.
la fábrica, the factory.
el paño, the cloth.

la *casaca*, the coat.
 el *lomo*, the back.
 llevar, to carry, to wear.
 el *granero*, the barn.
 comer, to eat.
 llamar, to call.
 el *troj*, the hay-loft.

el *cabello*, the hair.
 jugar, to play.
 hay, there is, there are.
 hacia, towards, near to, about.
 anoche, last night.
 que, that.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

The human² heart¹ is not satisfied with what fortune or heaven (*cielo*) bestows on it (*le concede*). The estimation of satirical² (*satírica*) works¹ increases (*crece*) with their prohibition. Valour is seldom found (*pocas veces se halla*) where (*donde*) modesty is wanting (*falta*). In any species (*en cualquiera especie*) of virtue one individual (*particular*)² act¹ does not suffice (*no basta*) for a man to be virtuous (*virtuoso*). In war, judgment (*entendimiento*) conquers (*vence*) more than arms (*armas*). They attacked (*acometieron*) the castle on the weakest side (*lado más flaco*). Good actions (*obras*) should exceed (*han de exceder*) offences. This letter is for you, and the newspaper for me (*mí*). The dispatches will go (*irán*) by post. The two adversaries (*adversarios*) fought (*riñeron*) with pistols. She is first cousin (*prima hermana*) to the ambassador (*embajador*) of Austria's daughter. Here is (*aquí está*) your watch chain. The bed curtains were (*eran*) of India muslin. The front (*la frontera*) of the edifice was adorned (*adornada*) with marble columns; in the interior were seen (*se veían*) several bronze statues (*estatuas*). Show me (*muéstrame Vd.*) the straw hats, buckskin (*ante cuero*) gloves, and the silk ribbons. My brother's house is situated (*está situada*) near (*cerca*) to the Governor's garden. He is (*está*) at the shoemaker's. I saw² them¹ at the tailor's. I speak of the Duke's brother's conduct. Anacreon flourished (*floreció*) after (*después de*) Homer's death, and after the defeat of Croesus (*Creso*) the King of Lydia. Darius's son Xerxes ascended the throne of Persia after (*después*) his father's death.

READING EXERCISE

Aquí hay un cuadro de un rebaño de ovejas. Estuvimos en casa del tío Rafael en la temporada del esquila (*sheep-shearing time*). Los hombres arreaban las ovejas al río. ¿Para qué? (*What for?*) Para lavarles la lana. Después se la cortaban con tijeras de trasquilar. ¿Qué hicieron de ella? (*What did they do with it?*) Ellos la enviaron (*they sent it*) á la fábrica de tejidos (*cloth manufactory*). En la fábrica la convirtieron en paño. La casaca de Vd. estuvo primero en el lomo de una oveja. Ignoraba llevar puesta (*wearing*) una casaca ya usada (*second-hand coat*). Los niños (*children*) vieron cómo (*saw how*) trabajaban (*worked*) los hombres y luego entraron en el granero. Ellos no vinieron á comer, y tia Mariquita creyó (*believed*) que se habían caído en el río. Los llamamos (*we called them*), pero no respondieron (*but did not answer*). Se estaban escondiendo (*hiding*) en el troj. Tenian vergüenza (*ashamed*) de venir á la casa. Franky le había cortado (*had cut*) el cabello á Tomás con las tijeras de trasquilar. Parecía como si le hubiera afeitado (*It looked as though it had been shaved*). Él dijo que jugaban á la oveja (*He said they were playing sheep*). ¡Pobre Frenquito! ¡Que susto tuvo! (*How frightened he was!*) El quería ir desde luego á su casa (*He wanted to go home at once*).

CONVERSATION

He did it out of sheer necessity.
 We took severe measures.
 Nothing could shake his resolution.
 The report seems to be true.
 I shall have my eyes open in future.
 Taking one with another.
 I for one will not consent.
 Once for all.
 This will not occur again.

Lo hizo de pura necesidad.
 Tomamos medidas rigurosas.
 Nada pudo quebrantar su resolución.
 La noticia parece ser exacta.
 Tendré los ojos abiertos en lo sucesivo.
 Promediando.
 Yo por lo menos no consentiré en ello.
 De una vez para siempre.
 Este no volverá á suceder.

My orders are imperative.	Mis ordenes son imperativas.
He is a great help to me.	El me ayuda mucho.
I have long hesitated.	He vacilado mucho tiempo.
Avail yourself of every opportunity.	Aprovechese Vd. de todas las ocasiones.
I should be glad to receive a decided answer.	Me alegraré recibir una respuesta decisiva.
He tries to cut us out.	Trata de aventajarnos.
We have conveyed your wishes to him.	Le hemos trasmitido sus deseos.
You are very careless of your money.	Es Vd. muy descuidado con su dinero.
It belongs to us by right.	Esto nos pertenece de derecho.
Should any doubt arise in your mind.	Si le ocurriese duda.
There was no apology needed.	No era menester excusarse.
As it appears.	Según parece.
His answer did not satisfy me.	No me satisfizo su respuesta.
This is another question.	Este es otro asunto.

ADJECTIVES

AGREEMENT WITH THE NOUN

1. Adjectives, and participles used as adjectives, agree in Spanish in *number* and *gender* with the nouns to which they refer; as, *Un hombre alto*, a tall man; *una mujer alta*, a tall woman; *hombres altos*, tall men; *mujeres altas*, tall women.

Observe that the plural of adjectives is formed in precisely the same way as the plural of nouns.

AGREEMENT IN NUMBER

2. An adjective that refers to two or more nouns *singular* is used in the *singular* number if it *precedes* the nouns, and in the *plural* if it *follows* them. Ex.:

El merecido aplauso y elogio.	} The merited applause and praise.
El aplauso y elogio merecidos.	

3. When the adjective refers to nouns of *different* numbers, it is put in the *plural* if it *follows* the nouns, and *agrees* in number with the *first* if it precedes them. Ex.:

Su palacio y jardines hermosos .	}	His beautiful palace and gardens.
Su hermoso palacio y jardines.		
Sus palacios y jardín hermosos .	}	His beautiful palaces and garden.
Sus hermosos palacios y jardín.		

But should a verb intervene between the noun and the adjective that precedes it, the adjective should be in the plural number. Ex.:

Inclusos van factura y conocimientos.	Enclosed are the invoice and bills of lading.
---------------------------------------	---

AGREEMENT IN GENDER

4. Adjectives agree in gender with the nouns to which they refer, according to the following rules. Previously, however, to the pupil's becoming acquainted with them, it is necessary that he should know how to distinguish the gender of adjectives. This will be first explained.

5. Adjectives that terminate in **-an**, **-or**, **-on**, and **-o** are of the *masculine* gender; those ending in **-an**, **-on**, and **-or** are made feminine by the addition of an **a**, and those ending in **-o** by changing this vowel into **a**; those that end in any other letter are common to both genders. Ex.:

Un hombre haragan .	An indolent man.
Una mujer haragana .	An indolent woman.
Un muchacho jugueton .	A playful boy.
Una muchacha juguetona .	A playful girl.
Un hombre emprendedor .	An enterprising man.
Una mujer emprendedora .	An enterprising woman.
Un guerrero famoso .	A famous warrior.
Una accion famosa .	A famous action.
El marido feliz .	The happy husband.
La esposa feliz .	The happy wife.
Un motivo evidente .	An evident motive.
Una prueba evidente .	An evident proof.

Of those ending in *-or*, the following are exceptions, as they have only one termination: *Inferior*, inferior; *mayor*, greater; *mejor*, better; *menor*, less; *peor*, worse; *superior*, superior; and *ulterior*, ulterior.

6. Adjectives that qualify the feminine noun *nada* are always used in the masculine termination. Ex.:

Nada es mas contagioso que el ejemplo.	Nothing is more contagious than example.
Nada es mas cierto.	Nothing is more certain.

7. To adjectives derived from the names of kingdoms, countries, &c., ending in a consonant, an *a* is generally added to form their feminine termination; those that end in *o* change this vowel into *a*, and these ending in *e* are common to both genders. Thus, *Inglés* (*m.*), *Inglesa* (*f.*), English; *Español* (*m.*), *Española* (*f.*), Spanish; *Americano* (*m.*), *Americana* (*f.*), American; *Arabe* (*m.* and *f.*), Arabian.

8. When adjectives of this kind are employed in English with reference to articles of commerce, the productions of a country, and such like, the noun expressive of the name of a country that produces those articles, or in which they are manufactured, is generally used in Spanish instead of the adjective. Thus, Spanish wine, *vino de España*; French silks, *seda de Francia*. Literally, wine of Spain, silk of France.

9. The same construction is likewise generally observed in Spanish, in referring to persons regarding whom we rather intend to describe the country from which they come, or in whose government they are employed, than the place of their nativity; as, *El Embajador de Austria*, the Austrian Ambassador; *El Cónsul de España*, the Spanish Consul. This, however, must not be taken as an absolute rule, for such sentences may also be translated thus: *Seda Francesa*, *El Cónsul Español*, &c.

10. We have now to consider the *agreement* of adjectives in *gender* with the nouns which they qualify. Adjectives that refer to two or more nouns *singular*, of *different*

genders, are employed in the masculine gender if they *follow* the nouns, but agree in gender with the first noun if they *precede* the nouns. Ex.:

El ejército y la armada derrotados.	The army and navy defeated.
La armada y el ejército derrotados y destruidos.	The navy and army defeated and destroyed.
Su hermoso episodio y novela.	His beautiful episode and novel.
Su hermosa y entretenida novela y episodio.	His beautiful and entertaining novel and episode.

11. When adjectives refer to *two* or *more* nouns *plural*, whether they are put before or after them, they agree in gender with the *nearest* noun. Ex.:

Las hermosas montañas y valles.	The beautiful mountains and valleys.
Los hermosos y amenos valles y montañas.	The beautiful and pleasant valleys and mountains.
Los castillos y baterías bombardeadas.	The bombarded castles and batteries.
Las baterías y castillos bombardeados y tomados.	The batteries and castles bombarded and taken.

12. When the adjective refers to nouns of *different numbers* and *genders*, it is generally put in the plural number and masculine gender if it follows the nouns, and made to agree with the first when it precedes the nouns. Ex.:

El (<i>incluso</i>) conocimiento y facturas (<i>inclusos</i>).	The enclosed bill of lading and invoices.
Los (<i>inclusos</i>) conocimientos y factura (<i>inclusos</i>).	The enclosed bills of lading and invoice.
La (<i>inclusa</i>) factura y conocimientos (<i>inclusos</i>).	The enclosed invoice and bills of lading.
Las (<i>inclusas</i>) facturas y conocimiento (<i>inclusos</i>).	The enclosed invoices and bill of lading.

NOTE. — We should nevertheless endeavour to avoid qualifying two nouns that differ in gender and number, with an adjective that admits of both masculine and feminine terminations. For instance, though we may see

examples of the following nature, *Los vinos y la fruta eran exquisitos* (The wines and fruit were exquisite), yet there is something in them that offends the ear. In such cases it would be much better to employ an adjective of the common gender; as, *Los vinos y la fruta eran excelentes* (The wines and fruit were excellent), *Las frutas y el vino eran admirables* (The fruits and wine were admirable); or to employ a corresponding adjective with each noun; as, *Los vinos eran exquisitos y la fruta deliciosa* (The wines were excellent, and the fruit delicious), *Las frutas eran deliciosas y el vino exquisito* (The fruits were delicious, and the wine exquisite).—GRAMMAR OF THE ACADEMY.

13. Adjectives referring to the *titles* of individuals agree in gender with the *persons* to whom the titles belong. Ex.:

Su <i>Alteza</i> está indispueto.	His Highness is indisposed.
Son muy <i>bondadosos</i> sus <i>Señorías</i> .	Their Lordships are very kind.
Su <i>Alteza</i> está indispueta.	Her Highness is indisposed.
Son muy <i>bondadosas</i> sus <i>Señorías</i> .	Their Ladyships are very kind.

14. With nouns that are common to both genders the adjective varies to distinguish the gender; as, *Un jóven hermoso*, a handsome youth; *Una jóven hermosa*, a handsome lass.

15. When the adjectives *bueno*, *malo*, and *postrero* precede a noun masculine singular, they drop the final o; as, *Un buen hombre*, a good man; *Un mal consejo*, a bad advice; *El postrer día*, the last day.

NOTE.—See also the numeral adjectives *uno*, *primero*, *tercero*, and *ciento* (page 89).

16. *Santo* (saint), when employed in the singular number, before proper names of persons and places, drops the last syllable, except before *Domingo*, *Tomas*, *Tomé*, and *Toribio*; as, *San Pablo*, Saint Paul; *San Juan*, Saint John; *San Petersburgo*, Saint Petersburg; *Santo Tomas*, Saint Thomas; *Santo Domingo*, Saint Dominique.

17. *Grande*, great or large, when used before a noun

in the *singular* number of either gender, beginning with a consonant, generally drops the final syllable, and also when, in referring to nouns, it rather conveys an idea of *size* or *quantity* than of *greatness* and *excellence*; in which latter sense it generally retains the final syllable; and also when the substantive which follows it begins with a vowel or with *h*. This, however, is not to be taken as an absolute rule; as, *Un gran castillo*, a large castle; *una gran fiesta*, a great feast; *un gran cuchillo*, a large knife; *grande amor*, great love; *grande hazaña*, a great achievement.

Exercise on the Agreement of Adjectives in Number and Gender

VOCABULARY

el honor, the honour.
la virtud, the virtue.
la hermosura, the beauty.
la modestia, the modesty.
la afabilidad, the affability.
la bondad, the kindness.
el temor, the fear.
la ciudad, the city.
el público, the public.
el edificio, the building.
la prueba, the proof.
holgazan, -a (*adj.*), lazy, indolent.
la aldea, the village.
la fuerza, the strength.
el corazon, the heart.
feliz (*adj.*), happy, fortunate.
el muchacho, the boy.
sagaz (*adj.*), sagacious.
la fragata, the frigate.
la goleta, the schooner.
la lana, the wool.
muy, very.
los géneros, the goods.
la fama, the fame.
el valor, the valour.

el orgullo, the pride.
el palacio, the palace.
Señoría, Ladyship.
la Reina, the Queen.
el Conde, the Earl.
la conciencia, the conscience.
la epístola, the epistle.
la isla, the island.
el proyecto, the project.
la victoria, the victory.
el apetito, the appetite.
el navío, the ship.
la aventura, the adventure.
la burla, the joke.
el criado, the servant.
el vasallo, the vassal.
el gobernador, the governor.
el agua, the water.
bellaco, roguish.
la codicia, the craving.
mañana, to-morrow.
el oficio, the office.
la dignidad, the rank.
el abogado, the lawyer.
el soldado, the soldier.

el sacerdote, the priest.
 el duque, the duke.
 aunque, although.
 el ganado, the herd of cattle.
 la insula, the island.
 aquí, here.
 pronto, soon.
 la mano, the hand.
 la licencia, the permission.

la intención, the intention, the purpose.
 aconsejar, to advise.
 el deseo, the desire.
 el gusto, the taste.
 el día, the day.
 la noche, the night.
 la mañana, the morning.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

Disinterestedness (*desinteres*) and honour deserve to be praised (*alabado*). Her virtue and her beauty are universally (*universalmente*) admired (*admirado*). Modesty, affability, and kindness are recommendable. Let us reflect (*reflexionemos*) on the sad (*triste*) consequences (*consecuencias*) that are inseparable from protracted² (*dilatado*) wars¹. His fears were (*fueron*) vain (*vano*). The streets and squares (*plaza*) of the city are spacious (*espacioso*), and the public² buildings¹ magnificent. It is a convincing² (*convinciente*) and palpable³ (*evidente*) proof¹. He is (*es*) a brave² (*valiente*) and faithful³ (*fiel*) man¹. She is very lazy. They live (*viven*) in a fine house on the banks (*á orillas*) of a rich² (*caudaloso*) river¹, near (*cerca de*) a small (*pequeño*) village. These are consolatory² tidings¹ (*noticia*). They possess (*poseen*) considerable (*mucho*) moral² strength¹ and heroic (*heróica*) virtue; ardent² (*ardiente*) imaginations¹ (*imaginación*) and noble² hearts¹. It is a happy² idea¹. He is a happy² man¹. A sagacious² boy¹. A sagacious girl. A French² frigate¹ and a Spanish² schooner¹ have arrived from the Danish² (*dinamarqués*) colonies¹ (*colonia*). That is a Spanish² cloak¹ (*capa*). Those ladies are Portuguese (*portugués*). Spanish wool is considered very good. I have purchased (*comprado*) some French goods (*género*). The Russian Plenipotentiary (*Plenipotenciario*) and the English Ambassador (*Embajador*) had a conference (*conferencia*) with the French emissary (*emisario*). Honour and

virtue are solid. Fame and valour are celebrated (*celebrado*). He has a beautiful house and garden. His usual haughtiness (*altivez*) and pride. Such (*tal*) discussions (*discusión*) and reasonings (*razonamiento*) are frivolous (*frívolo*). I do not give ear (*no presto oído*) to tales (*á cuentos*) and stories (*historia*) so ill founded (*tan mal fundado*). His Holiness (*Su Santidad*) and their Worships were escorted (*escortado*) to their palaces. His lordship the Earl of M. was presented to Her Majesty the Queen, who was attended (*acompañado*) by their ladyships the Marchionesses of E. The conscience of a good man is ever free (*siempre libre*), but that of a bad man (*la del malo*) is a prey to continual remorse (*está en un continuo remordimiento*). They came lately (*vinieron últimamente*) from the islands of Madeira. I have no (*no tengo*) great appetite. A large ship.

READING EXERCISE

De los consejos que dió Don Quijote á Sancho Panza, antes que fuese á gobernar la insula, con otras cosas bien consideradas.

Con el feliz y gracioso suceso de la aventura de la Dolorida, quedaron tan contentos los Duques, que determinaron pasar con las burlas adelante, viendo el acomodado sujeto que tenían para que se tuviesen por veras; y así habiendo dado la traza (*so having laid their plans*) y órdenes que sus criados y sus vasallos habían de guardar con Sancho en el gobierno de la insula prometida, otro día, dijo el Duque á Sancho que se adelinase (*to prepare*) y compusiese para ir á ser gobernador, que ya sus insulanos (*islanders*) le estaban esperando como el agua de mayo (*the showers of May*). Sancho se le humilló (*made his obeisance*) y le dijo: Ahora bien venga esa insula, que yo pugnaré (*I will try*) por ser tal gobernador, que á pesar (*that in spite*) de bellacos, me vaya al cielo (*I will go to heaven*); y esto no es por codicia que yo tenga de salir de

mis casillas (*to quit my own humble condition*) ni de levantarme a mayores (*to better myself*) sino (*but from*) por el deseo que tengo de probar á qué sabe el ser gobernador (*I have to try what it tastes like to be a governor*).

Si una vez lo probáis, Sancho—dijo el Duque—comeros habéis las manos tras el gobierno, por ser dulcísima cosa (*a sweet thing*) el mandar (*to command*) y ser obedecido (*and be obeyed*). Señor—replicó Sancho—yo imagino que es bueno mandar, aunque sea á un hato de ganado (*if it's only over a drove of cattle*).

Sancho—respondió el Duque (*said the duke*) yo espero que sereis tal gobernador como vuestro juicio promete (*I hope you will make as good a governor as your sagacity promises*), y quédese esto aquí (*and that is all I have to say*).

CONVERSATION

Forgive me if I disturb you.

Not at all, I am at your command.

You will greatly oblige me.

Your kindness is extreme.

How do you employ your money?

I turn it to account on stocks.

What news is there?

Let us talk of something else.

We congratulate you, sir.

On what, gentlemen?

The practice of writing letters in a foreign language is much more useful than the mere reading it in books.

The Spanish flag is ruby and yellow.

I am delighted to become acquainted with you, sir.

I shall do all in my power to deserve your good opinion.

Perdone Vd. si le incomodo.

De ningún modo, yo estoy á las órdenes de Vd.

Se lo agradeceré á Vd. infinito.

Sus procederes de Vd. son muy honrados.

¿ Como hace Vd. valer su dinero?

Lo hago valer en los fondos públicos.

¿ Que noticias hay?

Hablemos de otra cosa.

Señor, le damos á Vd. la enhorabuena.

¿ Y de qué, caballeros?

Mucho mas útil es la práctica de escribir cartas en una lengua estrangera que no lo es la mera lectura de sus libros.

La bandera española es roja y amarilla.

Tengo el mayor placer, caballero, en conocer á Vd.

Haré cuanto esté en mi poder, para granjearme su aprecio de Vd.

Virtue is amiable.	La virtud es amable.
Vice is odious.	El vicio es odioso.
What sort of night have you passed?	¿Como ha pasado Vd. la noche?
Is that your opinion?	¿ Es esa su opinion de Vd.?
That speaks for itself.	Eso habla de por sí.
I am sorry you should have had to wait.	Siento el que haya Vd. tenido que esperar.
It is sufficient for you to know that.	Basta que Vd. sepa eso.

POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE

1. Adjectives in Spanish *generally follow* the nouns to which they refer. Ex.:

El objeto principal.	The principal object.
El ejército inglés.	The English army.
Una vida ociosa.	An idle life.

2. To the foregoing rule, the following instances are exceptions, as in them the adjective *usually precedes* the noun.

1st.—Adjectives employed as attributes, or that denote the natural or inherent properties of nouns, as also those used as epithets. Ex.:

Los hermosos colores del iris.	The beautiful colours of the rainbow.
El duro hierro.	The hard iron.
El paciente Job.	The patient Job.
El soberbio Lucifer.	The proud Lucifer.

2nd.—Adjectives accented on the antepenult; hence, likewise, superlatives that terminate in *ísimo*. Ex.:

Su pérfida conducta.	His perfidious conduct.
Son hermosísimas obras.	They are most beautiful works.
Qué bellísimo día!	What a very fine day!

3rd.—Numeral adjectives. Ex.:

Veinte hombres.	Twenty men.
La primera cosa.	The first thing.

In referring to royalty and other dignities, however, the numeral adjective *follows* the noun. Ex.:

Isabel Segunda.	Isabel the Second.
Gregorio Primero.	Gregorio the First.

The adjectives **todo, mucho, poco, pocos, cierto, cada, varios, tal, dicho, mismo** (all much, little, few, certain, each or every, several, such, said, same), likewise generally *precede* the noun. Ex.:

Todo el mundo.	All the world.
Todas las señoras.	All the ladies.
Mucho dinero.	Much money.
Muchas veces.	Many times.
Poco mérito.	Little merit.
Pocas alabanzas.	Few praises.
Cierto sujeto.	A certain person.
Ciertas indicaciones.	Certain indications.
Cada individuo.	Each individual.
Varias cosas.	Various things.
Tal hombre.	Such a man.
Tales personas.	Such persons.
Dicho hombre v <i>dichas</i> mujeres.	The said man and women.
El mismo día.	The same day.
Las mismas ideas.	The same ideas.

Cierto, nevertheless, in the sense of *sure*, generally follows the noun. Ex.:

Es cosa cierta.	It is a certain thing.
Son noticias ciertas.	They are certain news.

3. The foregoing rules on the position of adjectives are not to be considered as *positive* rules; the position of the adjective depends much on taste; as writers, for the sake of energy, harmony, and variety, place the adjective variously with respect to the noun which it qualifies. As a general rule, it might be said that adjectives in Spanish commonly *follow* the noun, except when, for particular emphasis or elegance, they are placed before it. For instance, in the following example, Lope de Vega adds

greater emphasis to the meaning of the adjectives, and more elegance to the construction of the clause, by placing them before the nouns: "*Entre otras apacibles partes que alegraban y ennoblecian el ameno sitio, era un espeso bosque de blancos álamos*", &c. (Amongst other pleasant parts that enlivened and embellished the delightful spot, was a thick forest of white poplars, &c.). Again **Cadalso**, in describing the local situation of Spain, says: "*Esta feliz situación la hizo objeto de la codicia de los Fenicios y otros pueblos*" (This happy situation made her an object of the desire of the Phœnicians and other nations). He no doubt placed the adjective *feliz* before the noun *situación*, because it was his principal intention to express the *superiority* of the local situation of Spain. In the following sentence, **Marina** adds more harmony, strength, and elegance to its construction by appropriately placing some of the adjectives before the nouns: "*El grandioso y magnífico espectáculo de la historia general de la especie humana, y su varia y continuada perspectiva de acontecimientos extraordinarios y transformaciones políticas*", &c. (The grand and magnificent spectacle of the general history of the human species, and its varied and continued perspective of extraordinary events and political transformations, &c.).

Exercise on the Position of the Adjective

VOCABULARY

la vista, the sight.
 el paisaje, the landscape.
 inagotable, inexhaustible.
 el manantial, the source.
 delicioso, delightful.
 evidente, evident.
 indicio, signs.
 poderoso, powerful.
 la población, the people.
 la historia, the history.
 la elevación, the height.

cubierto, covered.
 humano, human.
 desconocido, unknown.
 numeroso, numerous.
 la existencia, the existence.
 el pueblo, the people.
 el Europeo, the European.
 el navegante, the navigator
 fiero, fierce.
 el leon, the lion.
 manso, tame.

escalon, step.
 duro, hard.
 el mármol, the marble.
 fatigado, weary.
 la nieve, the snow.
 el frío, the cold.
 marchito, withered.
 delicado, delicate.
 querido, dear.
 dónde, where.
 el sabio, the wise.
 benemérito, worthy.
 ambicioso, ambitious.
 el regimiento, the regiment.
 el amigo, the friend.
 la deuda, the debt.
 la persona, the person.
 jamas, never.

jugar, to play.
 la pelota, the ball.
 primero, first.
 cualquiera, either, anyone.
 el palo, the stick, the bat.
 el guante, the glove.
 ayer, yesterday.
 mañana, to-morrow.
 los niños, the children.
 lunes, Monday.
 martes, Tuesday.
 miércoles, Wednesday.
 jueves, Thursday.
 viernes, Friday.
 sábado, Saturday.
 domingo, Sunday.
 cuándo, when.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

The sight of a fine (*bello*) landscape is an inexhaustible source of delightful sensations (*sensación*). Various parts (*varios puntos*) in North America discover (*descubren*) evident signs of remote (*remoto*) epochs (*época*), and prove (*manifiestan*) the existence of a great and powerful people, whose history is doubtless lost (*sin duda se perdió*) for ever. Immense heights, unfrequented (*no frecuentado*) by the modern Indians, covered with human bones (*hueso*), unknown arms, remains (*resto*) of walled (*murado*) cities, and numerous inscriptions (*inscripción*) in unknown languages (*idioma, m.*), announce (*anuncian*) the indisputable existence (*existencia*) of a people different from those (*aquellos*) which European navigators found (*encontraron*) in those countries (*país*). The fierce lion devoured (*devoró a*) the tame sheep. On that (*sobre aquel*) step of hard marble she rested her weary limbs (*miembros*). The cold snow withered the delicate flowers. My dear father; where are my dear sisters? The wise Solomon; the worthy (*benemérito, digno*) Titus; the ambitious Alexander. What a

very fine (*bellísimo*) day! The regiment consisted (*se componía*) of twelve companies (*compañía*) of fifty men each (*cada una*). They captured (*apresaron*) all the ships and sunk (*echaron á pique*) all the gunboats (*lanchas cañoneras*). He made many friends, but contracted (*contrajo*) many debts. Many are the disappointments (*contratiempo*) in the life (*vida*) of man. Few men are happy (*feliz*). His virtues are few. A certain (*un cierto*) friend (*amigo*) of mine gave² me¹ certain instructions (*instrucciones*) respecting a (*acerca de*) certain person. It is a certain thing (*cosa*). Every day you come (*que Vd. venga*) you will examine (*repasará*) each lesson. Such orders (*orden*) could never (*jamas*) have been given (*podieran ser dadas*) by such a general.

READING EXERCISE

Verb Drill

¿Quiere Vd. salir á jugar? Sí; quiero jugar á la pelota. ¿Vendrá el profesor con nosotros? Si; creo que vendrá. ¿Quién tirará (*will throw*) la pelota primero? Cualquiera. No me importa quién. ¿Quién tiene un palo? Yo tengo un palo y un guante. ¿Dónde los consiguió Vd.? Los compré. Estoy jugando. ¿Quién está jugando? Vd. está jugando. Yo jugué ayer. ¿Cuándo jugué yo? Vd. jugó ayer. Yo jugaré mañana, el jugará pasado mañana, jugaremos todos juntos (*all together*). ¿Jugará Rafael la semana proxima (*next week*). Sí; él jugará con nosotros. ¿Cuándo jugaron las niñas? Ellas jugaron todos los días excepto el domingo. ¿Jugó su primo de Vd. el lunes y el viérnes? No, él jugó el miércoles. ¿Cuándo jugaremos otra vez? Jugaremos tiempo permitiendo, el juéves, el viérnes y el sábado. Juan tira la pelota. ¡Cójala, papá (*Catch it, father!*), cójala! Tenemos un compañero nuevo. ¿En dónde? ¿En el patio? (*In the yard?*) Cuidado, muchachos, no golpeen la ventana (*Be careful, boys, not to hit the window*). Empece-

mos otra vez (*let us begin again*). Vd. debe tirar (*to throw*) mejor la próxima vez (*the next time*). Yo era buen jugador cuando era niño. Quisiera ser muchacho otra vez. Si la pelota rueda (*rolls*) en la zanja (*ditch*), se perderá (*it will be lost*). Ya la hallaron (*They have found it*). Tráiganla aquí, muchachos (*Bring it here, boys*). ¿Qué tiempo tendremos mañana? Amigo esto es lo que no se puede saber, pues entonces Á Dios. Nos hemos divertido mucho.

CONVERSATION

I admit the force of your argument.

You have put me to great expense.

Pray explain it to us.

We do not like the manner in which you treat us.

He has no method.

It is no use mincing matters.

I have taken every advice on this subject.

I cannot afford these expenses.

Our opinions on that point agree.

This statement is wanting in accuracy.

You must be accountable for it.

I am not against it.

After all, I think it best to accept your offer.

I cannot admit of this excuse.

We cannot aid you in the matter.

We are not at all inclined to dispute it.

I do not like the look of it.

Endeavour to dissuade him from it.

I foresaw it.

I leave it to your generosity.

Admito la fuerza del argumento de Vd.

Vd. me ha hecho incurrir en grandes gastos.

Sírvase explicárnoslo.

No nos gusta el modo como Vd. nos trata.

No tiene sistema.

Inútil es pararse en repulgos.

He tomado suficientes informes sobre este asunto.

No puedo incurrir en gastos de esta naturaleza.

Coinciden nuestras ideas sobre este asunto.

Esta relación no es exacta.

Vd. me responderá de ello.

No me opongo á ello.

Después de todo considero mejor aceptar la oferta de Vd.

No puedo admitir esta excusa.

No podemos ayudarle en este asunto.

No estamos inclinados á disputarlo.

No me agrada su apariencia.

Procure Vd. disuadirle de ello.

Lo preví.

Lo dejo á la generosidad de Vd.

DEGREES OF COMPARISON

1. As adjectives express some quality or property of the noun, this quality or property, when compared with that of other nouns, may be *equal*, *superior*, or *inferior* to it: for instance, *Your cloth is fine, his is finer, but mine is the finest of the three*. Here are specified *three* different *degrees* in the quality of the cloth; these are called *degrees of comparison*, and are distinguished by the names of *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*.

2. The *positive* expresses the quality without any reference or comparison, as in the foregoing example, *Your cloth is fine*; but when we say, *his is finer*, there is a *comparison* drawn between the two; and in the conclusion of the sentence, *mine is the finest of the three*, the quality of the cloth is placed in the *highest degree* of fineness as regards the three qualities.

3. In comparing things there are three states to be considered—namely, that of *equality*, that of *superiority*, and that of *inferiority*; as, *My house is as commodious as yours*; *Yours is more commodious than his*; *His is less commodious than theirs*.

4. The superlative expresses the quality in the *highest* or *lowest* degree; it is of two kinds, the one *relative*, the other *absolute*. The superlative *relative* expresses the quality of one thing with reference to that of others; as, *This is the handsomest house in the square*. But the superlative *absolute* expresses the quality of an object without reference to any other object; as, *This is a very handsome, or a most elegant house*.

FORMATION OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON IN
SPANISH—THE COMPARATIVE

5. The comparative of *equality* is formed in Spanish by placing the word *tan* (so or as) before, and *como* (as) after the adjective. Ex.:

El es *tan* rico como su hermano.

He is *as* rich *as* his brother.

If an *adjective* follow the comparative instead of a noun, *cuan* may be used in the place of *como*; as, *Es tan rico cuan soberbio*; or, *Es tan rico como soberbio* (He is as rich as *he is* proud). The latter form, however, is more frequently used.

Generally speaking, nevertheless, *cuan* (which is abbreviated from *cuanto*, like *tan* from *tanto*) is mostly used in the sense of the English comparative adverb *how*, employed in admiration; as in the following passage of Fr. Ant. De Guevara: *Ved, Serenísimo Príncipe, la vida de este príncipe, y veréis cuan claro fué en su juicio, cuan recto en su justicia, cuan recatado en su vida, cuan agradecido á sus amigos, cuan sufrido en los trabajos, &c.* (Observe, Illustrious Prince, the life of this prince, and you will see *how* clear he was in his judgment, *how* correct in his justice, *how* careful in his living, *how* grateful to his friends, *how* patient in troubles, &c.).

In a negative sense, no other alteration is required in Spanish than to place the negative particle before the verb; and this applies to all the following comparisons. Ex.:

No es *tan* fuerte *como* el otro.

It is *not so* strong *as* the other.

6. The comparative of *superiority* is formed by placing the word *más* (more) before the adjective, and *que* (than) after it; that of *inferiority*, by *ménos* (less) before, and *que* after. Ex.:

Es *más* rico *que* su hermano.

He is *richer than* his brother.

Es *ménos* vana *que* hermosa.

She is *less vain than* beautiful.

7. When both the comparative of equality and superiority are used in the same sentence, the conjunction expressed in Spanish should correspond with the last. Ex.:

Mis libros son tan buenos (como),
ó mejores *que* los suyos.

My books are as good as, or
better than his.

8. When in English the preposition *by* is used in

comparing the dimensions of two objects, the sentence takes a different turn in Spanish. Ex.:

Esta sala es seis pies más larga que aquella.	This hall is longer than that <i>by</i> six feet.
--	--

Which literally means: This hall is six feet longer than that.

THE SUPERLATIVE

9. The superlative *relative* is formed in Spanish by prefixing the definite article to the adjective in the comparative degree. Ex.:

Era la más hermosa mujer que había en la sala.	She was the handsomest woman in the room.
--	--

NOTE.—Sentences of this kind might also be expressed in Spanish without the second verb, then either the preposition *en* or *de* may be employed; as, *Era la más hermosa mujer en (or de) la sala.*

10. The superlative *absolute* is formed by placing the word **muy** (very or most) before the adjective in the positive degree, or by affixing **ísimo** to the adjective in this degree ending in a consonant; those which end in a vowel, drop the vowel before they admit the **ísimo**. Ex.:

Es muy hermosa mujer.	She is a <i>very</i> beautiful, or a <i>most</i> beautiful woman.
Son cortesisimos .	They are very courteous.
Es bellísima idea.	It is a <i>very</i> fine, or a most beauti- ful idea.

Of the two manners of forming the superlative, that in **ísimo** adds greater strength to the meaning of the adjective.

11. Some Spanish adjectives, in order to preserve their primitive hard or soft sound, undergo a slight alteration in their orthography before they admit the termination **ísimo**; thus adjectives ending in **co** and **go** change these letters respectively into **qu** and **gu**; as, *chico*, *chiquísimo*; *amargo*, *amarguísimo*. Those ending in **io** drop these two vowels—as, *amplio*, *amplísimo*—except *frio*, which only drops the **o**, as *friísimo*. Those ending in **ble** change this syllable into

bil; as, *amable*, *amabilísimo*. And those ending in *z* change this letter into *c*; as, *feliz*, *felicísimo*. *Acre* changes into *acérrimo*, *antiguo* into *antiquísimo*, *benéfico* into *benevolentísimo*, *benévolo* into *benevolentísimo*, *célebre* into *celebérrimo*, *fiel* into *fidelísimo*, *fuerte* into *fortísimo*, *libre* into *libérrimo*, *magnífico* into *magnificentísimo*, *misero* into *misérrimo*, *munífico* into *munificentísimo*, *noble* into *nobilísimo*, *sagrado* into *sacratísimo*, *salubre* into *salubérrimo*, *sabio* into *sapientísimo*. Some positives ending in *iente* drop the *i* when *ísimo* is added to them; such are, *ardiente*, *ardentísimo*; *ferviente*, *ferventísimo*; *luciente*, *lucentísimo*; *valiente*, *valentísimo*. Some adjectives having the diphthong *ie* in the penult also drop the *i*; as, *cierto*, *certísimo*; *tierno*, *ternísimo*. Some few, as *bueno*, *grueso*, *nuevo*, *fuerte*, change the diphthong *ue* into *o*; thus, *bonísimo*, *grosísimo*, *novísimo*, *fortísimo*.

12. The following comparatives and superlatives are irregularly formed:—

Positives.	Comparatives.	Superlatives.	
Bueno,	mejor,	óptimo.	Good, better, best.
Malo,	peor,	pésimo.	Bad, worse, worst.
Grande,	mayor,	máximo.	Great, greater, greatest.
Grande,	mayor,	máximo.	Large, larger, largest.
Pequeño,	menor,	mínimo.	Small, smaller, smallest.
Pequeño,	menor,	mínimo.	Little, less, least.
Bajo,	inferior,	ínfimo.	Low, lower, lowest.
Alto,	superior,	supremo.	High, higher, highest.
Mucho,	más,	—	Much, more.
Poco,	ménos,	—	Little, less.

Of this list, the positives and comparatives may also be formed into superlatives, by prefixing the adverb *muy* to the positives or by the addition of the termination *ísimo*, according to the directions already given; and by prefixing the definite article to the comparatives; as, *muy bueno*, or *bonísimo*, very good; *muy malo*, or *malísimo*, very bad; *el mejor*, the best; *el peor*, the worst. And all the positives, except *mucho*, may likewise be formed into com-

paratives by prefixing the adverb *mas* to them; as, *mas bueno*, better; *más malo*, worse; *mas grande*, larger, or greater; *más pequeño*, smaller.

13. Comparison may also take place with relation to *nouns*, *verbs*, and *adverbs*, in the following manner:

14. The comparative of *equality* in relation to *nouns*, is formed in Spanish by placing *tanto* (as much) before, and *como* (as) after the noun. Ex.:

Posee **tanto** talento **como** ella. He has *as much* talent *as* she.

15. In relation to *verbs*, it is formed by placing *tanto* *cuanto*, or *tanto como* (as much as), after the verb. Ex.:

Gasta **tanto** **cuanto**, or **tanto como**, gana. He spends *as much* *as* he earns.

Or thus, **tanto gasta cuanto gana**.

16. In relation to *adverbs*, it is formed by placing *tan* (as) before, and *como* (as) after the adverb. Ex.:

Escribe **tan** bien **como** habla. He writes *as well as* he speaks.

17. *As much* and *as many*, *so much* and *so many*, are each translated *tanto*, which agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it is prefixed. Ex.:

Tengo tantos libros y tanto papel como él.	I have <i>as many</i> books and <i>as much</i> paper as he.
¿Porqué tantas palabras?	Why <i>so many</i> words?
¡Hicieron tanto ruido!	They made <i>so much</i> noise!
No necesito tanto dinero.	I do not require <i>so much</i> money.

Quite as much and *quite as many* are translated *cuanto*, which also agrees in number and gender with the noun. Ex.:

Tengo cuanto dinero y cuantos alhajas pudiera desear.	I have <i>quite as much</i> money and <i>as many</i> jewels as I could desire.
---	--

18. *So as*, employed with an infinitive, require *tan que* in the translation, and *such as* require *tal que*; and the English infinitive is generally rendered in Spanish by a

verb in the same tense as that in which the preceding verb is placed. Ex.:

La noche fué **tan** oscura que nos **impidió** el salir.

Tal fué su conducta que **excitó** un disgusto general.

The night *was so* dark *as to prevent* our going out.

Such was his conduct *as to excite* (or that it excited) a general disgust.

19. The comparative of *superiority* with relation to *nouns* and *adverbs*, is formed by placing **más** (more) before and **que** (than) after them. Ex.:

Posee **más** talento **que** ella.

Lee **más** despacio **que** él.

He has *more* talent *than* she.

She reads *more* slowly *than* he.

20. In relation to *verbs*, it is formed by placing **más** **que** (more than) after them. Ex.:

Escribe **más** **que** su hermano.

He writes more than his brother.

21. The comparative of *inferiority* in relation to *nouns* and *adverbs*, is formed by placing **ménos** (less) before and **que** (than) after them. Ex.:

Posee **ménos** talento **que** ella.

Escribe **ménos** elegantemente **que** su predecesor.

No leo **ménos** despacio **que** Vd.

He has *less* talent *than* she.

He writes *less* elegantly *than* his predecessor.

I do not read *less* slowly *than* you.

22. In relation to *verbs*, it is formed by placing **ménos** **que** (less than) after them. Ex.:

Aprende **ménos** **que** su hermano.

He learns *less than* his brother.

23. *Than*, after a comparative (either of superiority or inferiority) coming before *what*, expressed or understood, is generally translated **de** in the affirmative, and **que** in the negative sense. Ex.:

Más **de** lo que él tiene.

Ménos **de** lo que creía.

No más **que** lo que dije.

Nadas **ménos** **que** lo que merece.

More *than what* he has.

Less *than what* I thought.

No more *than what* I said.

Nothing *less than* he deserves.

24. *Than*, after comparatives coming before numeral

adjectives, is also generally translated **de** in the affirmative, and **que** in the negative. Ex.:

Tengo **más** de ciento.

I have *more than one hundred*.

No tengo **más** que mil libras.

I have no *more than* a thousand pounds.

25. *The more, the more; the less, the less; the more, the less; and the less, the more;* being used in different parts of a sentence, the latter part of the expression being consequent on the former, are translated **cuanto más, tanto mas; cuanto ménos, tanto ménos; cuanto más, tanto ménos;** and **cuanto ménos, tanto mas**. Ex.:

Cuanto más estudiamos **tanto mas** sabrémos.

The more we study *the more* we will know.

Cuanto ménos lea Vd. **tanto ménos** sabrá.

The less you read *the less* you will know.

Cuanto más lee **tanto ménos** aprende.

The more he reads *the less* he learns.

Cuanto ménos gastan **tanto mas** ahorrarán.

The less they spend *the more* they will save.

Sentences of this nature may also be expressed in the following manner: *Más lee ménos aprende;* or *miéntras ménos lea, ménos sabrá Vd.*

26. *Most* or *most of*, and *the greater part of*, are translated as follows:

La mayor parte de los hombres;
or **los mas** de los hombres.

Most men or *the greater part of* men.

La mayor parte del vino.

Most of, or *the greater part of*, the wine.

27. The superlative degree, with relation to *verbs* and *adverbs*, is formed as follows. Ex.:

Habla **muy poco**, or **poquísimo**.

He speaks *very little*.

Está **malísimamente** hecho; or
muy malamente hecho.

} It is *very badly* done.

28. There are some adjectives that have no comparatives and no superlatives; others that form comparatives,

but not superlatives; others that form superlatives with the adverb *muy*, and not with the termination *ísimo*. *Numeral* adjectives have no comparatives, nor superlatives. Many adjectives ending in *l*, as, *paternal*, *varonil*, do not form their superlatives in *ísimo*; nor do many of those ending in *i*, *n*, or *r*, as *turquí*, *ruin*, *secular*.

But these niceties of language can only be learnt by use, and the reading of good books.

Exercise on the Degrees of Comparison

VOCABULARY

el progreso, the progress.
lento, slow.
seguro, certain.
alguno, some.
considerar, to consider.
el poeta, the poet.
difícil, difficult.
cual, which.
elogio, praise.
el poema, the poem.
perfecto, perfect.
el conocimiento, the knowledge.
la naturaleza, the nature.
antiguo, ancient.
profano, profane.
el escritor, the writer.
el encanto, the charm.
el arte, the art.
el clima, the climate.
variable, changeable.
el verano, the summer.
el día, the day.
largo, long.
el invierno, the winter.
corto, short.
la novela, the novel.
hermoso, beautiful.
la república, the republic.
ilustre, illustrious.

alto, high.
aquello, that.
harmonioso, harmonious.
complaciente, obliging.
ambicioso, ambitious.
prudente, prudent.
apreciado, valued.
elocuencia, eloquence.
profundo, profound.
célebre, celebrated.
ejemplar, exemplary.
novela, novel.
literaria, literary.
fábula, fable.
admirable, admirable.
docto, learned.
fácil, easy.
obra, work.
gratitud, gratitude.
noble, noble.
cualidad or calidad, quality.
merece, deserves.
severo, severe.
castigo, punishment.
tanto, much.
seguridad, safety.
el ruido, the noise.
el dinero, the money.
tocar, to play, to touch.

cantar, to sing.
 el talento, the wit.
 el amigo, the friend.
 profundamente, profoundly.
 contemporáneo, contemporary.
 adelantar, to improve.
 el orgullo, the pride.
 el estilo, the style.
 el año, the year.
 corriente, fluently.
 la pena, the trouble.
 cuándo, when.

alguno, anybody.
 conmigo, with me.
 el periódico, the newspaper.
 el corresponsal, the correspondent.
 el idioma, the language.
 permanecer, to stay.
 también, also.
 el viaje, the voyage.
 el or la mar, the sea.
 el or la puente, the bridge.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

His progress was as slow as certain. My books are as good as his. Some consider Virgil as great a poet as Homer; and it would be (*seria*) very difficult to say (*decir*) which is entitled (*digno*) to greater praise. The poem of the former (*de aquel*) called the Georgics (*Geórgicas*), is the most perfect of all Latin compositions (*composiciones*). In the Iliad (*Iliada*) and the Odyssey (*Odiséa*) Homer has displayed (*ha mostrado tener*) the most consummate (*consumado*) knowledge of human nature (*naturaleza humana*): he is the most ancient of all profane writers. Nature has more charms than art. The climate (*m.*) of England is more changeable than that of Spain; the summer days in the former are much longer, and those in winter much shorter. It is one of the finest novels that I have read; its descriptions are of the most beautiful, and its lessons are very moral. The republic of Athens (*Aténas*) was more illustrious than that of Lacedemon (*Lacedemonia*). The second Punic war lasted six years less (*ménos*) than the first. This is higher than that. His style is less harmonious than that of Father Isla. He is² not¹ so obliging as his brother. The writings of Calderon are much valued. The philosophy (*filosofía*) of eloquence of Capmany is a most profound work (*obra*). Some of Cervantes' most celebrated productions are his (*son su*)

Don Quijote, his very beautiful Exemplary Novels, his journey to Parnassus, &c. The literary Fables of Iriarte contain (*encierran*) most admirable lessons. She is a very prudent woman. He is a very learned man. How very good he is, and how very bad he appeared (*parecia*). It is a most easy work to translate (*traducir*). Gratitude is the noblest quality of the mind. Ingratitude deserves the severest punishment. They read as much as they write, but they do not speak (*no hablan*) as much as they think. Such was (*fué*) the confusion as to endanger (*poner en peligro*) our safety. He made (*hizo*) so much noise as to oblige us (*nos obligó*) to go out (*salir*). We have (*tenemos*) as much money as you. She plays as well as she sings. She possesses (*posee*) more wit than beauty (*hermosura*). He has (*tiene*) as much protection and as many friends as you. She learns (*aprende*) better than her sister. He thinks (*piensa*) more profoundly than his contemporaries. The more she reads (*lee*) the more she improves (*adelanta*). Her sister has less pride than she. The less you study (*estudie*) the less you will gain (*ganará* Vd.). It is not (*no es*) more difficult to do than what he says (*dice*). I do not admire (*no aprecio*) the style of B. less than (what) it deserves (*merece*). It is worth (*vale*) more than a million. I remained (*me detuve*) in France and Spain more than two years. They speak (*hablan*) Spanish less fluently (*ménos corriente*) than you. He writes (*escribe*) worse (*peor*) every time (*cada vez*). He does not give himself (*no se da*) the least trouble (*la menor pena*).

READING EXERCISE

Verb Drill

¿Cuándo piensa Vd. ir á Valparaiso? Hoy me voy.
 ¿Va alguno con Vd.? Sí señor, mi esposa y sus niños van conmigo. ¿Tiene Vd. ocupación en Valparaiso? Sí amigo, soy representante de la famosa casa de los Sres W. & J. Gilbey, Limited, de Lóndres. ¿Habla Vd.

español? ¡Caramba! pues no lo he de hablar siendo mi padre español. ¿Por qué no estudia su hijo el idioma? Empezará (*he will begin*) á estudiarlo en cuanto llegue (*as soon as he arrives*) á Valparaíso. ¿Le gusta á Vd. viajar? Sí; me gusta mucho viajar por tierra, mas no por mar. Yo desearía hacer un viaje por mar. Lo único que siento es que me mareo (*seasick*) cuando navego. ¿Ha viajado Vd. mucho? Le aseguro (*I assure you*) á Vd. que he viajado bastante. ¿Había, Vd. viajado (*travelled*) antes de venir aquí? No, no había viajado mucho. ¿Le gusta á la Señora Beatriz vivir en esa? Sí; le gusta bastante. ¿Habían viajado sus padres por España? No; ellos habían viajado mucho por Inglaterra. ¿Puede Vd. ausentarse (*stay away*) de Lóndres seis meses si lo desea? Sí, puedo ausentarme todo el verano. ¿Puede su hermano permanecer (*stay*) también? Sí, también puede permanecer si lo desea (*if he wishes*). ¿Qué tiene Vd. en la mano? Tengo una letra de cambio (*Bill of exchange*). ¿Vendrá Vd. mañana á verme? Sí, si tengo tiempo. ¿Hasta cuando piensan Vds. permanecer en esa? Pensamos permanecer allí todo el invierno. ¿Ha viajado Vd. con frecuencia por esta línea de ferro-carril? Sí, muchísimas veces, y el servicio es excelente. El tren viene (*the train is coming*). ¡Viajeros al tren! (*All aboard!*)

CONVERSATION

I do not wish to induce you to give up your opinion.

I was in perfect ignorance of this fact.

There is no immediate hurry.

He never made me any offer.

That will never do.

He does not care a straw.

I shall see how this affair winds up.

We are still undecided.

This is our unprejudiced opinion.

No quisiera inducirle á Vd. cambiar de opinion.

Me encontraba en perfecta ignorancia de éste negocio.

No es de inmediata prisa.

Nunca me hizo ninguna oferta.

Eso no conviene.

No se le da un ardite.

Veré en que para este negocio.

Aún estamos indecisos.

Esta es nuestra opinion imparcial.

It seems to me to be a bad speculation.	Me parece una mala especulación.
He has only his own interest in view.	Tiene en vista tan solo su interés.
He stands in his own light.	El es su propio enemigo.
I could not induce him to give in.	No pude inducirle á que cediese.
In spite of all our efforts we did not succeed.	No obstante todos nuestros esfuerzos, no lo logramos.
Your remarks are quite uncalled for.	Sus observaciones de Vd. no tienen razon de ser.
He will make a fresh start.	Comenzará de nuevo.
Be careful, he is not all he appears to be.	Precávase Vd., el no es todo lo que parece.
This book will be of great service to many.	Este libro ha de ser útil á muchos.
I can safely recommend him for his honesty.	Puedo concienzudamente recomendarselo á Vd. por su honradez.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

CARDINAL NUMBERS

1. Observe that in compound numerals in Spanish it is necessary always to begin with the highest number, and descend gradually to the lowest, placing the conjunction **y** before the last; as *veinte y tres*, twenty-three; *dos cientos treinta y uno*, two hundred and thirty-one; *mil ocho cientos cincuenta y tres*, 1853; consequently the following order, sometimes adopted in English, is never followed in Spanish, namely, *three and twenty, eighteen hundred and fifty-three*, &c.

2. All the cardinal numbers except **uno**, and the compounds of **ciento**, are indeclinable.

Uno agrees in gender with the noun to which it refers, but drops the **o** when it immediately precedes a noun masculine singular or its adjective. Ex.:

Uno de los documentos.	One of the documents.
Una cuestion.	A question.
Un hombre; un gran libro.	A man; a great book.

Ciento drops the last syllable when it immediately precedes a noun of either gender. The compounds of **ciento** agree in number and gender with the nouns to which they refer. Ex.:

Cien hombres y cien mujeres.	A hundred men and a hundred women.
Ciento veinte libras.	A hundred and twenty pounds
Dos cientos soldados.	Two hundred soldiers.
Tres cientas escopetas.	Three hundred rifles.

Cardinal numbers are not inflected in Spanish, except *uno (un)*, *una*, *ciento*, *-a (cien)*, *cientos*, *-as*, *millón*, *-es*. They are:

cero, zero, nought	...	...	0	veinte y ocho	...	...	28
uno, -a, one	...	...	1	veinte y nueve	...	...	29
dos	...	...	2	treinta	...	...	30
tres	...	...	3	treinta y uno, -a	...	...	31
cuatro	...	...	4	cuarenta	...	...	40
cinco	...	...	5	cincuenta	...	...	50
seis	...	...	6	sesenta	...	...	60
siete	...	...	7	setenta	...	...	70
ocho	...	...	8	ochenta	...	...	80
nueve	...	...	9	noventa	...	...	90
diez	...	...	10	ciento (cien)	...	...	100
once	...	...	11	ciento uno, -a	...	...	101
doce	...	...	12	ciento dos	...	...	102
trece	...	...	13	ciento treinta y cinco	...	...	135
catorce	...	...	14	doscientos, -as	...	...	200
quince	...	...	15	trescientos, -as	...	...	300
diez y seis	...	...	16	cuatrocientos, -as	...	...	400
diez y siete	...	...	17	quinientos, -as	...	...	500
diez y ocho	...	...	18	seiscientos, -as	...	...	600
diez y nueve	...	...	19	setecientos, -as	...	...	700
veinte	...	...	20	ochocientos, -as	...	...	800
veinte y uno, -a	...	...	21	novecientos, -as	...	...	900
veinte y dos	...	...	22	mil	...	...	1,000
veinte y tres	...	...	23	mil y uno, -a (un)	...	...	1,001
veinte y cuatro	...	...	24	mil y dos	...	...	1,002
veinte y cinco	...	...	25	mil y tres	...	...	1,003
veinte y seis	...	...	26	mil ciento uno, -a	...	...	1,101
veinte y siete	...	...	27	mil doscientos, -as	...	...	1,200

dos mil	2,000	trescientos (-as) cinco }	305,120
dos mil trescientos }	2,340	mil ciento veinte }	
cuarenta		quinientos (-as) mil ...	500,000
tres mil	3,000	un millón ¹	1,000,000
cuatro mil	4,000	un millón quinientos }	1,500,000
cinco mil	5,000	(-as) mil	
cinco mil quinien- }	5,500	dos millones	2,000,000
tos, -as		diez millones trescien- }	10,350,000
diez mil	10,000	tos cincuenta mil ... }	
cien mil	100,000	cien millones	100,000,000
ciento cincuenta mil	150,000	una millarda	1,000,000,000
doscientos (-as) mil	200,000	un billón	1,000,000,000,000

ORDINAL NUMBERS

Ordinal numbers indicate the successive order of things. They agree in gender and number with the substantives to which they refer, and are always preceded by the article:

el primero	the first (<i>m.</i>).	vigésimo primero	21st.
la primera	the first (<i>f.</i>).	vigésimo segundo	22nd.
lo primero	the first (<i>n.</i>).	vigésimo tercero	23rd.
segundo	second.	vigésimo cuarto	24th.
tercero	third.	vigésimo quinto	25th.
cuarto	fourth.	vigésimo sexto	26th.
quinto	fifth.	vigésimo sétimo }	27th.
sexto	sixth.	and sétimo }	
sétimo or séptimo	seventh.	vigésimo octavo	28th.
octavo	eighth.	vigésimo nono	29th.
nono or noveno	ninth.	trigésimo	30th.
décimo	tenth.	trigésimo primero	31st.
undécimo	eleventh.	cuadragésimo	40th.
duodécimo	twelfth.	quincuagésimo	50th.
décimotercio	13th.	sexagésimo	60th.
décimocuarto	14th.	septuagésimo	70th.
décimoquinto	15th.	octogésimo	80th.
décimosexto	16th.	nonagésimo	90th.
décimoseptimo	17th.	centésimo	100th.
décimooctavo	18th.	centésimo primero	101st.
décimonono	19th.	centésimo segundo	102nd.
vigésimo	20th.	ducentésimo	200th.

¹ *Millon*, however, belongs rather to the class of nouns, and governs the following noun with the preposition *de*; as, *un millon de hombres*.

tricentésimo	300th.	tresmilésimo	3,000th.
cuadringentésimo	400th.	diezmilésimo	10,000th.
quingentésimo	500th.	cienmilésimo	100,000th.
sexcentésimo	600th.	millonésimo	1,000,000th.
septingentésimo	700th.	el último, the last, latest, ultimate.	
octingentésimo	800th.	el penúltimo, the last but one,	
noningentésimo	900th.	penultimate.	
milésimo	1,000th.	el antepenúltimo, the last but two,	
milésimo primero	1,001st.	antepenultimate.	
dosmilésimo	2,000th.	el postrero, the last, hindmost, final.	

3. All the ordinal numbers agree with the nouns to which they refer in gender and number: **primero** drops the **o** when placed immediately before a noun masculine singular, or its adjective. Ex.:

El primer día.	The first day.
El primer buen tiempo.	The first fine weather.
El primero de todos.	The first of all.
Los primeros días.	The first days.
Las noches primeras .	The first nights.
El tomo segundo .	The second volume.
Las órdenes segundas .	The second orders.

4. **Primero**, **tercero**, and **postrero** always elide the **o** in the singular before masculine substantives; even the feminine form may be abbreviated. Ex.: *El primer día del año*, the first day of the year; *la primera* or *la primer mañana*, the first morning. In speaking of sovereigns, the ordinal numbers are used in Spanish. Ex.: *Cárlos segundo*, Charles II.

5. Few persons now use the ordinal numbers in Spanish after the *tenth* or *twelfth*, on account of their length; the cardinal numbers being employed instead. And with reference to the date of the month, the ordinal numbers are seldom, if ever, used in Spanish after *primero*, *segundo*, and *tercero*.

6. Numeral adjectives referring to a noun or adjective of dimension require the preposition **de** after them. Ex.:

Dos varas de ancho.	Two yards wide.
Tres pies de altura, <i>or</i> de alto.	Three feet in height, or high.

7. When the English numeral adjective that relates to

a noun or adjective of dimension is preceded by some part of the verb *to be*, this verb is rendered by *tener*, to have. Ex.:

La mesa <i>tiene tres</i> pies de alto, <i>or</i> de altura.	The table <i>is three</i> feet high, <i>or</i> in height.
---	--

8. *Six feet by four, twelve inches by eight*, and so forth, are translated literally; as, *seis pies por cuatro, doce pulgadas por ocho*.

9. Besides the cardinal and ordinal numbers, we must notice the *collective*, the *distributive*, and the *proportional*: but observe that these are nouns, and not adjectives.

10. The *collectives* denote a determined number of things collected into one distinct mass or body. Ex.:

un <i>par</i> , a pair, or couple.	una <i>centena</i> , a hundred.
una <i>docena</i> , a dozen.	<i>centenares</i> , hundreds.
media <i>docena</i> , half a dozen.	un <i>millar</i> , a thousand.
una <i>veintena</i> , a score.	un <i>millon</i> , a million.

11. The *distributives* denote the different parts of a whole. Ex.:

la mitad,	the half.
el tercio, <i>or</i> la tercera parte,	the third.
el cuarto, <i>or</i> la cuarta parte,	the fourth.
el décimo, <i>or</i> la décima parte,	the tenth.
el dozavo, <i>or</i> la duodécima parte,	the twelfth.
dos tercios,	two-thirds.
cuatro quintos,	four-fifths.
tres octavos,	three-eighths.

12. The *proportional* are such as denote the progressive increase of things. Ex.:

el doble, <i>or</i> duplo,	the double.
el triple, <i>or</i> triplo,	the triple.
el cuádruplo,	the quadruple.
el quintuplo,	the five-fold.
el decuplo,	the ten-fold.
el centuplo,	the hundred-fold.

Once is translated *una vez* (one time); twice, *dos veces*; three times, *tres veces*, and so on.

Exercise on the Numeral Adjectives

VOCABULARY

la playa, the shore.
 tremendo, -a, tremendous.
 la costa, the coast.
 el lugar, the place.
 el alma, the soul.
 el buque, the vessel.
 la distancia, the distance.
 el viento, the wind.
 la calle, the street.
 la milla, the mile.
 la legua, the league.
 el pié, the foot.
 ancho, -a, wide.
 la torre, the tower.
 alto, -a, high.
 la circunferencia, the circumference.
 el aviso, the warning.
 la libra, the pound.
 la docena, the dozen.
 el acto, the act.
 la escena, the scene.
 el par, the pair.
 el varon, the male.
 la hembra, the female.
 el contorno, the outskirts.

el cuarto, the room.
 mañana, to-morrow.
 el arrabal, the suburb.
 el farol, the (street) lamp.
 el faro, the lighthouse.
 el capital, the capital.
 la capital, the metropolis.
 el peso, the dollar.
 la noche, the night.
 la hora, the hour.
 el heno, the hay.
 el paño, the cloth.
 el piso, the floor, the story.
 enero, January.
 febrero, February.
 marzo, March.
 abril, April.
 mayo, May.
 junio, June.
 julio, July.
 agosto, August.
 setiembre, September.
 octubre, October.
 noviembre, November.
 diciembre, December.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

In the year sixteen hundred and eighty-seven the sea retired (*se retiró*) from the shores of Perú, returning (*volviéndose*) in tremendous (*tremendo*) waves (*ola*) that destroyed everything they encountered (*todo lo que encontraron*) on (*en*) the coast (*costa*), and amongst (*entre*) other (*otro*) places the city of Callao. In seventeen hundred and eighty-six the same (*mismo*) phenomenon (*fenómeno*) occurred again (*volvió á suceder*), when out of four thousand souls that the said city contained (*contenia*), two hundred

only (*solamente*) were saved (*se salvaron*); nineteen vessels were (*fuleron*) sunk (*echados á pique*), and four, including (*incluyendo*) a steamer (*vapor*), were carried (*llevado*) some distance inland (*dentro de tierra*). Our voyage (*viaje*) lasted (*duró*) eight and forty days, of which six and twenty were contrary winds. Of the thirteen hundred wounded (*herido*), more than the fourth part died (*murieron*). A street of one mile long, by eighty feet wide. A tower two hundred feet high, by sixty in circumference. The pedestal (*pedestal*) is forty feet square (*en cuadro*), and fifty-five high. I was speaking (*hablaba*) of a third person. This is a second warning. Three hundred and twenty-four pounds. One dozen and a half. The first act. The first two scenes. The third year. Millions of men and hundreds of women. Two scores of these, and three pairs of those. I went (*ful*) twice if not (*si no*) thrice. My aunt had seven children, four boys and three girls. I will have a hundred dollars soon (*pronto*). Have we to-day the ninth or the eleventh of September? The city has 3456 streets. Henry IV, called the Great. King Edward the VII. King George the V. King Alfonso the XIII. £74, 11s. 6d. 3 dozen (of) apples. The room is 43 feet long. 3½ yards of cloth. The year 1912. March has 31 days. The great coal strike (*huelga carbonero*) took place in February and March of nineteen twelve.

READING EXERCISE

Son las nueve y cuarto de la noche. ¿A cuántos estamos del mes? ¿Es hoy el día trece de agosto? No, señor, estamos á veinte y siete (veintisiete) de enero de 1912. Mañana tendremos 46 caballos (*horses*), 16 yeguas (*mares*), y 15 potros (*colts*). La luna gira (*turns round*) alrededor de la tierra (*earth*) en 27 días, 7 horas, y 43 minutos. Esta capital tiene 10 leguas de contorno, 10 arrabales, 500,000 habitantes. El antepenúltimo día del año 1878 (mil ochocientos setenta y ocho) era domingo el 29 (veinti-

nueve) de diciembre. La ciudad de Madrid tiene 18 puentes, y 90,000 faroles. La ciudad de Londres tiene 96 hospitales. Los lunes y los viernes son días de mercado en esta (*in this city*). Eduardo VII, rey de Inglaterra, era el padre de Jorge V. Mi padre tiene 72 años, y mi madre aún vive, y tiene 82 años. Las 10 están para dar (*about to strike*). Mi hermano murió (*died*) á los tres años de su edad. He visto cien hombres. ¿Tiene Vd. el primer libro ó el segundo? ¿Qué tomo (*volume*) tiene Vd.? Tengo el quinto. ¿No tiene Vd. el tomo cuarto de mi obra? No, señor, no lo tengo. Carlos segundo. El primer día del año 1912 fué un lunes. El día tiene 24 horas. Junio tiene 30 días. Mi tío ha comprado 13 pares de guantes (*gloves*), 22 varas (*yards*) de paño, 42 quintales (*cwts*) de heno, 2 toneladas (*tons*) de paja (*straw*), por el valor de £196, 11s. 6d. Hay 3 regimientos en la ciudad. Mi tío tiene tres hijos (*children*), un varón y dos hembras. La ducentésima parte de un quintal es media libra, ó sean doscientos cincuenta gramos (*grammes*). Este giro (*draft*) es á 90 días vista (*sight*). Sírvese (*please*) pagar (*pay*) al portador (*bearer*) la suma de (*the sum of*) £1916, 16s. 6d.

CONVERSATION

He carries everything to extremes.	Todo lo lleva á extremos.
You seem to think very highly of it.	Parece Vd. tener una alta opinion de ello.
Nothing shall hinder me from doing this.	No me impedirá nada de hacer esto.
A broad hint.	Una insinuación ligera.
You have not managed the matter well.	Vd. no ha manejado como se debe este asunto.
That is quite another thing.	Aquello es enteramente distinto.
He has not to answer for it.	No está obligado á responder por ello.
Try your best to effect it.	Haga Vd. lo posible para efectuarlo.
After whom do you inquire?	¿Por quien pregunta Vd.?
I inquire after a friend.	Pregunto por uno de mis amigos.

What do you ask me for?	¿Qué me pide Vd.
I ask you for nothing.	Yo no le pido á Vd. nada.
You must try to do better.	Debe Vd. probar á hacerlo mejor.
Will you try to do that?	¿Quiere Vd. probar á hacer eso?
I have tried to do it.	Yo he probado á hacerlo.
Are you pleased with each other?	¿Están Vds. contentos uno de otro?
We are.	Lo estamos.
Do you succeed in doing that?	¿Consigue Vd. eso?
I do succeed in it.	Lo consigo.
I endeavour to succeed in it.	Trato de conseguirlo.
Do you trust that man?	Confía Vd. en este hombre?
I do trust him.	Confío en él.
I do not like to meddle with things that do not concern me.	No me gusta meterme en lo que no me concierne.
That concerns nobody.	Eso no le importa á nadie.

PREPOSITIONS EMPLOYED WITH ADJECTIVES

1. Adjectives are frequently followed by certain prepositions that govern the word to which the meaning of the adjective is directed. This is a matter in which not only do the English and Spanish languages often differ as regards the preposition employed, but one that cannot be reduced to any fixed rules. The following are some examples from the Grammar of THE ROYAL ACADEMY, showing in their translation wherein the two languages differ in respect to the prepositions employed in each:

Agradecido á los beneficios.	Grateful <i>for</i> kindnesses.
Fiel á (or con) sus amigos.	Faithful <i>to</i> one's friends.
Igual á (or con) otro.	Equal <i>to</i> another.
Increible á (or para) muchos.	Incredible <i>to</i> many.
Ingrato á los beneficios.	Ungrateful <i>for</i> favours.
Próximo á morir.	<i>On</i> the point of death.
Visible á (or para) todos.	Visible <i>to</i> all.
Ageno de la verdad.	Foreign <i>to</i> truth.
Agudo de ingenio.	Acute <i>in</i> intellect.
Alto de cuerpo.	Tall <i>in</i> (or <i>of</i>) stature.
Ancho de boca.	Wide <i>at</i> the mouth.

Angosto de mangas.	Narrow in the sleeves.
Bajo de cuerpo.	Low <i>in</i> (or <i>of</i>) stature.
Boto de punta.	Blunt <i>in</i> the point.
Buena de (or para) comer.	Good <i>to</i> eat.
Capaz de (or para) el empleo.	Fit <i>for</i> the employment.
Chico de cuerpo.	Small <i>in</i> (or <i>of</i>) stature.
Dotada de ciencia.	Gifted <i>with</i> learning.
Escaso de medios.	Scant <i>of</i> means.
Fácil de digerir.	Easy <i>to</i> digest.
Falto de juicio.	Deficient <i>in</i> judgment.
Impropio de (or para) su edad.	Unsuitable <i>for</i> his age.
Inapeable de su opinion.	Obstinate <i>in</i> his opinion.
Infecto de herejía.	Tainted <i>with</i> heresy.
Inficionado de peste.	Infected <i>with</i> plague.
Largo de manos.	Liberal, openhanded.
Ligero de piés.	Lightfooted.
Precedido de otro.	Preceded <i>by</i> another.
Amable con todos.	Amiable <i>to</i> everybody.
Amoroso con los suyos.	Affectionate <i>to</i> one's relations.
Atento con sus mayores.	Attentive <i>to</i> one's superiors.
Parco en la comida.	Sparing <i>at</i> meals.
Benéfico para la salud.	Beneficial <i>to</i> health.

2. It would be impracticable, from the uncertainty of their application, to attempt to lay down a set of rules to apply to what custom has rendered so arbitrary and capricious, and what can only be attained by practice and the constant reading of good authors. But though no fixed rules can be given for the choice of prepositions to be employed with adjectives, the following *general* observations will, it is hoped, materially assist the learner on this head.

In many instances a corresponding preposition with the one used in English accompanies the adjective in Spanish. The following are exceptions:

1st.—Adjectives that denote *proximity* are mostly accompanied by *á* before a noun, a pronoun, or an infinitive. Ex.:

Junto á mi casa.	Adjoining my house.
Inmediato á él.	Close <i>to</i> him.
Próximo á caer.	Near falling.

2nd.—Adjectives that qualify any *particular part* or portion of the noun to which they refer are followed by **de**.
Ex.:

Una casaca ancha de mangas.	A coat wide in the sleeves.
Un sombrero alto de copa.	A high-crowned hat.

3rd.—The same preposition is required after adjectives coming before nouns or infinitives that denote the *cause* that produced the effect expressed by the adjective. Ex.:

Se mostró alegre de verme.	He appeared <i>glad to</i> see me.
Está pálida de miedo.	She is <i>pale with</i> fear.

NOTE.—As past participles are sometimes so nearly allied to adjectives, it may not be deemed out of place to mention here that they also are followed by the preposition **de**, and sometimes by **por**, before nouns or infinitives that denote the cause producing the effect expressed by the participle. The following are examples of this nature from the Grammar of the ACADEMY:

Aburrido de las desgracias.	Worried <i>by</i> misfortune.
Curtido del sol.	Tanned <i>by</i> the sun.
Impelido de la necesidad.	Impelled <i>by</i> necessity.
Importunado de (<i>or por</i>) otro.	Importuned <i>by</i> another.
Molido de andar.	Fatigued <i>with</i> walking.
Penetrado de dolor.	Pierced <i>with</i> grief.
Tocado de enfermedad.	Touched <i>with</i> disease.

4th.—Numeral adjectives also require **de** before a noun or adjective of dimension (as already shown). Ex.:

Tres pies de altura.	Three feet <i>in</i> height.
Dos varas de largo.	Two yards long.

5th.—Adjectives are accompanied by **en** when followed by nouns or infinitives that represent the objects or actions in which the quality of the adjective is *conspicuous*. Ex.:

Diestro en el juego.	Expert <i>at</i> play.
Pronto en resolver.	Prompt <i>in</i> resolving.

6th.—Adjectives that denote *fitness* or *unfitness* are ac-

accompanied by **para** before a noun, and by **de** or **para** before an infinitive. Ex.:

Prejudicial **para** la salud.
Bueno **de** (or **para**) comer.

Injurious *to* health.
Good *to* eat.

7th.—Adjectives denoting *behaviour* towards anybody are generally followed by **con** or **para con**. Ex.:

Cortés **con** sus amigos.
Amorosa **para con** los suyos.
Ingrato **con** todos.

Courteous *to* his friends.
Kind *towards* his relations.
Ungrateful *to* everybody.

OBSERVATION.—Although, as seen in the foregoing examples, the SPANISH ACADEMY has assigned certain prepositions to accompany certain adjectives, it does not necessarily follow as a rule that they must *in all* cases be accompanied by the same preposition; since the same adjective may frequently be followed by various prepositions, according to the relation which it may have with the word governed by the same preposition; as, for instance, the adjective *bueno* may be accompanied by **de**, **con**, or **para**, as the occasion may require. Ex.: Bueno **de** comer (Good *to* eat). Bueno **para** la salud (Conducive *to* health). El es muy bueno **con** los suyos (He is very kind *to* his relations). In a like manner the adjective *duro* may be accompanied by **de**, **en**, or **con**. Ex.: Duro **de** entendimiento (Hard *of* understanding). Duro **en** sus palabras (Harsh *in* his words). Duro **con** sus inferiores (Severe *towards* his inferiors). (See Section on Prepositions, page 336.)

Exercise on Prepositions employed with Adjectives

READING EXERCISE

Verb Drill

No puedo encontrar (*find*) el banco de Lóndres, me he perdido. Vd. ha tomado una calle por otra. Será mejor que tome el tranvía (*tram*). No vale la pena (*it is not*

worth while). ¿Tomó Vd. á la izquierda? (*left*). No, tomé á la derecha (*right*). ¿Cómo encontró Vd. el banco? Pregunté á un oficial de policía (*policeman*). ¿No conoce Vd. las calles aquí? No. Soy forastero (*stranger*). ¿Está construida de madera (*timber*) esa casa? No, Señor, está construida de piedra. ¿Es una casa nueva? No; es la casa bancaria (*banking firm*) más vieja del país. ¿Está en los suburbios? (*suburbs*). No; está en el centro de la ciudad. Han llegado dos batallones (*battalion*) que estaban de guarnición en Madrid. El maltratar (*abuse*) á los animales va contra los sentimientos de todo hombre de corazón, y en Inglaterra aún (*even*) contra la ley. Para aprender los verbos muy á fondo (*thoroughly*) es preciso repetirlos de cuando en cuando. Valencia está á orillas (*shore*) de la mar, en medio de unos campos muy fértiles y amenos (*pleasant*), bajo el cielo más alegre y el clima más sano y templado de España; era llamado por los moros (*Moors*) su paraíso (*their paradise*). El vino (*came*) ántes de mí á la iglesia, y se puso (*sat down*) delante (*before*) de mí. El Jefe (*chief*) me llamó por mi nombre. Dentro de una hora estaremos (*we shall be*) en Lóndres. El perro durmió debajo (*under*) de la cama (*bed*). La guerra está declarada. Me pongo mi sombrero. El se pone sus guantes. ¿Se ponen Vds. sus zapatos? Nos los ponemos. ¿Qué se ponen sus hermanos de Vds.? Se ponen sus vestidos. ¿Adónde (*where*) me lleva Vd.? Le llevo á Vd. á casa de mi padre. ¿Sale Vd.? (*do you go out?*) Salgo (*I do go out*). ¿Salimos? (*shall we go out?*) Salimos. ¿Cuándo sale su padre de Vd.? Tan temprano (*early*) como Vd. ¿Habla Vd. demasiado? (*excessive*). Yo no hablo bastante (*enough*). ¿Va Vd. al teatro tan temprano (*early*) como yo? ¿Habla Vd. ya? Aún no (*not yet*). Yo no hablo aún. ¿Concluye Vd. su carta? No la acabo (*finish*) aún. ¿Almuerza (*breakfast*) Vd. ya? (*already*). El comer demasiado es peligroso (*dangerous*). El hablar demasiado es imprudente. El hacer bien á los que nos han ofendido, es una accion loable (*commendable*). ¿Ha estado Vd. en

el mercado? (*market*). He estado en él. No he estado en él. ¿Ha estado Vd. en Londres? Yo no he estado nunca (*never*). ¿Qué ha hecho Vd.? Yo no he hecho nada (*nothing*). ¿Me llama (llamar, "*to call*") Vd.? Yo le llamo. ¿Quien me llama? Su padre de Vd. le llama. ¿Han llamado Vds. á los hombres? Yo los he llamado. ¿Aprende (*verb "to learn"*) Vd. á leer? Aprendo. Aprendo á escribir (*verb "to write"*). ¿Ha aprendido Vd. á hablar? He aprendido. ¿Cuándo?—¿Dónde? (*Where?*) ¿Cuándo ha visto Vd. á mi hermano? Le he visto ántes de ayer. ¿Dónde le ha visto Vd.? Le he visto en el teatro. ¿Qué edad tiene Vd.? Tengo trece años. ¿Qué edad tiene su hermano de Vd.? Tiene nueve años. ¿Me comprende Vd.? ¿Me oye Vd.? Le comprendo á Vd. Le oigo á Vd. (*verb oír, "to hear"*). ¿Ha comprendido Vd. al hombre? Le he comprendido muy bien. Le oigo á Vd.; pero no le comprendo. ¿Ha oído Vd. el ladrido (*barking*) de los perros? Lo he oído. ¿Cuánto me debe Vd.? (*verb deber, "to owe"*). Le debo á Vd. cincuenta pesos. ¿Cuánto le debe á Vd. el hombre? Me debe sesenta pesetas. ¿Deben nuestros vecinos tanto como (*as much as*) nosotros? Nosotros debemos más que ellos. ¿Cuanto debe Vd.? Doscientas pesetas. ¿Adónde debe Vd. ir hoy? Debo ir al almacén (*warehouse*). ¿Debe venir hoy aquí (*here*) su hermano de Vd.? Debe venir aquí pronto.

CONVERSATION

I should be glad to learn the details of this affair.

I desire to be of service to you.

To what extent might I go in this affair?

It is far too dear.

You have imposed a difficult task upon me.

We are labouring under great difficulties.

Celebraría saber los detalles de este asunto.

Deseo encontrar la oportunidad de serle útil.

¿Hasta dónde podría ir en este asunto?

Es demasiado caro.

Vd. me ha impuesto una difícil tarea.

Nos hallamos en grandes dificultades.

It is far below the limit.	Es mucho más bajo del límite.
I cannot express my gratitude to you.	No puedo espresarle mi agradecimiento.
I am not implicated in it.	Yo no estoy implicado en ello.
The matter is altogether different.	La cosa se encuentra en un estado muy diferente.
I was not far off in estimating its value.	No iba muy errado en el cálculo de su valor.
The secret is out.	El secreto se ha divulgado.
Your remarks are quite out of place.	Sus observaciones de Vd. están demas.
I told him in plain words.	Le dije claramente.
The matter is of very little consequence.	La cosa es de poca importancia.
It is a never-ending cause of trouble.	Es un motivo interminable de disgustos.
It yields a quick return.	Es de pronto despacho.
There is no doubt whatever about that.	De eso no cabe la menor duda.
I trust I have made my reasons plain to you.	Espero haberle explicado á Vd. claramente mis motivos.

PRONOUNS

1. Pronouns are generally classed under six different heads—namely, *personal*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *relative*, *interrogative*, and *indefinite*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

2. *Personal* pronouns are those that are employed in reference to persons whose places they supply. There are three persons—the *first*, or the person that speaks; the *second*, or the person *spoken to*; and the *third*, or the person *spoken of*; as, *I* wrote the letter, *you* read it, and *he* delivered it.

3. Personal pronouns are subject to a variation of *number*, *person*, *gender*, and *case*, as follows:

DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person singular number, common to both genders

<i>Nom.</i>	yo,	I.
<i>Gen.</i>	de mí,	of me.
<i>Dat.</i>	á mí or para mí, me,	to or for me.
<i>Acc.</i>	me or á mí,	me.
<i>Abl.</i>	por mí,	by me.

First person plural number

MASCULINE

<i>Nom.</i>	nosotros,	we.
<i>Gen.</i>	de nosotros,	of us.
<i>Dat.</i>	á or para nosotros,	to or for us.
<i>Acc.</i>	nos or á nosotros,	us.
<i>Abl.</i>	por nosotros,	by us.

FEMININE

<i>Nom.</i>	nosotras,	we.
<i>Gen.</i>	de nosotras,	of us.
<i>Dat.</i>	á or para nosotras, nos,	to or for us.
<i>Acc.</i>	nos or á nosotras,	us.
<i>Abl.</i>	por nosotras,	by us.

Second person singular number, common to both genders

<i>Nom.</i>	tú,	thou.
<i>Gen.</i>	de tí,	of thee.
<i>Dat.</i>	á tí or para tí, te,	to or for thee.
<i>Acc.</i>	te or á tí,	thee.
<i>Abl.</i>	por tí,	by thee.

Second person plural number

MASCULINE

<i>Nom.</i>	vosotros,	you or ye.
<i>Gen.</i>	de vosotros,	of you.
<i>Dat.</i>	á or para vosotros, os,	to or for you.
<i>Acc.</i>	os or á vosotros,	you.
<i>Abl.</i>	por vosotros,	by you.

FEMININE

<i>Nom.</i>	vosotras,	you or ye.
<i>Gen.</i>	de vosotras,	of you.
<i>Dat.</i>	á or para vosotras, os,	to or for you.
<i>Acc.</i>	os or á vosotras,	you.
<i>Abl.</i>	por vosotras,	by you.

Third person masculine gender

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	él,	he.
<i>Gen.</i>	de él,	of him.
<i>Dat.</i>	á él or para él, le,	to or for him.
<i>Acc.</i>	le or á él,	him.
<i>Abl.</i>	por él,	by him.

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ellos,	they.
<i>Gen.</i>	de ellos,	of them.
<i>Dat.</i>	á ellos or para ellos, les,	to or for them.
<i>Acc.</i>	los or á ellos,	them.
<i>Abl.</i>	por ellos,	by them.

Third person feminine gender

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	ella,	she.
<i>Gen.</i>	de ella,	of her.
<i>Dat.</i>	á ella or para ella, le,	to or for her.
<i>Acc.</i>	la or á ella,	her.
<i>Abl.</i>	por ella,	by her.

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ellas,	they.
<i>Gen.</i>	de ellas,	of them.
<i>Dat.</i>	á ellas or para ellas, les,	to or for them.
<i>Acc.</i>	las or á ellas,	them.
<i>Abl.</i>	por ellas,	by them.

Third person neuter gender

<i>Nom.</i>	ello,	it.
<i>Gen.</i>	de ello,	of it.
<i>Dat.</i>	á ello or para ello, lo,	to or for it.
<i>Acc.</i>	lo or á ello,	it.
<i>Abl.</i>	por ello,	by it.

The neuter pronoun has no plural

4. The third person is also used *reflectively*, declined without the nominative case, and is common to all genders and numbers.

<i>Gen.</i>	de sí,	of oneself, himself, herself, it- self, or themselves.
<i>Dat.</i>	á sí or para sí, se,	to or for oneself, &c.
<i>Acc.</i>	se or á sí,	oneself, &c.
<i>Abl.</i>	por sí,	by oneself, &c.

5. **Nos** may be sometimes used in the nominative case instead of **nosotros**, and **vos** instead of **vosotros**, but this practice is antiquated. In poetry also, **del**, **dellos**, **dellas**, and **dello** are sometimes used instead of **de él**, **de ellos**, **de ellas**, and **de ello**.

NOTE.—Care should be taken never to misapply the pronouns of the dative and accusative cases of the third person. The dative is always **le**, **les** in both genders, and the accusative **le**, **los** in the masculine and **la**, **las** in the feminine. This is noticed here because they have frequently been confounded, even by writers of merit.

In order to distinguish immediately the dative from the accusative case in personal pronouns, observe the following: When the action of a verb falls *immediately* on the pronoun, it is the direct object of the verb, and is in the *accusative case*; but when the energy of the verb falls on any other word in the sentence, the pronoun will be the indirect object, and therefore in the dative case, and the word on which the energy of the verb falls will be the *accusative case*; as, *Yo le di el libro* (I gave *him* or *her* the book). *Yo les di el libro* (I gave *them* the book).

In these examples the pronouns **le** and **les** are in the dative case, because the action of the verb does not fall directly on them; it falls on the noun **libro**; but in the four following examples the pronouns are in the *accusative case*, because the action of the verb does fall on them: *Él le llamó* (He called him). *Él los llamó* (He called them). *Él la llamó* (He called her). *Él las llamó* (He called them).

6. The neuter pronoun **lo** of the accusative case is often employed by the best of writers and speakers instead of the masculine **le**. Yet, properly speaking, **lo** should only be employed in reference to something of which the gender is not denoted; as, for instance, *Ya lo sabía yo* (I knew *it* already). Here the **lo** refers also to something of which the gender is unknown to the speaker: *Qué es eso? Permítame Vd. que lo vea* (What is that? Allow me to see *it*).

Before we dismiss the neuter pronoun **lo**, it must be

observed that it is sometimes employed in reference to a whole or part of a sentence, and then it is equivalent to *so* or *it*. Ex.:

Dicen que habrá guerra; pero
yo no lo creo.

They say there will be war; but
I do not think *so*; or, I do not
believe *it*.

¿Quién lo dice? Los papeles lo
dicen.

Who says *so*? The papers men-
tion *it*.

7. The pronoun **se** is frequently employed in the *third* person singular and plural in any of the tenses, to form the passive voice. Ex.:

El dinero **se** recibirá.
Se han recibido los libros.

The money will be received.
The books have been received.

(See observations on the Passive Voice.)

PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE NOMINATIVE CASE

8. Personal pronouns in the nominative case, in the natural construction of the language, precede the verb in Spanish; as, *Yo hablo* (I speak). *Tú has venido* (Thou hast come). *El tomará* (He will take). *Nosotros somos vistos* (We are seen). *Vosotros prometisteis* (You promised). *Ellos irán* (They will go).

9. This natural order of placing the pronoun in the nominative case before the verb may, for the sake of elegance, or to add greater energy to the expression, be inverted. Indeed the natural construction of the Spanish language admits of great variety of syntactical inversion as regards several of the other parts of speech, as we have already seen in the case of the nominative and accusative with regard to the noun and verb, and in the case of the substantive and adjective, and as we shall further see as we arrive at the other parts of speech respectively. Custom seems to have established as a rule, that the word we would have appear the most conspicuous in a sentence should take precedence of those with which it has relation. This licence is allowed a much wider latitude in Spanish

than in English, and writers that know how to avail themselves of it with judgment are able to display the variety, elegance, and force of expression of which the Spanish language is capable. The following are some examples of placing the nominative pronoun after the verb:

Antes que me deis la embajada, ilustre capitán y valerosos extranjeros, del príncipe grande que os envía; **debeis vosotros**, y **debo yo**, desestimar y poner en olvido lo que ha divulgado la fama de nuestras personas y costumbres.

Quisiera yo saber si la pupila de mi docto hermano sería capaz de proceder así. . . . que comprenda bien que **soy yo** la que se lo dice.

Before you deliver me, illustrious captain and brave strangers, the weighty message from the great prince who has sent you, you should, and so should I, disregard and forget what rumour has spread respecting our persons and customs.

I should like to know if my learned brother's pupil could act in this manner. . . . that he may understand well that it is I who tell him so.

10. In interrogative sentences, personal pronouns generally follow the verb in Spanish. Ex.:

¿Habló él con ella?

Did he speak to her?

¿Están ellos aquí?

Are they here?

11. Personal pronouns in the imperative mood likewise usually follow the verb in Spanish. Ex.:

Venga Vd. conmigo.

Come with me.

Hagamos nosotros nuestro deber.

Let us do our duty.

12. Personal pronouns are generally omitted in Spanish in the nominative case, unless ~~they~~ be the emphatical words in the sentence, or when their omission would create ambiguity. Ex.:

Mira, hermano, si no **quieres** que riñamos muy de veras, no **hablémos** más del asunto. . . .

Look, brother, unless you wish us to quarrel in right earnest, let us talk no more on the subject. . . .

¿No **es ella** mi sobrina; no **eres tú** mi hermano?

Is she not my niece; art thou not my brother?

In the first example, the termination of the verb *quieres*

denotes its nominative to be of the second person singular, and those of *riñamos* and *hablémos* the first person plural, and therefore the pronouns *tú* and *nosotros* are dispensed with as unnecessary. In the second example, *ella* and *tú* are emphatically used, and are therefore expressed. In the sentence, *Él escribe y ella canta* (He writes and she sings), both verbs being in the third person singular, the omission of the pronouns would create ambiguity as regards the gender of their nominatives. And in the following sentence, *Es muy hermosa* (She is very beautiful), the verb *es* denotes its nominative to be of the third person singular, while the feminine termination of the adjective *hermosa* marks its gender.

13. The nominative case of *impersonal* verbs (which is the neuter pronoun *ello*) is most generally suppressed in Spanish. Ex.:

Parece que lloverá hoy.
Es preciso que vayamos.

It appears that it will rain to-day.
It is necessary that we go.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE CASES

14. The pronouns *me*, *te*, *le*, *la*, *lo*, *nos*, *os*, *les*, *las*, *los*, *se*, in the dative and accusative case, are placed *after* and *joined* to the verb in the *infinitive* and *imperative* moods and the *participle active*. Ex.:

<i>Dat.</i>	Voy á darle la pluma.	I am going to give him the pen.
	Enséñame Vd. el libro.	Show me the book.
	Escribiéndonos una carta.	In writing us a letter.
<i>Acc.</i>	Quiére Vd. verle?	Do you wish to see him?
	Tráiganla Vds. aquí.	Bring her here.
	Están maltratándolos.	They are ill-treating them.

NOTE 1.—When, however, the *imperative* is in the third person singular or plural, except if the nominative be *Vd.*, the pronouns in the dative and accusative cases usually *precede* the verb with the conjunction *que*. Ex.:

Que me diga él.	Let him tell me.
Que ella las traiga.	Let her bring them.

NOTE 2.—As the infinitive and participle active are governed by some other verb in the sentence, it is optional to place the governed pronoun either after the governed verb, as in the above examples, or before the governing verb, as follows: *Le voy á dar la pluma.* ¿*Le quiere Vd. ver?* *Los están maltratando.*

15. The first and second persons plural of the verb in the imperative mood drop the final letter when **nos** and **os** are affixed to them; as, *salvémonos* (Let us save ourselves); *instrúinos* (Instruct yourselves); instead of, *salve-mosnos*, *instruidos*.

On all other occasions the foregoing pronouns are most *generally* placed before the verb. Ex.:

<i>Dat.</i>	El nos dió la noticia.	He gave us the news.
	Yo le he escrito la carta.	I have written him the letter.
	Ellos me enviaron el libro.	They sent me the book.
<i>Acc.</i>	Nosotros le vimos.	We saw him.
	Ellos se han lastimado.	They have hurt themselves.
	Él la acompañará.	He will accompany her.

16. However, to give energy to the expression, the syntactical order of the pronouns in the dative and accusative cases may be inverted, especially when a sentence or clause begins with a verb. Ex.:

Sentóse á comer con su esposa, reprimiendo el dolor en el pecho.	He sat down to dine with his wife, repressing his grief within his bosom.
Dirásme que la docilidad declina muchas veces en ligereza.	You will tell me mildness often degenerates into levity.

The like sometimes occurs in poetry; even though not at the beginning of a sentence. Ex.:

Todos os incubid los rostros, Que es diligencia importante, &c.	All of you cover your faces, For it is of great importance, &c.
Ten tú lástima de tí, Fernando, y tendrála yo.	Have thou pity on thyself, Fer- nando, and then will I.

But such constructions as the two latter examples would now be considered as archaisms, and could only be tolerated in poetry.

17. When an English sentence has two pronouns following each other, the first in the accusative, the second in the dative, their order must be *reversed* in the translation; and in such instances the *third person singular or plural* of the *dative* case is, for the sake of euphony, translated *se*. Ex.:

El me lo dió.	He gave <i>it</i> to <i>me</i> .
Os los mostraré.	I will show <i>them</i> to <i>you</i> .
Ellos nos lo dijeron.	They told <i>it</i> to <i>us</i> .
Yo te lo daré.	I will give <i>it</i> to <i>thee</i> .
Ellos me los han enviado.	They have sent <i>them</i> to <i>me</i> .
Se lo escribiré.	I will write to <i>him, her, or them</i> .
Se lo he dicho.	I have told it to <i>him, her, or them</i> .
Te la enviaremos.	We will send <i>her</i> to <i>thee</i> .
Voy á decíroslo.	I am going to tell <i>it</i> to <i>you</i> .
En diciéndomelo.	In telling <i>it</i> to <i>me</i> .
Vuélvemelos.	Return <i>them</i> to <i>me</i> .
Enséñeselos.	Show them to <i>him, her, or them</i> .

18. We have now to consider those personal pronouns of the dative and accusative cases that are preceded by a preposition—namely, *á mí, á tí, á él, á ella, á ello, á sí, á nosotros, á nosotras, á vosotros, á vosotras, á ellos, á ellas*. These pronouns are frequently employed with the other class of pronouns of the dative and accusative cases before mentioned. Their use is either to place the direct or indirect object of the verb in a more conspicuous light, or to distinguish more particularly the gender of the object. Ex.:

La llevaron <i>á ella</i> á su casa, y	They took <i>her</i> to her house, and
<i>á mí</i> me enviaron al despacho.	sent <i>me</i> to the office.
Yo le escribí <i>á él</i> con preferencia.	I wrote to <i>him</i> in preference.

In the first example, the additional pronouns *á ella* and *á mí* individualize more particularly the objects of the verbs; and in the second, *á él* determines the gender of the object; for without this explanatory pronoun, *le escribí* would be ambiguous in its meaning, and signify either *I wrote to him* or *I wrote to her*.

19. These pronouns are frequently employed by themselves in the dative case. Ex.:

Dé Vd. el libro á el, y la carta á ella.	Give the book <i>to him</i> and the letter <i>to her</i> .
Nos han dado ménos que á ellos.	They have given us less than <i>them</i> .

20. There is in English what is called the *emphatic* word of a sentence, and an English phrase may have as many significations as it contains words, according to which of the words is pronounced emphatically. This is not the case in Spanish, in which there is no emphatical word; and what is effected in English by emphasis, requires circumlocution in Spanish. Take for instance the following:

¿ Es que la vió esta mañana?	Did he see her this morning?
¿ Es cierto que la vió esta mañana?	<i>Did</i> he see her this morning?
¿ La vió él esta mañana?	Did <i>he</i> see her this morning?
¿ La vio á ella esta mañana?	Did he <i>see her</i> this morning?
¿ La vió esta misma mañana?	Did he see her <i>this</i> morning?
¿ Fué esta mañana que la vió?	Did he see her this <i>morning</i> ?

PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES

21. There is nothing very particular to be observed in the employment of personal pronouns of these two cases; they are always preceded by prepositions that govern them, as seen in the declensions. Observe, however, that when *mí*, *tí*, *sí*, are preceded by *con*, they are written thus—*conmigo*, with me or with myself; *contigo*, with thee or with thyself; *consigo*, with him, her, or them; or with himself, herself, or themselves. Ex.:

Él habla <i>conmigo</i> .	He speaks <i>with</i> , or <i>to me</i> .
Lo llevaré <i>conmigo</i> .	I will take it <i>with me</i> .
Yo hablo <i>contigo</i> .	I speak <i>to thee</i> .
¿ Hablas <i>contigo</i> ?	Dost thou speak <i>to thyself</i> ?
El me lleva <i>consigo</i> .	He takes me <i>with him</i> .
Ella habla <i>consigo</i> .	She speaks <i>to herself</i> .

In each of the last two examples, the nominative of the verb and the pronoun *sigo* refer to the same person; but should they refer to different individuals, then, instead of *consigo* we must say *con él*, *con ella*, *con ellos* or *con ellas*. Ex.:

Hablo con él, ella, ellos, ellas.
Ella habla con él, &c.

I speak to him, her, or them.
She speaks to him, &c.

Exercise on the Personal Pronouns

VOCABULARY

mañana, to-morrow.
hoy, to-day.
escrito (*p.p.*), written.
la verdad, the truth.
dichoso, happy.
venir, to come.
tarde, late.
escoger, to choose.
volvió, he returned.
desgraciado, unfortunate.
delincuente, guilty.
partido, set off.
pagar, to pay.
la deuda, the debt.
ver, to see.
acusar, accuse.
paciencia, patience.
conocer, to know.
preparando, preparing.
engañar, to deceive.
la prosperidad, the prosperity.
la adversidad, the adversity.
la historia, the history.
la carta, the letter.
el dibujo, the drawing.
la preferencia, the preference.
mandar, to send.
mejor, better.
dar, to give.

(0 504)

volver, to return.
nada, nothing.
el lechero, the milkman.
temprano, early.
el dinero, the money.
el esposo, the husband.
las acciones, the shares.
llamar, to call.
tarde, late.
llegar, to arrive.
el billete, the ticket.
el asiento, the seat.
las lunetas, the dress circle.
el actor, the actor.
la actriz, the actress.
el artista, the artist.
los gemelos, the opera-glasses.
el abanico, the fan.
la función, the performance.
las orejas, the ears.
negro, black.
blanco, white.
la cola, the tail.
silbar, to whistle.
resuello, breath.
bastante, plenty, enough.
la noche, the night.
la compañía, the company.
comprar, to buy.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I have a book. Thou wilt come (*vendrás*) to-morrow. He and she will be (*estarán*) here to-day. We (*m.*) have written. We (*f.*) have told the truth. You (*m.*) are happy. You (*f.*) will follow. They (*m.*) answered (*respondieron*). They (*f.*) heard (*oyeron*). He came, said he (*dijo el*), but it was too (*mu*y) late. They knew² (*sabían*) not¹ what to choose. Art thou (*estás*) there (*allí*)? Who is he (*quién es el*)? What (*que*) are (*son*) they? Go thou. He returned (*volvió*) within (*dentro de*) an hour. He was (*fué*) more unfortunate than guilty. They lost (*perdieron*); we did not lose (*nosotros no perdimos*). We had set off (*partido*) before (*antes*) they arrived (*llegasen*). He came to pay me the debt. I went (*fui*) to see him. He cannot (*no puede*) accuse us. Give us some wine (*algún vino*). Examine (*examinad*) yourselves well (*bien*). Let us arm ourselves (*armémosnos*) with patience. They were persuading (*estaban persuadiendo*) me. I should like (*quisiera*) to know him. Bring her here. Comfort (*consuela*) thyself and listen (*escucha*) to me. They are preparing him. He was (*estaba*) beating (*pegando*) her. We paid them (*pagámos*). I have spoken (*hablado*) to her. Vice deceives us. Prosperity gains (*grangea*) us friends, but (*mas*) adversity tries them (*pone á la prueba*). I accompanied (*acompañé*) her as far as (*hasta*) her house. I related (*conté*) to him all her history. I brought a letter and gave (*di*) it to her. Here are the drawings, show (*muestre*) them to them. I have represented (*representado*) it to her. Having referred (*referido*) it to me. They would have (*habrían*) repeated (*repetido*) it to us. Wilt thou refuse (*negarás*) it to them? I saw *her*, but could² not¹ see *him*. I give it to thee in preference. They cheated (*engañaron*) *us*, and robbed (*robaron*) *them*. I am going (*voy*) to send it to *him*, that (*para que*) he may forward (*enviarían*) it to *us* rather (*antes*) than return (*volver*) it to *him*. Do they

speak (*hablan*) of me or of him? What does he say (*dice*) about (*de*) it? He says² (*dice*) nothing¹ of himself. Was it done (*fué hecho*) by him or by her? He is gone (*ido*) with them. He did it (*hizo*) for me. I can go (*puedo ir*) without (*sin*) him. They spoke (*hablaron*) against (*contra*) me. He would neither stay (*no quiso quedarse*) with me, nor (*ni*) with thee. He carried (*llevó*) it along with him. I sang (*canté*) with her, but not (*mas no*) with him. Who is there? He, she, we, you, they. Do you give (*da Vd.*) the money to me or to her? I love (*quiero*) thee, but I do not love him. Has he money about him (*lleva el dinero consigo*)? She has no money about her. We (*m.*) are poor (*pobre*), but you (*f.*) are rich. Did my aunt speak to (*con*) you (*pol. sing.*) or to herself (*consigo*)? Gentlemen, I saw you (*pol. plural*) this morning in Chancery Lane, but I did not recognize (*reconocer*) you. She loves thee, but she does not love me. I did not speak of you, but (*sino*) I spoke of them (*plural fem.*). He would have taken all his utensils (*utensilios* or *herramientas*) with him, if he had had time (*el tiempo*). Have you any friends? I have none. Who has arrived with my father? She, he, and I have come to see you (*fam. sing.*). Tell it to him, but not to her (*dígaselo á él pero no á ella*). Give it to her, but not to them.

READING EXERCISE

El caballero halló á su enemigo; y vencidole (*after having conquered him*) en batalla singular (*duel*) y despues perdonádole generosamente, le dió la libertad. Inútil es querérselo ocultar (*conceal*) á Don Rafael por más tiempo, cuando todo el mundo lo sabe ya. Esperabamos con impaciencia la hora para vernos y hablarnos. ¿Tiene Vd. algo que decirnos? ¿Conoce Vd. á estas señoras? Señores, ya es tarde, y todavía no nos llaman á cenar. Mis hermanos y yo iremos contigo, si tu lo deseas. Dicen que habrá guerra; pero yo no lo creo. ¿Quién lo dice? Los periódicos

cos lo dicen. El dinero *se* recibirá mañana. *Se* han recibido los libros. Él los llamó temprano (*early*). Yo les dí el libro. El me enseña (*he teaches me*). Yo *se* lo digo á él, pero no á vosotros. Nosotros los oímos (*we hear them*) hablar. Vosotras la amais. Ella les dijo de no venir. Ya te lo he dicho muchas veces, pero tu te haces el sordo (*affect or pretend to be deaf*). ¡Dínos la verdad! La digo siempre. ¿Se lo ha dicho Vd. á él ó á ella? *Se* lo he dicho á ella y no á él. ¿Quién ha venido ayer? El profesor ha venido á verme. ¡Antonio, díle á Rafael que *se* levante más temprano! Ya *se* lo he dicho tres veces, pero hasta ahora no lo ha hecho. ¿Por qué no te da (*gives*) dinero tu padre? No puede darme dinero porque ha perdido todo su capital con acciones del ferrocarril (*railway*). ¿Lo ha prometido ella á su esposo? Sí, se lo ha prometido. ¿Quién llamó anoche á la puerta de la calle tan tarde? Fuí yo que esperaba llegar con el lechero.

READING EXERCISE

Verb Drill

¿Desearía Vd. ir al teatro? Iría con mucho gusto si tuviese el tiempo disponible. Tengo dos billetes que me han regalado hace una semana. Los asientos están en las lunetas. Me han dicho que la compañía es excelente; los actores y las actrices son verdaderos artistas. Pues, el teatro está lleno todas las noches, en particular el miércoles y el sábado. Si es que Vd. desea venir, no olvide sus gemelos y el abanico. ¿Á que hora empieza la función? La función empezará á las dos en punto (*at 2 o'clock precisely*). ¿Le gusta á Vd. la tragedia (*tragedy*)? Me gusta más la comedia (*comedy*). ¿Cuántos instrumentos hay en la orquesta? Hay unos ochenta. ¿Quién barrió (*swept*) la cocina (*kitchen*)? ¿Qué hizo Emilia? Ella hizo (*did, made*) la cama (*bed*). ¿Pusieron la mesa con esmero? (*did they set the table nicely?*) La pusieron primorosamente (*beautifully*). ¿Quién se lo ha dicho á Vd.? Él

me lo ha dicho. ¿De quién son estas flores? Son las de mi hermana. ¿Cuales son los señores que han venido? ¿A quién ha hablado el extranjero? (pronounce *extranjero*). No he hallado lo que he buscado. Yo comería unas peras si las hubiera (*if there were any*). ¿Ha estado Vd. en Madrid? Sí, señor, vengo de allí. ¿De quién es esta casa? Esta casa es de mi padre. ¿Son estas las hermanas del muchacho? ¿Eran las tazas (*cups*) y los platillos (*saucers*) bonitos (*pretty*)? ¿Eran los mastuerzos (*nasturtiums*) amarillos (*yellow*)? Eran rojos (*red*), amarillos, blancos y jaspeados (*variegated*). ¿Estaba enferma la señora María? No solamente (*only*) estaba cansada (*tired*). ¿Sabe Vd. remar? (*to row*). No mucho.

CONVERSATION

I am under many obligations to him.	Le debo muchos favores.
I am indebted to him for it.	Le soy deudor de ello.
About what are these people disputing?	¿Qué disputan esas gentes?
They are disputing about who shall go first.	Disputan á quien irá el primero.
I rely upon you.	Confío en Vd.
You go about it the wrong way.	Vd. se maneja mal.
That never crossed my mind.	Eso no se me ha ocurrido nunca.
I am accustomed to it.	Estoy acostumbrado á ello.
You puzzle me.	Vd. me confunde.
I shall take other measures.	Tomaré otras disposiciones.
It is not my fault.	No es culpa mia.
You are jesting.	Vd. se chancea.
Why do you fret?	¿Por qué se inquieta Vd.?
Do not be uneasy.	No tenga Vd. cuidado.
Of what use is that to you?	¿Para qué le sirve á Vd. eso?
That is of no use to me.	Eso no me sirve para nada.
It avails me nothing.	Eso no me sirve de nada.
I have lost sight of that.	Yo he perdido eso de vista.
You ought to have done that.	Debería Vd. haber hecho eso.
I suspect what he has done.	Sospecho lo que él ha hecho.
Will you hold your tongue?	¿Se calla Vd.?
What do you mean?	¿Qué quiere Vd. decir?
Do not fret about that.	No se impaciente Vd. por eso.

It is sufficient for you to know that.	Basta que Vd. sepa eso.
It is time for you to speak.	Es tiempo que hable Vd.
What must I say?	¿Qué debo decir?
I am sorry you should have to wait.	Siento el que haya Vd. tenido que esperar.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

1. Possessive pronouns are those that denote the possession of anything by the persons or things to which they refer; they do not vary their form in Spanish on account of case; but they admit the same prepositions in the several cases as personal pronouns do. They are of two kinds, namely, conjunctive, or those that precede the noun, and disjunctive, or those that follow the noun, or that refer to some noun understood.

CONJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

mi, my.	nuestro, our.
tu, thy.	vuestro, your.
su, his, her, its.	su, their.

2. These refer to things possessed in the *singular* number; an **s** is added to them to form the plural: **mi**, **tu**, **su**, are applicable to both genders; but **nuestro** and **vuestro** are of the masculine gender, and change their final letter into **a** to form the feminine. Ex.:

Mi sombrero, mis espadas.	My hat, my swords.
Tu carta, tus libros.	Thy letter, thy books.
Su valor, sus virtudes.	His, her, or its valour or virtues.
Nuestro deber, nuestras leyes.	Our duty, our laws.
Vuestro juicio, vuestros hechos.	Your judgment, your deeds.
Su talento, sus esperanzas.	Their talent, their hopes.

In these examples we see that these possessive pronouns agree, in Spanish, in *person* with the *possessor*, and in *number* with the thing *possessed*; and that the first and second persons *plural* agree also in *gender* with the things *possessed*.

DISJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

mio, mine.
tuyo, thine.
suyo, his, her, its.

nuestro, ours.
vuestro, yours.
suyo, theirs.

3. This class of possessive pronouns are made to agree in *person* with the *possessor*, and in *gender* and *number* with the thing possessed. They change the final letter into *á* to form the feminine gender, and an *s* is added to them to form the plural number. Ex.:

El cuidado **mio**.
 Las esperanzas **mias**.
 El candor **suyo**.
 Los esfuerzos **nuestros**.
 La carta **vuestra**.

My care.
My hopes.
His, her, or their candour.
Our efforts.
Your letter.

4. When these pronouns are employed in reference to a noun understood, or one going before, they are preceded by the definite article, agreeing with them in gender and number; except when used in answer to a question, and likewise when a verb intervenes between the noun and the pronoun; in which cases the article is not necessary, unless we wish to identify or to particularize the thing to which the pronoun refers. Ex.:

Mi libro **y el tuyo** están aquí,
 pero **el suyo** no está.
 De quién es este libro?—**Mio**.
 Cuál quiere Vd., **el nuestro** ó **el suyo**?—**El nuestro**.
 Esa casa era **nuestra**.
 Este sello es **el mio**.

My book and *thine* are here, but
his, hers, or theirs is not.
 Whose book is this?—*Mine*.
 Which will you have—*ours* or
his?—*Ours*.
 That house was *ours*.
 This seal is *mine*.

5. When disjunctive possessive pronouns refer in a vague manner to something possessed, they are sometimes used with the neuter article, in the same manner as adjectives substantively employed are; as, *Lo mio*, mine (or that which is mine); *lo suyo*, his, hers, its, or theirs (or that which is his, hers, &c.); *lo nuestro*, ours (or what is ours).

6. *Disjunctive* possessive pronouns, preceded in English

by the preposition *of*, require no preposition in Spanish.
Ex.:

Un vestido **mío**.

A dress of *mine*.

Dos criados **suyos**.

Two servants of *his*.

La carta **vuestra** de la que hablo.

The letter of *yours* of which I speak.

But when we wish to lay a particular emphasis on the pronoun, then both the preposition and article are required in Spanish. Ex.:

Dos criados de los **suyos** y uno de los **mios**.

Two servants of *his* and one of *mine*.

Two of my servants, one of his friends, would be rendered: *Dos de mis criados; uno de sus amigos*.

7. The pronoun **my**, used in English in addressing a person, is translated **mío**, and follows the noun. Ex.:

No vayas hijo **mío**.

Do not go, *my* son.

Créame Vd., Señor **mío**.

Believe me, *my* dear Sir.

Acuérdate, hijo **mío**!

Remember, *my* child!

8. As in the employment of possessive pronouns of the *third* person, ambiguity may sometimes arise respecting the *gender* and the *number* of the possessor, it would be preferable in doubtful cases to employ a *personal* pronoun in the genitive case after the noun, in addition to the possessive pronoun, or in addition to the definite article before the noun, by which means every ambiguity will be avoided. Ex.:

Su casa de **él**, or la casa de **él**.

His house.

Su casa de **ella**, or la casa de **ella**.

Her house.

Mis libros y los de Vd.

My books and *yours*.

Los libros de **ella** y los **mios**.

Her books and *mine*.

Sus or las cartas de Vd. y las **mias**.

Your letters and *mine*.

9. In alluding to any *part* or *member* of a person or thing affected by a verb or a preposition, or to anything worn by, or appertaining to a person or thing, instead of the *possessive pronoun* employed in English, a *personal pronoun* in the *dative* case is used in Spanish in reference

to the object itself, and the *definite article* points out the particular *part* affected by the verb. Ex.:

Le herí **el** brazo derecho.

I wounded *his* right arm (or, him in the right arm).

Me dió en **la** cabeza.

He struck me on *my* head (or, on the head).

Nos quitaron **las** espadas.

They took away *our* swords.

Le cortaron **la** casaca.

They tore *his* coat.

Me han alborotado **los** sesos.

They have turned *my* brain.

In all these examples there appears a subject that acts, and an object acted upon. When, however, there is but one individual in question, or the actor acts upon anything belonging to himself, the definite article alone is sufficient in Spanish, except when the verb is used reflectively. Ex.:

Ha perdido **la** vista.

She has lost *her* sight.

Sacó **la** espada.

He drew *his* sword.

Me duele **la** cabeza.

My head aches.

Se lavó **las** manos.

She washed *her* hands.

The possessive pronoun, however, should be retained whenever the use of the article might occasion ambiguity or obscurity, and also where identity or emphasis is desired. Ex.:

He aquí **mi** bolsa; tómalala.

Here is *my* purse; take it.

Saqué yo **mi** espada luego que
sacó él la suya.

I drew *my* sword as soon as he
drew his.

10. The word **own**, used in English together with possessive pronouns, is translated **propio**, or **mismo**. Ex.:

Hablaba de **mis propios** negocios.

I was speaking of *my own* business.

Habla de **sí mismo**.

He speaks of *his own* self.

Esas casas son **suyas propias**.

Those are *his own* houses.

11. Sometimes the possessive pronoun is employed in Spanish in a vague sense, and is then equivalent to *one's* in English. Ex.:

Es preciso obrar según **su** poder.

It is necessary to act according to
one's strength.

Conviene gastar según **sus**
medios.

It is prudent to spend according
to *one's* means.

Exercise on the Possessive Pronouns

VOCABULARY

encuadernado, bound.
 edificado, built.
 adornado, adorned.
 la caballeriza, the stable.
 el talento, the talent.
 estimado, esteemed.
 el esfuerzo, the effort.
 el obstáculo, the obstacle.
 el candor, the candour.
 la conducta, the conduct.
 la esperanza, the hope.
 la idea, the idea.
 el celo, the zeal.
 la pintura, the picture.
 la desgracia, the misfortune.
 la confianza, the confidence.
 merece, deserves.
 el guante, the glove.
 el coche, the coach.
 el pariente, the relation.
 el negocio, the business.
 vendido, sold (*p.p.*).
 últimamente, lastly.
 la pierna, the leg.
 la faltriquera, the pocket.
 el sombrero, the hat.
 perder, to lose.

la vida, the life.
 la casaca, the coat.
 el dedo, the finger.
 el desafío, the duel.
 el vecindario, the neighbourhood.
 trasladar, to remove.
 la habitación, the room.
 el dueño, the owner.
 la fama, the reputation.
 rico, wealthy.
 pobre, poor.
 oír, to hear.
 conocer, to know.
 tomar, to take.
 vivir, to live.
 la semana, the week.
 dejar, to leave.
 la verdad, the truth.
 el niño, the boy.
 saber, to know.
 la perseverancia, the perseverance.
 antes, before.
 aquí, here.
 allí, there.
 el uso, the use.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

My father and my mother are at home. My books are well bound. Your houses are well built, and your gardens are adorned with beautiful flowers. Her servant took her horses to the stable. His genius (*genio*) and his talent are esteemed. Our constancy (*constancia*) and our efforts will surmount (*vencerán*) every (*todo*) obstacle. Thy (*tu*) candour and thy virtue are well known. Soldiers! your brave conduct has satisfied (*satisfecho*) my hopes. That is (*aquella es*) his own idea. My friends did not

serve me (*no me obsequiaron*) with the same zeal as his. All the pictures were sold (*se vendieron*) except (*ménos*) yours and mine. Your misfortune cannot be compared (*no puede compararse*) with ours. Their confidence deserves mine. Whose gloves are these?—Mine. And that hat?—His. Is this her coach?—No, it is mine. A friend of mine has spoken (*hablado*) to a relation of his concerning (*acerca de*) some business of yours. We sent (*enviámos*) a servant of ours to an aunt of hers. He has sold one of his horses. What ails thee (*que tienes*), my child? Here it is, my friend. Ours is to go (*ha de ir*) first; yours will go (*irá*) next; and lastly, theirs. That house is *hers*; not *his*. *Her* letter is better written than *his*. They hurt (*lastimaron*) his leg in taking (*sacando*) off his boot (*bota*). Her teeth (*dientes, muelas*) ache (*duelen*). I put (*metí*) the money into (*en*) my pocket. I took off my hat. It is better (*más vale*) for a man to lose his life than his honour. He is putting on (*está poniéndose*) his coat. She cut her finger (*Se cortó su dedo*). He lost his life in a duel (*Perdió su vida en un desafío*). My pen, his, and hers (*Mi pluma, la suya y la de ella* (lit. that of her). This is her book, and that is his (*Este es su libro y aquel es el de él*).

READING EXERCISE

Verb Drill

¿Vive Vd. en este vecindario? Nos trasladamos aquí hace un mes. Vd. vivirá en la casa de huéspedes (*boarding house*), ¿no es verdad? (*are you not?*) Sí, señor por algunos meses. ¿Cuándo tomaron Vds. habitaciones en el hotel? Las tomamos hace una semana. Así es que Vds. han dejado la casa. Sí; hemos dejado la casa (*we broke up housekeeping*) hace nueve meses. ¿Conoce Vd. á los huéspedes? (*Are you acquainted with the guests?*). Conozco á algunos. ¿Los conocía Vd. antes? No, no los conocía hasta ahora. ¿Quién es el dueño de

la casa vecina al hotel? El señor de Aro es el dueño. ¿Le conoce Vd.? Le conozco de fama (*by reputation*). Él es muy rico, ¿no es verdad? (*isn't he?*) Así he oído decir (*So I have heard said*). Cuando era niño era muy pobre. Así dicen (*So they say*). ¿Sabe Vd. cómo adquirió su riqueza? Con la perseverancia y el trabajo. ¿Qué negocio hacía? Era negociante importador. ¿Qué dice el autor de la situación de la ciudad? ¿De dónde viene el trigo? (*wheat*). ¿Cómo es el clima del país? ¿Cuántas puertas tenía Valencia? ¿Cuáles son los nombres de estas puertas? ¿Qué hicieron los venecianos? He perdido *mi* sombrero y *mis* guantes. Mi amiga y *mi* prima. *Su* persona y (*sus*) facultades (*his person and qualities*). Vd. no puede figurarse el dolor con que recibí esta noticia (*You cannot imagine how much grieved I was to learn this news*). La ciudad *donde* (or *en donde*) *vivo* es muy alegre (*merry*).

CONVERSATION

I am determined to maintain my right.

It is a strange coincidence.

I would not undertake it on any account.

This is an understood thing.

This is undoubtedly the case.

These are convincing proofs.

He has stated the case clearly.

That is customary here.

We were present on that occasion.

You had no right to do so.

I do not know how to behave in the matter.

The appeal was without any result.

This is quite impossible.

We assure you it is not the case.

I cannot believe it.

Estoy resuelto á mantener mi derecho.

Es una coincidencia rara.

No quiso entrar en ello por ningún título.

Esa es cosa bien entendida.

Es así á no dudarlo.

Estas son pruebas convincentes.

Ha expuesto el asunto con claridad.

Es de uso en ésta.

Estábamos presentes en dicha ocasión.

No tenía Vd. derecho á hacerlo.

No sé como manejarme en este asunto.

La apelación ha sido ineficaz.

Esto es completamente imposible.

Le aseguramos que la cosa no es tal.

No puedo creerlo.

We have achieved nothing by it.	Ello no nos ha reportado provecho alguno.
He is quite out in his reckoning.	Se ha engañado mucho en su cálculo.
We have acted under your persuasion.	Hemos obrado de acuerdo con su insinuación de Vd.
He questioned me about the matter.	Me hizo preguntas sobre el particular.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

1. *Demonstrative* pronouns are those that point to objects which have some relation as regards place or position to the person speaking.

In Spanish there are *three* kinds of demonstrative pronouns: the first, *este*, refers to an object near to the speaker; the second, *ese*, refers to an object nearer to the person or thing spoken to than to the speaker; and the third, *aquel*, refers to an object that is distant both from the speaker and from the object spoken to. Ex.:

<i>Este</i> libro que estoy leyendo, <i>ese</i> tratado que tiene Vd. en la mano, y <i>aquel</i> folleto que está sobre la mesa.	<i>This</i> book which I am reading, <i>that</i> treatise which you have in your hand, and <i>that</i> pamphlet which is on the table.
--	--

2. Demonstrative pronouns in Spanish are subject to a variation of *gender* and *number*: they are never preceded by the article, and do not vary their form on account of case, but admit the same preposition to point out their cases as personal pronouns do. Ex.:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>este,</i>	<i>esta,</i>	<i>esto,</i>	this.
	<i>ese,</i>	<i>esa,</i>	<i>eso,</i>	that.
	<i>aquel,</i>	<i>aquella,</i>	<i>aquello,</i>	that yonder.
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>estos,</i>	<i>estas,</i>	no neuter	these.
	<i>esos,</i>	<i>esas,</i>	no neuter	those.
	<i>aquellos,</i>	<i>aquellas,</i>	no neuter	those yonder.

In novels, &c., the first and second of these classes of demonstratives are sometimes compounded with the adjective *otro*, dropping their final vowel; thus, *Singular*:

esotro, esotra, esotro, that other. *Plural*: **estotros, estotras**, these others. **Esotros, esotras**, those others. The neuter has no plural.

This compounding of the two words does not take place with the third class, but they are written separately; thus, *Singular*: **aquel otro, aquella otra, aquello otro**, that other yonder. *Plural*: **aquellos otros, aquellas otras**, those others yonder.

3. When demonstrative pronouns refer to time, **este** is applied to the present, and **ese** or **aquel** to the past, according to the remoteness of the time alluded to. Ex.:

Este es el siglo de la ilustración.
Me acuerdo bien de **ese** día.
Aquellos eran tiempos de mucha
 barbaridad.

This is the age of knowledge.
 I recollect *that* day well.
Those were times of much barbarity.

4. Sometimes the demonstrative pronoun is used in English to refer to some determined space of time; as, I have not seen him *this month, these ten days, these two years*; in such cases the impersonal verb **hacer** (it is) is employed in Spanish instead. (See Impersonal Verbs.)

No han estado aquí **hace un mes; hace tres años**.
Hace una hora; dos horas que
 estoy aguardando aquí.

They have not been here *this month; these three years*.
 I have been waiting here *this hour; these two hours*.

5. Although what has been observed in paragraph 1, with regard to the application of the three kinds of demonstrative pronouns, is conformable with the rules given by the SPANISH ACADEMY, yet there are instances in which two objects pointed to at different distances from the speaker, may have the same relative distance from the person addressed, if he be near to the speaker. In such cases it would be more recommendable to employ **ese** or **aquel**, according as the distance of the locality of the objects, or their remoteness with regard to time, could be more accurately denoted in English by an adverb. Ex.:

Ese libro que está sobre la mesa,
y **aquel** que está en el estante.
Ese buque que llegó **ayer**, y **aquel**
que naufragó el año pasado.

That book *there* on the table, and
that one *yonder* on the shelf.
That vessel which arrived *yesterday*,
and *that* one which was
shipwrecked *last year*.

6. The expressions *namely*, and *that is*, or *that is to say*, are translated **esto es**. Ex.:

Le encomendé que no caminase
mucho; **esto es**, que solo hiciese
un poco de ejercicio.
Me dijo que le comprara lo si-
guiente; **esto es**.

I desired him not to walk much;
that is, that he should only take
a little exercise.
He told me to purchase him the
following; *namely*.

THE ARTICLE USED INSTEAD OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS

7. When in English the *demonstrative* pronoun is followed by *who*, *which*, or *that*, expressed or understood, it is sometimes rendered in Spanish by the *definite article*. This, however, is not to be understood as a general rule, as in this case the employment of the one in preference to the other is a mere matter of taste, although the demonstrative pronoun appears to identify more particularly the object referred to. Ex.:

Mis libros y **los que** (or **aquellos que**) el tiene.
Los que (or **aquellos que**) lo dicen
se engañan.
Traigame Vd. **el que** (or **aquel que**) á Vd. le parezca mejor.

My books and *those which* he
has.
Those who say so are mistaken.
Bring me *that which* you think
best.

8. Also when the English *personal* pronoun is followed by *who* or *that*, expressed or understood, it may be translated either by the article, or by the demonstrative pronoun **aquel**. Ex.:

Délo Vd. **al que** (or **á aquel que**)
primero venga.
El que es sabio (or **aquel que** es
sabio) no lo diría.
Los que (or **aquellos que**) lo oyeron
lo saben.

Give it to *him who* comes first.
He that is wise would not say so.
They who heard it know it.

Exercise on the Demonstrative Pronouns

VOCABULARY

la muchacha, the girl.
 el verso, the verse.
 la pluma, the pen.
 escribir, to write.
 bien, well.
 lleno, full.
 la manzana, the apple.
 el pariente, the relation.
 el caballero, the gentleman.
 brillante, brilliant.
 preferir, to prefer.
 la virtud, the virtue.
 el vicio, the vice.
 feliz, happy.
 miserable, miserable.
 concurrir, to contribute.
 el orador, the orator.
 la razon, the reason.
 el corazon, the heart.
 convencer, to convince.
 mover, to move.
 persuadir, to persuade.
 cultivar, to cultivate.
 protegido, encouraged.
 virtuoso, virtuous.
 comprar, to buy.
 hablar, to speak.
 sabio, wise.
 necesario, necessary.
 solo, only.
 incesantemente, incessantly.

el estudio, the study.
 la atención, the attention.
 adquirir, to acquire.
 la pronunciación, the pronunciation.
 voz alta, aloud.
 absolutamente, absolutely.
 la lengua, the tongue.
 el oído, the ear.
 la vista, the eye, the sight.
 una letra de cambio, a draft.
 el banco, the bank.
 el cajero, the cashier.
 presentar, to present, to introduce.
 la verdad, the truth.
 ambos lados, both sides.
 cuándo, when.
 el dinero, the money.
 despues, after.
 firmar, to sign.
 los negocios, the business.
 afortunado, successful.
 poner, to put or place.
 el despacho, the office.
 generalmente, usually.
 cómo, how.
 como, I eat.
 sírvase, please.
 aquí, here.
 acento, accent.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

They belong (*pertenecen*) to this man and this girl.
 Have you read these verses? These pens do not write well. This garden is full of flowers. These apples are better than those. He is a relation of that gentleman whom you² met¹ here some days ago (*hace días*). Are

you acquainted with (*conoce Vd. á*) those ladies there? That was a brilliant age (*siglo*) with the Athenians (*Atenienses*). He arrived (*llegó*) on that very day. What is that? Prefer virtue to vice; the former will make (*hard*) thee happy; the latter miserable. Two things appear to contribute to form an orator—reason and the heart; the former to convince, the latter to move and persuade. That is what he may do; that is to say, what he ought to do. Those that cultivate learning should be encouraged. Happy they who are virtuous. I prefer that which you have, to those which I bought. Those who speak ill (*hablan mal*) of her do not know her. He that is wise speaks when it is necessary; but he that only presumes to be so (*lo presume*) speaks incessantly (*continuamente*). Why have you not kept your promise?—I do not remember (*no puedo acordarme*) what I promised you.—Did you not promise us to take us to the concert (*concierto*) last Thursday?—I confess that I was wrong in promising you; the concert, however, has not taken place. Each woman thinks herself amiable, and each is conceited. The same as men, my dear friend. What is the matter with you?—Nothing is the matter with me. Why does your sister complain? Did they remain long at the ball? Which young ladies have you taken to the ball (*baile*)?—I took my sister's friends there.

READING EXERCISE

Verb Drill

¿Aprovecha (*improve*) Rafael en sus estudios? Sí, señor, el ha aprovechado mucho en el español. ¿Pone atención á lo que dice su maestro? Generalmente pone atención. ¿Cómo ha adquirido tan buena pronunciación? Estudiando siempre en voz alta (*studying aloud*). ¿Es menester estudiar en voz alta? Sí, señor, es absolutamente necesario si quiere uno hacer buen progreso. ¿Por qué? Porque así se educa la lengua al mismo tiempo que el oído y la vista. ¿Cómo se convierte en dinero una letra? Se

lleva al banco. ¿Y á quién la presenta Vd.? Pues la presento al cajero. Él la mira (*he looks at it*), ¿no es verdad? (*does he not?*) Sí, el mira ámbos lados (*both sides*). ¿Cuándo le da el dinero? Despues de firmarla yo. ¿Me llama Vd. (*llamar*, verb, *to call*). Yo le llamo. ¿Quién me llama? Su madre de Vd. le llama. ¿Ha llamado Vd. á los hombres? Yo los he llamado. ¿Tira Vd. su dinero? Yo no lo tiro. ¿Quién tira sus libros? ¿Ha traido Vd. alguna cosa (*any thing*)? He traido mis guantes. ¿Qué fuegos ha apagado (*extinguished*) Vd.? ¿Qué almacenes (*storehouses*) ha abierto (*opened*) Vd.? ¿Los ha conducido Vd. al almacén? Los he conducido á él. ¿Qué libros ha tomado (*taken*) Vd.? ¿Aprende Vd. á leer? Aprendo á escribir (*I learn to write*). ¿Ha aprendido Vd. á hablar? He aprendido. ¿Me comprende Vd.? ¿Me oye Vd.? Le comprendo á Vd. Le oigo á Vd. (*I do understand you*). ¿Ha comprendido Vd. al hombre? Le he comprendido perfectamente bien. Le oigo á Vd. (*I hear you*) pero no le comprendo (*but I do not understand you*). ¿Adónde (*where*) vive Vd.? Vivo en la calle Anerley número veintiuno.

CONVERSATION

Gentlemen, if you please, let us go into the dining-room.

Madam, do me the favour to take first place.

I will send you word immediately he arrives.

Will you pay some visits with me to-morrow?

What do you wish to do, gentlemen?

Sir, will you do me the favour?

Draw the curtains and open the window.

Bring me some warm water.

Are you in great haste?

Yes, sir, I have a great deal to do,

Caballeros, si Vds. gustan, vamos al comedor.

Señora, hágame Vd. el favor de tomar el primer asiento.

Luego que llegue se lo mandaré á decir á Vd.

¿Quiere Vd. hacer algunas visitas conmigo mañana?

¿Qué quieren Vds. hacer, señores?

Señor, ¿quiere Vd. hacerme el favor?

Corre las cortinas y abre la ventana.

Traeme un poco de agua caliente.

¿Está Vd. muy de prisa?

Sí, señor, tengo mucho que hacer,

I came only to enquire how you all were.	Solo vine para preguntar como estaban Vds.
I thank you for this visit.	Agradezco á Vd. esta visita.
Is not to-day post-day?	¿No es hoy día de correo?
This is an exercise the practical value of which is incomparably greater than that of any other kind of instruction.	Este es un tema cuya utilidad práctica es incomparablemente superior á todo otro género de instrucción.
I have much pleasure in accepting your kind invitation to dine with you.	Con sumo placer admito su fino obsequio de ir á comer con Vd.
I will accompany you with much pleasure.	Le acompañaré á Vd. con mucho gusto.
Who is there?	¿Quién está ahí?
She is rather indisposed.	Está algo indispuesta.
I am exceedingly sorry for it.	Lo siento infinito.
Do me the favour to tell me what is the time.	Hágame Vd. el favor de decirme qué hora es.
Gentlemen, your healths.	Señores, á la salud de Vds.
I must rise very early.	Es menester que me levante muy temprano.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

1. *Relative* pronouns are those that relate or refer to some person or thing in a sentence, called the *antecedent*. For instance, *The man who spoke*; *The bird which I caught*; *The ship that was lost*. In these examples, *who*, *which*, and *that* are *relative* pronouns, and refer to the antecedent nouns *man*, *bird*, *ship*.

There are four relative pronouns in Spanish, namely, *quién*, who; *cual*, which; *que*, who, which, or that; and *cuyo*, whose, or of which. *Whom* is rendered *á quién*: *to* or *for* whom, &c., *á* or *para* *quién*, &c. They do not vary their terminations on account of case, but admit the same prepositions as personal pronouns do in the several cases.

2. *Quién* and *cual* have a plural termination, as *quienes*, *cuales*; but they are common to both genders. *Quién* refers to persons only, and *cual* both to persons and

things. **Quién** is seldom preceded by the article, but **cual**, as a relative, generally is. Ex.:

Él es **quién** lo tiene.

It is he *who* has it.

Las señoras **que**, or **á quienes**, or **á las cuales** vimos.

The ladies *whom* we saw.

Los señores con **quienes** hablé.

The gentlemen to *whom* I spoke.

Es una ciencia de la **cual** tengo muy poco conocimiento.

It is a science of *which* I have but little knowledge.

NOTE.—When the antecedent is understood, the relative occupies its place as the nominative of the verb; as, **Quién lo dice se engaña**—Who says so is in error.

3. We sometimes see **quién** and **cual** used in the sense of *some* and *others*, and *one* and *another*. Ex.:

Quién se salvo á nado, **quién** en lanchas.

Some saved themselves by swimming, *others* in boats.

Cual llevaba la fatigada madre, y **cual** el pequeño hijo.

One bore away the wearied mother, *another* the infant child.

4. **Cual**, in exclamatory sentences, means *how* or *in what a state* or *condition*; as, **Cual le hallé**, How wretched, or, In what a wretched state, I found him!

5. **Que** is common to both numbers and genders, and is applied to persons and things. Ex.:

El hombre **que** vino.

The man *who* (or *that*), came.

Las mujeres **que** acompañámos.

The women *whom* (or *that*) we accompanied.

Las cosas á **que** Vd. se refiere.

The things to *which* you allude.

6. The second and third examples might also be thus expressed, *Las mujeres á quienes acompañámos. Las cosas á las cuales Vd. se refiere.* This construction is used when we wish to identify an object more particularly. In the like manner when *who* or *that* is repeated in a sentence, it may be translated either **que** or **el cual**. Ex.:

El hombre **que** partió ayer, y **que**, or **el cual**, fué asesinado.

The man *who* (or *that*) left yesterday, and *who* (or *that*) was murdered.

Observe that when *who* or *that* has its antecedent ex-

pressed in English, it is seldom translated **quién**, but most generally **que**, especially if it agree in case with the antecedent. It would therefore be unidiomatical to say, *El hombre quién vino; Las mujeres quienes fueron*. They should be *El hombre que vino* (The man who or *that* came). *Las mujeres que fueron* (The women who or *that* went). In the following example, *who* does not agree in case with its antecedent, the latter being in the accusative. Therefore **quién** should be preferred to **que**: *Todos aplaudieron á Emilia, quién se retiró llena de alegría* (They all applauded Emily, who retired full of joy).

7. If *whom* be repeated in a sentence, it may be either translated **quién** or **el cual** preceded by a preposition. Ex.:

El hombre á quién vimos, y de quién , or del cual huímos.	The <i>man whom</i> we saw, and from <i>whom</i> we fled.
--	---

8. *What* is sometimes translated **lo que**, and *which*, **lo cual**. (See Exercise on the Neuter Article **lo**). Ex.:

Lo que él dice no es lo que Vd. piensa.	<i>What</i> he says is not <i>what</i> you think.
Lo que digo es verdad, lo cual estas cartas lo prueban.	<i>What</i> I say is true, <i>which</i> these letters prove.

9. **Cuyo** partakes of the nature both of a relative and a possessive pronoun. As a relative it relates to an antecedent, and as a possessive pronoun it refers to the person or thing possessed; in which latter capacity it agrees in number and gender with the person or thing possessed, and not with the possessor. Ex.:

El hombre cuyo dinero tengo.	The <i>man whose money</i> I have.
Los autores cuyos libros leo.	The <i>authors whose books</i> I read.
El árbol cuya fruta es madura.	The <i>tree of which the fruit</i> is ripe.
Las mujeres cuyas diágrimas acabo de referir.	The <i>women whose misfortunes</i> I have just related.

10. The expressions *than whom*, and *than which*, are rendered **que**, in the following manner. Ex.:

Hablo de su hermano de Vd.; que á nadie aprecio más que á el.	I speak of your brother, <i>than</i> <i>whom</i> I esteem no one better.
Este jardin, que nada puede ser más hermoso.	This garden <i>than which</i> nothing can be more beautiful.

11. Relatives are always expressed in Spanish, although frequently omitted in English. Ex.:

La casa que fuimos á ver.	The house we went to see.
La ciudad de que hablo.	The city I speak of.

12. The relative in English does not invariably *follow* the preposition by which it is governed; as, for instance, *The gentleman whom I wrote to*; *The houses which you speak of*. In Spanish, however, it must *immediately follow* the preposition by which it is governed; as, *El caballero á quién escribí*; *Las casas de que Vd. habla*.

Exercise on the Relative Pronouns

VOCABULARY

enviar, to send.
 la bondad, the kindness.
 donde, where.
 hablar, to speak.
 encontramos, we met.
 bailó, danced.
 envió, sent.
 el dibujo, the drawing.
 allí, there.
 la obra, the work.
 leer, to read.
 preferencia, preference.
 elegido, selected.
 el general, the general.
 dirigió, conducted.
 la batalla, the battle.
 murió, was killed.
 la vida, the life.
 ociosidad, idleness.
 admirar, to admire.
 mal, evil.

la causa, the cause.
 desconocido, unknown.
 la hacienda, the estate.
 el dueño, the owner.
 el cuchillo, the knife.
 la espada, the sword.
 el socorro, the assistance.
 la misericordia, the mercy.
 ardiente, ardent.
 el espíritu, the spirit.
 límites, bounds.
 el vicio, the vice.
 el joven, the lad.
 la idea, the idea.
 comprar, to buy.
 marcharse, set out.
 prestar, to lend.
 el comerciante, the merchant.
 el almacén, the warehouse.
 los clavos, the nails.
 la necesidad, the need or want.

el discípulo, the pupil.
 obediente, obedient.
 desobediente, disobedient.
 perder, to lose.
 pagar, to pay.
 salir, to go out.
 enfermo, ill.
 escribir, to write.
 el dinero, the money.
 ver, to see.
 los niños, the children.

lo que,	}	that of which.
aquello que,		
aquello de quién,	}	those, or the
el que, that, or the one of which.		
los que,	}	ones of
aquellos que,		
aquellos de quienes,	}	which.
el caballo, the horse.		
la yegua, the mare.		
el potro, the colt.		

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

It is he who has sent us here. The gentleman from whom I have received (*recibido*) so much kindness. The men whom we met, and whom we questioned (*preguntámos*). Where is the man of whom you speak? The lady with whom you danced. The ladies to whom you sent (*envió*) the drawings. The man who wrote it. The house that you see (*vé*) there. These are the works that you should read in preference to those which you have selected. The general that conducted the battle, and was killed (*murió*) in it. A man that spends his life in idleness dies miserable. Give it (*dé*) to whom you please. Cervantes, whose works we admire. It is an evil, the cause of which is unknown. The estate, the owner of which I am. They fought (*peleaban*), some with knives, others with swords; all was confusion; one called for (*pedía*) assistance, another sued for mercy. Lope de Vega, whose ardent spirit knew² no¹ bounds. Idleness is a vice we ought to shun (*evitar*). The men we saw this morning. The lad I was speaking of. The idea you referred to (*se refería*). Did you understand (*comprendió*) that Spaniard?—I do not know Spanish, so that I could not (*no he podido*) understand him (*comprenderle*, or *entenderle*). Have you bought the horse of which you spoke to me?—I have no money, so that I could not (*no he podido*) buy it (*comprarlo*). Have you seen the man from whom

I have received a present (*regalo*)?—I have not seen (*visto*) him. Have you seen the fine ship of which I spoke to you?—I have seen it. Has your uncle seen the books of which you spoke to him?—He has seen them. Whom do you see now?—I see the man whose servant (*criado*) has broken my looking-glass (*espejo*).

READING EXERCISE

Of which, of whom, whose. Cuyo, de que, del cual, de quién, á quién

Yo veo al hombre de quién Vd. habla. He comprado el caballo de que Vd. me habló. Veo al hombre cuyo hermano mató (*killed*) mi perro (*dog*). Veo al hombre á quién le mató Vd. el perro (*I see the man whose dog you have killed*). ¿Ve Vd. el niño cuyo padre se marchó ayer? Le veo. ¿Ha visto Vd. á los niños cuyo padre me prestó (*lent me*) un libro? Los he visto. ¿Á quién ha visto Vd.? He visto al comerciante á quién le ha tomado Vd. el almacén. He hablado al hombre cuyo almacén es suyo. Yo tengo *el que* necesito. Él tiene *el que* necesita. ¿Tiene Vd. el libro que necesita? (*which you have need?*) Yo tengo *el que* necesito. ¿Tiene el hombre los clavos *que* necesita? Tiene *los que* necesita. [Tener necesidad de (*to have need of*) necesitar (*to need, to want*).] ¿Á qué hombres ve Vd.? Yo veo á aquellos de que (*or* de quiénes) Vd. me ha hablado. ¿Ve Vd. á los discípulos de que le he hablado? Los veo. ¿Á qué hombres habla Vd. Hablo *á los que* Vd. se ha dirigido (*have applied*). ¿De qué hombres habla Vd.? Hablo de aquellos cuyos niños fueron juiciosos (*studious*) y obedientes. [*De suerte que, de modo que, de manera que* (*so that*).] He perdido mi dinero, de suerte que no puedo pagarle á Vd. Como he perdido mi dinero, no puedo pagarle á Vd. Estoy enfermo, de modo que no puedo salir. El no tiene tiempo, de manera que no puede escribir sus temas (*exercises*). Mi amigo ha perdido su cartera (*portfolio*), de suerte que no podrá pagar por sus zapatos (*shoes*). Yo soy el que ha dicho que él es un

ladron. No quiero hablarle (*I will not speak to him*).
Se hizo soldado (*He has enlisted*). Él no puede darle á
Vd. pan, porque no lo tiene. ¿Cree Vd. á ese hombre?

CONVERSATION

You are very kind.	Vd. es muy bondadoso.
Your kindness is extreme.	Sus procederes de Vd. son muy honrados.
I cannot thank you sufficiently.	No sabré como agradecersele á Vd.
Is that your opinion?	¿Es esa su opinion de Vd.?
Do not question it.	No dude Vd. que lo sea.
You have a great deal of patience.	Tiene Vd. mucha paciencia.
So far my expectations have been deceived.	Hasta ahora mis esperanzas han sido frustradas.
This decided the matter at once.	Esto ha decidido el asunto de una vez.
You will please come to a decision upon this question.	Vd. tendrá a bien decidirse respecto á esta cuestion.
I can say nothing decisive on that point.	No puedo decir nada de positivo con respecto á esto.
This is what I desire.	Esto es lo que deseo.
Please avoid all disputes.	Le suplico á Vd. que evite toda contienda.
His motives are transparent.	Sus motivos bien claros están.
I desire to be of service to you.	Deseo encontrar la oportunidad de serle útil.
We could not possibly do more.	Es imposible hacer mas de lo que hemos hecho.
We have made the necessary preparations.	Hemos hecho los preparativos necesarios.
He has shown himself worthy of confidence.	Se ha mostrado acreedor á la confianza.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

1. *Interrogative* pronouns are so called from their being employed in asking questions. They are relative pronouns used interrogatively. Ex.:

Quién es aquel sujeto?	Who is that person?
Cuál es de Vd.?	Which is yours?
Qué es aquello?	What is that?
Cuya es esta casa?	Whose house is this?

2. **Cúyo**, in interrogative sentences, is frequently replaced by **de quién**, now preferred by the SPANISH ACADEMY; therefore we may with equal propriety say, *De quién es esta casa?* as *Cúya es esta casa?*

3. The same preposition employed in the interrogation is required in the answer, and it must be expressed in Spanish, although sometimes omitted in English. Ex.:

Con quién vino?—Conmigo.
En qué viajaban?—En coche.

Whom did he come with?—Me.
What did they travel *in*?—*In* a coach.

NOTE.—Should the question be asked with **cúyo**, the preposition **de** is required with the answer, in the same manner as if the question were put with **de quién**; as, *Cúyo es este reloj?* De *mi padre* (Whose watch is this? My father's).

Exercise on the Interrogative Pronouns

VOCABULARY

las señoras, the ladies.
el caballero, the gentleman.
el coche, the coach.
la obra, the work.
comprar, to buy.
el sello, the seal.
la alhaja, the jewel.
la hora, the hour.
salvar, to save.
pelear, to fight.
el Turco, the Turk.
el juez, the judge.
escribir, to write.
gana, mind or desire.
contestar, to answer.
beber, to drink.
la alfombra, the carpet.
barrer, to sweep.
el suelo, the floor.
la escopeta, the gun.

el fusil, the rifle.
el grano, the corn.
el pan, the bread.
un franco, a franc.
calentar, to warm.
el caldo, the broth.
el panadero, the baker.
el bosque, the forest, the wood.
el papel, the paper.
¿quién? who?
¿qué? what?
la fotografía, the photograph.
la edad, the age.
el mes, the month.
la escalera, the ladder.
el muchacho, the boy.
el túnel, the tunnel.
el gato, the cat.
el perro, the dog.
el enemigo, the enemy.

el conejo, the rabbit.
 el pichon, the pigeon.
 el niño, the boy.
 la rata, the rat.
 el miedo, the fear.
 el baston, the stick.
 el dueño, the master, the owner.

vender, to sell.
 cuánto, how much.
 nada, nothing, anything.
 el animal, the animal.
 predilecto, pet.
 decir, to say.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

Who are those ladies? Who is that gentleman? Whom did you give it (*lo ha dado Vd.*) to? Which of those carriages do you like best (*le gusta á Vd. mas*)? Which are your works? What say you to that? What shall I take (*llevaré*)? Who is he? What shall we buy (*compraremos*)? What shall we do (*haremos*)? Whose is this seal? Whose jewels are those? What hour is it? What did you do it for (*para que lo hizo Vd.*)? To save her. Whom did he go for?—Me. Whom do they fight against (*contra quién pelean*)?—The Turks. Whose was (*fué*) the decision?—The judge's. Whom do you see now?—I see the man whose servant has broken my looking-glass (*espejo*). Have you seen the fine gun (*escopeta*) of which I spoke to you?—I have seen it. Has your uncle (*tio*) seen the books of which you spoke to him?—He has seen them. Of which children have you spoken?—I have spoken (*hablado*) of those whose parents are learned. Whom have you heard?—I have heard the Spanish captain whose son is my friend. Have you received the money which you have been wanting?—I have received it. Have I the paper of which I have need?—You have it. Have you read (*leído*) the books which we have lent you?—We have read them. To whom have you given some money?—I have given some to those who have been skilful (*háviles*). Which fishes has he eaten (*comido*)?—He has eaten (*ha comido*) those which (*los que*) you do not like (*no le gustan á Vd.*). To whom do you give to (*de*) eat and to (*de*) drink?—To those who are hungry and thirsty

(*á los que tienen hambre y sed*). Did you go out? (*ha salido Vd. or salió Vd.?*)

READING EXERCISE

¿Qué vieron Vds. en la fotografía? Vimos conejos, pichones, y perros. ¿Son esos animales de Vds.? No; no son nuestros. ¿De quién son? Pertenecen á mi amigo el abogado (*barrister*). ¿Quién hizo las escaleras? El carpintero (*carpenter*) las hizo. ¿Quién hizo los túneles? Los trabajadores (*labourers*) los hicieron. ¿Tienen las ratas miedo de los perros? Sí, los gatos y los perros son sus enemigos. ¿Tiene Vd. animales predilectos? Sí, tengo algunos. ¿Cuál es mi sombrero? ¿Es el baston de Vd.? ¿Cuál es pues? ¿Cuál es la más hermosa (*beautiful*) de aquellas señoritas? ¿De cuáles hablan Vds.? Hemos hablado de esto y de aquello. ¿Son esos sus hermanos de Vd.? No, señor, estos son mis primos, pero aquellos son mis hermanos. ¿Quién viene? ¿Cuál tengo? ¿Qué tenemos? ¿Cuyos son esos caballos? ¿De quién son esas casas? ¿Con quién se casa ella? (*Is she getting married?*) Con el marques. ¿En que gasta su dinero? En nada. ¿De que murió el niño? De calentura (*fever*). ¿Á como estamos hoy? (*What day of the month is to-day?*) Cuándo (*when*) no podemos lograr (*to obtain*) lo que deseamos (*what we desire*), debemos contentarnos (*content ourselves*) con lo que tenemos. La dicha (*the said*) espada (*sword*) cortaba (*cut*) como una navaja (*razor*), y no habia armadura (*armour*) (por fuerte y encantada que fuese) (*however strong and powerfully enchanted it might be*) que se le parase delante (*that could withstand its edge*). ¿Quién barre el suelo? La criada lo barre. ¿De quién es este fusil? Del soldado. ¿Le gusta á Vd. el caldo? Sí, muchísimo. ¿Es este su panadero de Vd.? Sí, lo es. ¿Quién ha comprado la alfombra? Mi madre la compró ayer en Lóndres. ¿Es este vino bueno? Sí, lo es. ¿Quién ha comprado el grano? Papá lo ha comprado. ¿De quién es esta alhaja? Es de mamá.

CONVERSATION

That is an extraordinary case with us.

Permit me to express to you my gratitude.

He has much experience in business.

I did not expect this answer.

I hope to bring this business to a close.

We are quite blameless in the matter.

A dispute of this nature ought to be easily settled.

I told him in plain words.

Your remark is quite out of place.

We shall procure the needful.

It is a singular coincidence.

You will have to suffer the consequences following.

It is impossible to reason with him.

We hope you will reconsider your decision.

We have every reason to be content.

This post is by no means a sinecure.

He must have strong reasons for doing so.

Para nosotros ese es un caso extraordinario.

Permitame Vd. que le espere mi agradecimiento.

Tiene mucha experiencia en los negocios.

No esperaba esta respuesta.

Espero poder concluir esto asunto.

No tenemos culpa alguna en el asunto.

Una disputa de esta naturaleza debía ser fácil de arreglar.

Le dije claramente.

Su observación de Vd. no tiene razón alguna.

Haremos lo necesario.

Es una coincidencia rara.

Tendrá Vd. que sufrir las consecuencias de lo que suceda.

Es imposible el discutir con él.

Esperamos que Vd. vuelva á meditar su decisión.

Tenemos todos los motivos para estar contentos.

Este puesto no es ningun beneficio simple.

El debe tener poderosos motivos para hacerlo.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. These are so called because they are employed in an indefinite manner with regard to the object to which they refer. The following is a list of words employed as indefinite pronouns. Most of them, when used with nouns, are more properly adjectives. They do not vary their terminations on account of case, but admit the same

prepositions as all other pronouns do in the several cases:—

alguno, -a, álguien,	{ some, anyone, somebody, any-body.
algo, alguna cosa,	something, anything.
uno,	one, a person.
unos,	some, some persons.
uno á otro,	one another, each other.
uno ú otro,	either, one or the other.
uno y otro,	one and the other.
cada,	each, every.
cada uno, cada cual,	each, every one.
otro,	another, other.
ámbos,	both.
todo,	all, everything.
todos,	everyone, everybody.
poco,	little.
pocos,	few.
unos pocos, }	
unos cuantos, }	a few.
mucho,	much.
muchos,	many.
varios,	several.
cualquiera,	whichever, any.
cualquiera cosa,	whatever.
quienquiera,	whosoever.
tal,	such.
fulano,	such a person.
fulano y zutano,	such and such a person.
cuanto,	how much.
cuantos,	how many.
ninguno, nadie,	none, no one, nobody.
nada,	nothing.
ni uno ni otro,	neither.

2. These indefinites are subject to a variation of number and gender, except *álguien*, *algo*, *cada*, *nadie*, and *nada*, which are always used in the *singular* number, and are common to *both* genders. *Tal* and its plural, *tales*, are common to both genders; *ámbos* and *entrámbos* are made to agree in *gender* with the nouns to which they refer. *Cualquiera* forms its plural by *cualesquiera*, and

is common to both genders. *Quienquiera* is seldom used in the plural number, which is *quienesquiera*, but it is common to both genders. *Cualquiera*, *cualquiera cosa*, and *quienquiera* require *que* after them, when followed by a verb in the *subjunctive*. *Algúien*, *quienquiera*, *fulano*, *zutano*, and *nadie* refer to persons only; *algo* and *nada* to things only; and all the rest to both. The following are examples of the use of each of the *indefinite* pronouns.

Alguno, álguien.

Alguno está ahí.	Somebody, or someone, is there.
Algunos lo dicen.	Some say so.
¿ Lo has visto álguien, or alguno?	Has anyone, or anybody, seen it?
¿ Ha oído Vd. algo?	Have you heard anything?

NOTE 1.—When *someone* or *anyone* is followed by *of*, we must use **alguno** in the translation, and not **álguien**; as, *Si alguno de ellos viniere* (If any of them should come); *Alguno de ellos lo opuso* (Someone of them opposed it).

NOTE 2.—*Anyone* or *anybody*, not used interrogatively, is translated **cualquiera**; as, *Cualquiera lo creería* (Anyone, or anybody, would believe it).

Algo, alguna cosa

Tengo algo, or alguna cosa que decirle.	I have <i>something</i> to tell you.
¿ Tiene algo para mí?	Has he <i>anything</i> for me?
Sí, algo tiene.	Yes, he has <i>something</i> .

NOTE 1.—*Anything*, not used interrogatively, is translated **cualquiera cosa**; as, *Cualquiera cosa que se ofrezca* (Anything that may offer).

NOTE 2.—When **algo** is employed as a noun, and followed by an adjective, the latter is preceded by the preposition **de**; and if followed by an infinitive, *que* is required instead of **de**; as, *¿ Trae algo de bueno?* (Does he bring anything good?) *Hay algo que temer en esto* (There is something to fear in that). (See also **Nada**.)

Uno, unos

Qué puede hacer uno en tal caso?	What can <i>one</i> (or a person) do in such a case?
Unos dicen que sí; unos dicen que no.	<i>Some</i> say yes; <i>some</i> say no.
Deme Vd. <i>unas</i> almendras; <i>unas</i> pasas.	Give me <i>a few</i> almonds; <i>a few</i> raisins.

NOTE.—*One* or *ones*, employed in English in place of a noun after an adjective, is not translated into Spanish. Ex.: There is a dollar; see if it is a good one (*Allí está un peso; vea Vd. si es bueno*); Have you any kid gloves? Yes, sir, very excellent ones (*¿Tiene Vd. guantes de cabritilla? Sí, Señor, muy excelentes*).

Uno á otro, uno ú otro, uno y otro

Se aman uno á otro.	They love <i>one another</i> or <i>each other</i> .
Que venga uno ú otro.	Let <i>one</i> or <i>the other</i> come.
Que uno y otro decidan.	Let <i>one and the other</i> decide.
Unos y otros han de sufrir.	The <i>ones and the others</i> must suffer.

Cada, cada uno, cada cual

When *each* or *every* is immediately followed by a noun, *cada* must be used in the translation. Ex.:

Cada país tiene sus costumbres.	<i>Every country</i> has its customs.
Dí un duro por cada tomo.	I gave a dollar for <i>each volume</i> .

When *each* or *every* is not followed by a noun, it is translated *cada uno* or *cada cual*. Ex.:

Cada uno me costó una libra.	<i>Each</i> cost me a pound.
Cada cual sabe lo que le duele.	<i>Everyone</i> knows what troubles him.

Otro, otros

Deme Vd. otro.	Give me <i>another</i> .
Otros han hecho lo mismo.	<i>Others</i> have done the same.
Tengo otras cosas que hacer.	I have <i>other</i> things to do.

NOTE.—*Another's*, and *other people's*, used in a vague sense, are sometimes translated *ajeno*; as, *No codicies el bien ajeno* (Do not covet another's wealth); *Debemos*

respetar lo ajeno (We must respect what belongs to other people, or what is other people's).

Ámbos, or sometimes entrámbos

Ámbos se encapricharon de ella.	<i>Both</i> took a fancy to her.
Ámbas murieron.	They <i>both</i> died.
Los ví á entrámbos.	I saw them <i>both</i> .

NOTE.—*Both*, employed in English before two nouns, pronouns, or adjectives, is not translated. Ex.: She is both rich and handsome (*Ella es rica y hermosa*). I begged both him and her to remain (*Rogué á él y á ella que se quedasen*).

Todo, todos

Todo tiene su fin.	<i>Everything</i> has its end.
Todos lo saben.	<i>All</i> know it, or <i>everybody</i> knows it.
Toda la ciudad salió a recibirle.	<i>All</i> the town went out to receive him.

Poco, pocos

Poco bastará.	<i>A little</i> will suffice.
Á pocos les pesa.	<i>Few</i> regret it.
Tomaré unos pocos, or unos cuantos.	I will take <i>a few</i> .

NOTE.—*But little* and *but few* are translated *poquísimo* and *poquísimos*; as, I have but little to do (*Tengo poquísimo que hacer*); They have but few left (*Les queda poquísimos*).

Mucho, muchos

No me dé Vd. mucho.	Do not give me <i>much</i> .
Muchos lo toleran.	<i>Many</i> tolerate it.

NOTE.—*A great many* is translated *muchísimo*; and *a great deal*, *muchísimo*; as, I have a great many complaints to make to you (*Tengo muchísimas quejas que hacerle*); You have given me a great deal (*Me ha dado Vd. muchísimo*).

Varios

Varios se acordaron de él.	<i>Several</i> remembered him.
Lo he visto varias veces.	I have seen it <i>several</i> times.

Cualquiera, cualesquiera

Cualquiera que Vd. guste.	<i>Whichever</i> or <i>whosoever</i> you please.
Cualesquiera or cualquiera personas que se atreviesen.	<i>Whatever</i> persons should venture.
Cualquiera de ellos servirá.	<i>Either</i> , or <i>any</i> , of them will do.

Cualquiera cosa

Cualquiera cosa que digan.	<i>Whatever</i> they may say.
Cualesquiera cosas que compren.	<i>Whatever</i> things they may buy.
Cualquiera cosa le basta.	<i>Anything</i> will do for him.

NOTE 1. — *Whatever*, meaning *all what*, or *all that which*, is translated *todo lo que*; as, *Haré todo lo que Vd. me mande* (I will do whatever you desire me).

NOTE 2.—Some writers drop the final vowel of **cualquiera** before a noun masculine; as, *cualquier hombre*; but the retention or omission of it is matter of taste.

Quienquiera

Quienquiera que sea.	<i>Whoever</i> or <i>whosoever</i> he may be.
De quienquiera que Vd. hable.	Of <i>whomsoever</i> you may speak.

Tal, tales

Tal hombre; tal mujer.	<i>Such</i> a man; <i>such</i> a woman.
Tales cosas; tales papeles.	<i>Such</i> things; <i>such</i> papers.

Fulano, fulano y zutano

Quién es el Señor fulano ?	Who is Mr. <i>Such-a-one</i> ?
Vd. dijo que fulano y zutano ya lo sabían.	You said that <i>such</i> and <i>such-a-one</i> already knew it.

Cuanto, cuantos

Cuánto quiere Vd.?	<i>How much</i> do you want?
No sé cuantos .	I don't know <i>how many</i> .

Ninguno, nadie

Ninguna persona, ninguno , or nadie lo sabe.	No <i>person</i> , <i>nobody</i> , or <i>no one</i> knows it.
Ningunos esfuerzos suyos.	<i>No</i> efforts of his.
No se lo dé Vd. á nadie , or á ninguno .	Do not give it to <i>anybody</i> .
Nadie , or ninguno volvió.	<i>None</i> , or <i>no one</i> returned.

NOTE 1.—**Ninguno** relates to persons and things; but **nadie** to persons only.

NOTE 2.—When *none* or *no one* is followed by *of*, we must employ **ninguno** in the translation, and not **nadie**; as, *Ninguno de esos soldados* (None of those soldiers); *Ninguno de los que Vd. conoce* (No one of those you know).

Nada

No traje **nada**, or **nada** traje consigo.
No vale **nada**.

He did *not* bring *anything*, or he brought *nothing* with him.
It is worth *nothing*.

NOTE.—When **nada** is employed as a noun and followed by an adjective, the latter is preceded by the preposition **de**; and if followed by an infinitive, **que** is required instead of **de** (as we have seen in the case with **algo**); as, *No traen nada de nuevo* (They bring nothing new); *No falta nada que hacer* (There is nothing wanting to be done).

Ni uno, ni otro

Ni uno ni otro me gusta.

I do *not* like *either*; or I like *neither*.

Ni unos ni otros me acomodan.

Neither the ones nor the others suit me.

Ni las unas ni las otras saben lo que hacen.

Neither do the ones nor the others know what they are about.

Exercise on the Indefinite Pronouns

VOCABULARY

esperando, waiting.
álguien, alguno, somebody.
hoy, to-day.
mañana, to-morrow.
ignorar, to ignore.
cierto, certain.
la nuez, the walnut.
comunicar, to communicate.
escuchar, to listen.
párrafo, paragraph.
queja, complaint.
obrado, acted.
diferentemente, differently.

aplaudieron, applauded.
las pasas, the raisins.
necesitar, to require.
feliz, happy.
falso, false.
la colocación, the situation.
suceder, to happen.
la acción, the action.
indigno, unworthy.
presenciar, to witness.
la promesa, the promise.
tentar, to tempt.
impedir, to hinder.

el deber, the duty.
 concluir, to finish.
 tarea, task.
 el mérito, the merit.
 el vapor, the steamer.
 el muelle, the quay, wharf.
 algunos, some.
 reír, to laugh.
 llorar, to cry.
 despedirse, to say goodbye.
 anoche, last night.
 nostalgia, homesickness.
 el pariente, the relative.
 nació, he was born.
 fluidez, fluently.
 salario, salary.
 conocer, to know.
 el idioma, the language.
 la mano, the hand.
 aplaudir, to applaud.

conversar, to converse, to talk.
 todavía, yet.
 revisar, to revise.
 la idea, the idea.
 desaparecer, to disappear.
 la opinión, the opinion.
 el parecer, the opinion.
 cuanto, how much.
 until, till, hasta.
 ninguno or nadie, no person, no body or no one.
 quienquiera, whoever or whosoever.
 tal, such.
 nueces, walnuts.
 cualquiera, whichever, whichever.
 cualesquiera or cualquiera, whatever.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

Let someone follow him. I am waiting for somebody. Some will go (*irán*) to-day, and some to-morrow. If anybody should consent. Can anyone be ignorant of it (*ignorarlo*)? Have¹ you³ bought (*comprado*)² anything for me? One is not certain (*no está cierto*) of living until to-morrow. Some will (*quieren*)² not¹. Take a few walnuts. They communicate their ideas to one another. One or the other must go (*debe ir*). Both listened (*ambos escucharon*). We revised each paragraph. Each came with her own complaint. Another (person) would have acted differently. Other people do the same. All was sold. Every one applauded him. Give me a little. Few are happy. I eat a few of those raisins. We do not require much to be happy. Many disappeared. Many have been exalted (*se han alzado*) many times with the name of great, by the false opinions of the vulgar (*vulgo*). There were (*había*) several of his opinion (*parecer*). Give me whichever you please. Either of them will do (*servirá*).

Whatever situation he may hold. Whatever might happen (*suceda*). Whoever he may be (*sea*). I never saw (*jamás vi*) such a thing. Such actions are unworthy of him. Such a one (*fulano y zutano*) knew (*supo*) it. Such and such a one (*un tal fulano*) witnessed it. How much shall I bring (*traeré*)? How many would rejoice at it! There is not (*no hay*) any of them there (*allí*). No promises could (*podieron*) tempt him. No one knows him. Nothing should hinder (*debía impedir*) us from doing (*hacer*) our duty. Neither has finished his task. Neither of these comedies (*comedias*) has much merit (*mérito*).

READING EXERCISE

Con que (*Then*) Rafael se ha ido, ¿no es así? Sí; salió en el vapor "Orisa" con rumbo (*bound*) para Valparaíso. ¿No le causó mucha pesadumbre el marcharse? Sí, mucha de veras, por tenerse que separar de sus padres que mucho quiere. ¿Se despidió de Vds.? Sí, se despidió anoche. ¿Cree Vd. que tendrá buen éxito? Así lo espero. ¿Cuándo regresará él? Espera regresar el año que entra. ¿Tiene parientes en la América del Sur? No; pero tiene muchos amigos. ¿Es él taquígrafo (*stenographer*)? No; es corresponsal y tenedor de libros (*book-keeper*). Sin duda será rico algún día. No lo extrañaría (*I should not wonder*). ¿Descuida él jamás su trabajo? Nunca. Es puntual y honrado. ¿Es su padre de él médico ó abogado? No señor, no es ni lo uno ni lo otro. Es profesor de lenguas. ¿Que le dijo Vd. cuando se separaron? "¡Que la bendición que enriquece y que no da pesadumbre sea suya!" (" *May the blessing that maketh rich and addeth no sorrow be yours!*")

Un pariente mío, cuando se le preguntaba, si tenía mucho dinero, contestó: Si se gana mucho, mucho se tiene; no ganando nada, nada hay. Ni uno ni otro me gusta. Ni unos ni otros me acomodan (*Neither the ones nor the others suit me*). Ni las unas ni las otras saben

(*know*) lo que dicen. Ambos se encapricharon de ella (*Both took a fancy to her*). Ambos murieron (*They both died*). Los ví á entrámbos (*I saw them both*). Todo tiene su fin (*end*). Todos lo saben. Que venga uno ú otro (*Let one or the other come*). Que uno y otro decidan. Unos y otros han de sufrir. Necesito algún dinero y algunas letras de cambio (*bills of exchange*).

CONVERSATION

I am in want of some money to-morrow.

Somehow or other the lots got mixed.

You will have to pay him something for his trouble.

This is something new.

It will have to be done sometime.

I go there sometimes.

I have to buy it somewhere else.

He went there in spite of me.

We make you another proposal.

There have been faults on both sides.

Please send samples of both sorts.

We have purchased both.

I presume you are aware of the difficulty.

I am pretty sure it was so.

It is all one to us which course you take.

I for one will not consent.

Taking one with another.

This is a very one-sided story.

This is a pretty state of affairs!

Me harán falta fondos mañana.

De un modo ú otro se mezclaron los lotes.

Le será á Vd. preciso pagarle algo por su trabajo.

Esto es cosa nueva.

Habrà que hacerlo una vez.

Voy allá algunas veces.

Tengo que comprarlo en otra parte.

Fué allá á pesar mio.

Sometemos á Vd. otra propuesta.

Hay culpa de una y otra parte.

Sírvase enviar muestras de ámbas clases.

Hemos comprado ámbos.

Presumo que Vd. conoce la dificultad.

No abrigo muchas dudas de que fuese así.

Nos es indiferente que partido Vd. adopta.

Yo por lo ménos no consentiré en ello.

Promediando (produciendo) uno con otro.

Esta es una historia muy parcial.

¡ En buena nos hemos metido!

VERBS

CONJUGATION AND SYNTAX OF VERBS

1. There are four kinds of verbs to be considered—namely, *auxiliary*, *active*, *passive*, and *neuter*.

2. The *auxiliary* verbs in Spanish are *haber*, to have; and *ser* and *estar*, to be. They are called auxiliary from their peculiar office in assisting to form the compound tenses of all other verbs in general.

3. A verb is called *active* when its action passes from one person or thing to another; for which reason it is also called *transitive*; thus, *to strike*, *to hate*, *to write*, *to see*, &c., are *active* verbs, because the action described by them may pass over to a person or thing acted upon, called the *object* of the verb. For instance, *William struck Henry*; *They hate vice*; in which examples the noun *William* and the pronoun *they* are the agents or nominatives of the verbs *to strike* and *to hate*, respectively; and the nouns *Henry* and *vice*, being the person and thing acted upon, or affected by the verbs, are the *objects* of these verbs.

4. *Active* verbs become *reflective* when their agent and object are but one person or thing; that is, when the agent acts upon himself. In the examples *I see myself*, *He loves himself*, the action described by each verb does not affect any other object besides its agent. When there is a *reciprocity* of action between two or more persons or things, the verb denoting the action is called a *reciprocal* verb. For instance, *We see each other*; *They love one another*.

5. A verb is called *passive* (or in the *passive voice*) when it describes the state of a person or thing *suffering* from, or *enduring*, an action done by another person or thing. All active verbs, and a few neuter verbs, become passive when employed with the auxiliary *to be*. Thus, *Henry was beaten by William*; *Vice is abhorred by the virtuous*.

Here we see that the verbs *to be beaten* and *to be abhorred* express a *suffering*, or a *passiveness*, on which account they are called *passive* verbs.

6. A *neuter* verb is neither active nor passive. By a neuter verb something is represented as *existing* or *being*, denoting only the state of the subject of the verb. The action of the verb does not pass over to any other person or thing; for which reason neuter verbs may also be called *intransitive*. *To live, to sleep, to sit, to stand*, are *neuter* verbs, because they merely denote the various states of being of their agents. For the same reason, *to be*, besides being an auxiliary, is likewise a neuter verb. To distinguish a neuter from an active verb, we have only to put a noun after it, and if it makes sense with the noun it is active; if it does not, it is neuter.

Although neuter verbs are not called active, still there are some that denote a visible action, such as, *to go, to come, to run*, and many others; but the actions denoted *by them* are not *transitive*, since they remain with their agents; as, *the man walks, the horse runs, the boy swims, &c.* Verbs of this kind are often called *active intransitive*.

7. There are some verbs which, according to the manner in which they are employed, are sometimes *active*, and at others *neuter*. Thus, *to run* is *active*, when we say *To run a race*, because the action of the verb passes on to the object *race*; but it is neuter in *He runs fast*, because the action of the verb remains with its agent *He*, and admits of no objective case after it.

8. Verbs are again subdivided into *regular, irregular, impersonal, and defective*.

9. *Regular* verbs are all those that are conjugated throughout every mood and tense according to certain models which are considered standards for all regular verbs. In the conjugations of regular verbs in this grammar, *hablar, to speak; temer, to fear; and sufrir, to suffer*, are given as models for conjugating all the regular verbs in the Spanish language.

10. *Irregular* verbs are those that deviate in some instances from the general standard. In this book are given lists of all the irregular verbs in the Spanish language, exhibiting the irregularities of each.

11. *Impersonal* verbs are those that are employed in the *third* person only of every tense; thus, *to rain*, *to thunder*, *to dawn*, and many others, are *impersonal* verbs. They are so called because in their employment there appears no person or thing as subject or acting as agent; for when we say, *it rains*, *it thunders*, &c., we do not express *who* or *what* it is that *rains* or *thunders*. See the conjugation of *Impersonal* Verbs.

12. *Defective* verbs are such as are only used in certain tenses, and with certain persons, because their peculiar meaning does not admit them to be employed with every tense and person. See *Defective* Verbs.

13. We have now four more things connected with verbs to be considered—namely, the *conjugations*, the *moods*, the *tenses*, and the *person* and *number*.

THE CONJUGATIONS

14. *Mood* or *mode*, which signifies *manner*, expresses the attention of the mind concerning the manner in which we use the verb. There are four moods—namely, the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, and the *imperative*.

15. The *infinitive*, which may be called the root form of the verb, represents the action, or the state of being, in a general and unlimited manner, without any reference to time, number, or person; thus, the verbs *hablar*, *temer*, and *sufrir* (to speak, to fear, and to suffer) do not in these forms denote when, nor in what manner, the actions represented by them take place, nor who act as their agents: to determine all which, a verb in the infinitive mood must have an antecedent verb, or, as it is sometimes called, a governing verb; as, *Voy á hablar* (I am going to speak). *No pude venir* (I could not come). *Nos harán sufrir* (They

will make us suffer). In these examples it is also seen that the infinitive in both languages is sometimes preceded by a preposition and sometimes not. This is a subject that will be treated of in the Government of Verbs.

16. The Spanish infinitive frequently partakes of the nature of a noun, and becomes a nominative or an objective case. The greater number of infinitives may be thus employed by prefixing the definite article to them. Ex.:

El mucho estudiar á veces perjudica á la salud.	Too much study sometimes injures the health.
Al salir de casa encontré á mi amigo.	On going out of the house I met my friend.

Sometimes, chiefly at the beginning of a sentence, the infinitive is employed as a subordinate verb, and is equivalent to a verb in the subjunctive mood preceded by the conjunction *si*, if. Ex.:

Á saber yo que hubiera venido, no habría salido.	If I had known that he would have come, I would not have gone out.
---	--

Which is equivalent to *si yo hubiera sabido que*, &c.

17. The *indicative* mood is so called because it simply *indicates* or points out the action, or state of being, in a positive and unconditional manner, depending on no other verb to determine its signification. Ex.:

Yo confío; vosotros procedéis; ellos prohiben.	I trust; you proceed; they prohibit.
--	--------------------------------------

18. It does not always occur that the same mood and tense are employed in both languages. It frequently happens that when one particular mood or tense is employed in English, a different one is required in Spanish. This matter will be fully explained later.

19. The *subjunctive* mood makes no complete sense of itself, as the indicative does; but it represents the action, or state of being, under some *doubt*, *condition*, or *uncertainty*, being dependent for its signification on, or subordinate to,

some other verb (expressed or understood) to which it is subjoined by means of a conjunction. A verb in the subjunctive mood, therefore, depends on some circumstance denoted by the antecedent verb to render its signification complete. Ex.:

Leería **si** tuviera tiempo.

I would read *if I had* time.

Temo **que** riñan.

I fear *that they may* quarrel.

Deseaba **que** hubiese triunfado.

I wished *that he had* triumphed.

Lo haré **con tal que** consienta.

I will do it *provided he consent*.

20. The conjunction **que** (that), which governs the verb in the subjunctive mood, may, by way of ellipsis, be suppressed in both languages, but less often in Spanish than in English; as, *Ojalá (que) haga buen tiempo mañana* (I hope *(that)* it may be fine to-morrow). *Deseaba (que) volviese Vd. pronto* (I wished *(that)* you might soon return).

21. It is not every conjunction that governs the subjunctive mood; for instance, some govern the infinitive, which are those that are followed by the preposition **de**; such as, **á fin de**, in order to; **por miedo de**, for fear of, &c. The following may govern the indicative when they do not express doubt or uncertainty—namely, **como**, as; **porque**, because; **pues que**, since; **miéntras**, whilst; **aunque**, though, &c. But all those govern the subjunctive that denote *doubt, wish, supposition, or uncertainty*; as, **á ménos que**, unless; **á fin que**, in order that; **bien que**, **aunque**, although; **sea que**, whether; **no obstante que**, notwithstanding; **si**, if, whether; **en caso que**, in case that; **ántes que**, before; **hasta que**, until; **cuando**, when; **cuando quiera que**, whenever; **á condición que**, on condition that, providing; **para que**, in order that; **sin que**, without, unless; **por miedo que**, for fear that; **dado que**, granted; **supuesto que**, provided, &c. The following examples will show how the same conjunction governs the verb, sometimes in the indicative and sometimes in the subjunctive, according to the sense in which it is used:

Aunque le conozco no le hablo.

Although I know him, I do not speak to him.

No le hablaría aunque le conociera.

I would not speak to him, though I knew him.

Creo que viene cada día.

I believe that he comes every day.

Creo que venga esta noche.

I think that he may come to-night.

Si engaña, no es mi culpa.

If he deceives, it is not my fault.

Si le engañare, Vd. tendrá la culpa.

If he should deceive you, it will be your fault.

By these examples it will be seen that when we speak *positively* the indicative is employed; but whenever there exists the least indication of *doubt* in our expressions, the subjunctive must be used.

22. In the natural construction of language that member of the sentence containing the antecedent verb precedes the one with the subordinate verb, but they may exchange situations for the sake of variety or energy; as, *Con tal que Vd. consienta, lo haré* (Provided you consent, I will do it). For the manner of employing the subjunctive mood, see Section on verbs and moods, paragraphs 22 to 28; and Lesson 28, paragraph 8, from Observations 5th to 9th.

23. The *imperative* mood is used for *commanding* or *entreating*. Ex.:

Acuérdate de tu deber.

Remember thy duty.

Elija Vd. el que guste.

Choose which you like.

Suplico á Vd. me lo explique.

I beseech you to explain it to me.

When the imperative mood is employed in English in a *negative* sense, the present tense of the subjunctive mood, preceded by a negative particle, is used in Spanish instead. Ex.:

No le compadezcas.

Do not (thou) pity him.

No me ofendas.

Do not (you) offend me.

Jamas lisonjees á nadie.

Never (do thou) flatter anyone.

This deviation is only striking in the second person singular and plural, since in the other persons the verb is spelled alike in the imperative and the present of the subjunctive; as *exija*, that he may exact, or, let him

exact; **imploremos**, that we may implore, or, let us implore; **cometan**, that they may commit, or, let them commit.

THE TENSES

24. Tense signifies *time*, and as all actions and states of existence must necessarily be limited to time, they are said to be either in the *present*, the *past*, or the *future* tense. These are the three grand divisions of time. The present tense denotes that the action, or the state of being, represented by the verb is taking place, or existing at the time of expressing it; as, *I write, you explain, he sleeps*. In the *past* tense the action, or state of being, is represented as having taken place, or to have already commenced; as, *I wrote, you explained, he slept*. And in the future tense the action, or state of being, is represented as one that is to take place or exist at a time which is yet to come; as, *I shall write, you will explain, they will sleep*.

25. Each of these three grand divisions of time has in various languages been subdivided, in order to denote the time of being, or of action, with greater minuteness and precision. These subdivisions of time are what are called the *compound tenses*. They are so called because, to express them, more than one word is required in the English and Spanish languages; for instance, *I have written* is the *compound* of the *present* tense of the verb *to write*; *you had explained* is the *compound* of the *past* tense of the verb *to explain*; and *he will have slept* is the *compound* of the *future* tense of the verb *to sleep*. We here see that each of these tenses is formed by compounding the auxiliary *to have* with the *past participle* of the verb denoting the action, or the state of being. Latin verbs admit of such great variety of inflections, that each of their tenses is formed by a single word, and to each is given a different name. Many of the writers of modern grammars have adopted Latin names in a variety of forms to designate the several tenses; but the foregoing disposition of them

has been considered more simple and comprehensive. The following are the names of tenses of Latin origin that are most generally adopted: *Present*, I write. *Preterimperfect*, or *perfect indefinite*, I wrote. *Preterperfect*, or *perfect definite*, I have written. *Preterpluperfect*, I had written. *Future imperfect*, I shall write. *Future perfect*, I shall have written.

PERSON AND NUMBER

26. Every verb has at least one noun or pronoun for its agent or nominative. Sometimes, however, the nominative may not be expressed, but then it is always understood; and this suppression of the nominative occurs with much more frequency in Spanish than in English, especially as regards pronouns, as we have already pointed out. See page 108.

27. There are three persons and two numbers. *I read*, *thou singest*, *the man walks*, are the first, second, and third persons singular; and *we read*, *you sing*, and *the men walk*, are the first, second, and third persons plural number.

Reading Exercise

Verb Drill

Me he caído (*fell*) de lo alto (*top*) del árbol; pero no me he hecho mucho daño (*harm*). El ladrón fué cogido (*caught*), pero quedará exento (*will escape*) con algunos meses de prisión. Á fuerza de trabajo (*by dint of labour*). Á fuerza de llorar (*by too much weeping*). ¿Trabaja Vd.? Sí señor, soy dependiente (*clerk*). ¿Tenía Inés frío? Estaba casi helada (*nearly frozen*). Esos hombres trabajan á porfía (uno de otro) (*These men are trying to rival each other*). Quisiera que esa casa fuese mia. He meditado (*I thought*) mucho tiempo sobre este negocio. ¿Por qué no se puso Vd. su sobretodo? Lo dejé en la escuela ayer; se me olvidó. El profesor dice que soy descuidado (*careless*). Le hemos echado de ménos (*We have missed you*).

¿Ha estado fuera? (*Have you been away?*) ¿Ama Vd. á su patria? (*Do you love your country?*) Amo mi bandera (*flag*) más que á mi vida (*life*). Parece que el cajero del banco tal y tal (*so and so*) desapareció, llevándose lo que halló en la caja. ¿No lo conocía Vd.? Conozco á su hermano, pero no le conocí á el mismo. El rayo cayó en el buque (*The lightning struck the ship*). ¿Quién es el director de este banco? No sé como se llama; es francés. No podía contenerme de risa (*I could not help laughing*). Los niños y los locos dicen la verdad (*Children and fools tell the truth*). La Inglaterra es un hermoso país. La Italia es el jardín de la Europa. El perro es el amigo y compañero del hombre. España produce vino, naranjas (*oranges*), limones, aceitunas (*olives*) y toda clase de frutos. Ese hombre no sabe dar valor á sus talentos (*That man does not know how to make the most of his talents*). No tengo mucho interés en ir esta noche á la comedia. Haré cuanto esté en mi poder para granjearme su aprecio de Vd.

CONVERSATION

He is going the wrong way about it.	Procede de un modo desacertado.
We have it on good authority.	Lo tenemos de buena autoridad.
There is a considerable difference between them.	Hay una diferencia notable entre ámbos.
This is what I claim.	He aquí lo que reclamo.
He has an excellent business.	Tiene un negocio excelente.
I tried in vain to fathom it.	Traté en vano de sondearlo.
It would look suspicious were I to ask him.	Parecería sospechoso si yo se lo fuese á preguntar.
I am sorry that a misunderstanding should have occurred.	Siento que haya sucedido una mala inteligencia.
He has a moderate income.	Tiene rentas moderadas.
This is nothing to me.	Esto no me da ni frío ni calor.
I noticed nothing wrong.	No noté que hubiese nada mal.
Your opponent denies the fact.	Su contrario de Vd. niega el hecho.
We will not oppose your wishes and intentions.	No nos oponemos á sus deseos é intenciones de Vd.
The result was quite the opposite to what I expected.	El resultado era todo lo contrario del que esperaba.

It has all come to nothing.	Ha fracasado.
I noticed he was rather embarrassed.	Eché de ver que estaba algo apurado.
He partly consented to my proposal.	Aceptó en parte mi proposición.
This has already caused a certain stir.	Esto ha causado ya alguna animación.
He is unworthy of such kind treatment.	Es indigno de que le traten tan bien.
A verbal agreement is of no value.	Una promesa verbal no tiene valor.

USE OF THE TENSES

PRESENT TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD

1. This tense expresses the existing state of things; what is being done or taking place at the present time; and what exists permanently. All present customs, habits, and professions of individuals and nations are also expressed by the tense. Ex.:

El gobierno de los Estados Unidos es democrático.	The government of the United States is democratic.
Yo escribo y ella dibuja .	I write and she draws .
La luna acompaña á la tierra.	The moon accompanies the earth.
Los Europeos cultivan las ciencias.	The Europeans cultivate the sciences.
Ella se levanta tarde.	She risés late.
El es coronel.	He is a colonel.

2. This tense is sometimes formed with the verb **estar**, to be, and the present participle of the verb denoting the action, and the same idiom is common in English, the compound tense having greater force than the simple. Ex.:

Estoy escribiendo.	I am writing.
Están leyendo.	They are reading.

The same construction is likewise made use of to describe any action as in a present progressive state, though, perhaps, not actually in operation at the precise moment of naming it. Ex.:

Mi amigo **está** viajando.
Estoy componiendo una obra.

My friend *is* travelling.
I am getting up a work.

3. In English there are three ways of forming the present tense; for instance, *I think, I am thinking, I do think*; the first and second forms are likewise used in Spanish, as we have just seen; but the third, with the auxiliary *do*, the employment of which adds greater energy to the affirmative, does not admit of a literal translation into Spanish; instead, the verb is sometimes modified by an adverb. Ex.:

Canta muy bien **de veras**.
Sí, lo creo.

She *does* sing very well.
I do believe it.

4. When the auxiliary *do* is employed in English as a substitute for another verb already used, if the verb and auxiliary are in the same number and person, the affirmative particle **sí** or the negative **no** is used instead in Spanish; but if the English verb and auxiliary are in different persons and numbers, the verb in Spanish is repeated, each verb agreeing in number and person with its own agent. Ex.:

Él no se **queja**, pero ella **sí**.

He does not *complain*, but she *does*.

Ella **necesita** dinero, per él **no**.

She *wants* money, but he *does* not.

Vd. no le **conoce**, pero nosotros
le **conocemos**.

You do not *know* him, but we *do*.

Yo le **perdono**, y ellos tambien le
perdonan.

I pardon him, and so *do* they.

The like is observed with *can, shall, will*, and all other verbs employed in English as auxiliaries. See paragraphs 18 and 30 of this Section.

Observe that when *to do* is employed as a principal verb and not as an auxiliary, it is translated by the verb **hacer**; as, Haré *lo que Vd. me manda hacer* (I will *do* what you order me to *do*).

For the auxiliary *do*, employed as the sign of negative •

and interrogative sentences, see paragraphs on verbs used negatively and interrogatively, pages 218 and 219.

5. There is what is called the *historical present tense*, by which historians, in order to give more animation to their descriptions, represent past events in the present form of the verb; as, *Apénas dada la órden, se avanza la caballería, ataca al enemigo, que presto queda completamente derrotado* (The order was scarcely given, when the cavalry advances, attacks the enemy, who soon remains completely routed).

6. The present tense is sometimes used to express a future movement, to the performance of which the mind has already been made up; as, *Nosotros nos vamos mañana, y ellos salen el día despues* (We go to-morrow, and they leave the following day).

PAST TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD

7. This tense in Spanish is divided into the past *imperfect* and the past *perfect*; and as in English both are frequently expressed by the same inflection of the verb, learners of the Spanish language are often at a loss to know which of the two forms of the verb to employ, since, in translating from English, they must, in most cases, be guided by the meaning of the sentence, in order to determine whether the verb be in the past *imperfect* or the past *perfect* tense.

Those who are acquainted with the Latin, Italian, or French language will immediately perceive the distinction between these two tenses, since their employment in Spanish is almost precisely the same as in those three languages, as will be seen by the following exposition:

<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>Past</i> <i>Imperfect</i> </div>	{	English	... I <i>went</i> to the theatre very frequently.
		Spanish	... <i>Iba</i> muy amenudo al teatro.
		Italian	... <i>Andava</i> spessissimo al teatro.
		French	... <i>J'allais</i> très souvent au théâtre.
		Latin...	... <i>Theatrum sæpissime adibam,</i>

<i>Past Perfect</i>	English	... I <i>went</i> to the theatre last night.
	Spanish	... <i>Fut</i> al teatro anoche.
	Italian	... <i>Andai</i> jersera al teatro.
	French	... <i>J'allai</i> au théâtre hier au soir.
	Latin ...	... Superiori nocte theatrum <i>adivi</i> .
<i>Past Imperfect</i>	English	... The Romans <i>were</i> great warriors.
	Spanish	... Los Romanos <i>eran</i> grandes guerreros.
	Italian	... I Romani <i>erano</i> grandi guerrieri.
	French	... Les Romains <i>étaient</i> de grands guerriers.
	Latin ...	... Romani bello fortes <i>erant</i> .
<i>Past Perfect</i>	English	... The Romans <i>conquered</i> Britain.
	Spanish	... Los Romanos <i>conquistaron</i> á la Breñaña.
	Italian	... I Romani <i>conquistarono</i> la Britannia.
	French	... Les Romains <i>conquirent</i> la Bretagne.
	Latin ...	... Romani Britanniam <i>domuerunt</i> .

8. The principal and most general characteristics of these two tenses are, that the past *imperfect* denotes, first, the action or existence *to be* in a *continuative* or *progressive* state or implies *repetition*; or, secondly, that it has some connection with the *present* time; or, thirdly, its occurring at a time whilst another action was taking place, and therefore *co-existing* with it; whereas the past *perfect* tense denotes the action, or state of being, to have *completely* or *perfectly passed* at some particular or defined period, having no connection with the present time, for which reason it is sometimes called the past *definite* tense, as the *imperfect* is sometimes called the past *definite*. For instance, if I say *James* loved *Mary*, my hearer is in doubt whether that love continues to exist or has ceased, or whether it existed at a period when another circumstance, having reference to the time of its existence, was taking place. This doubt will be removed by continuing the sentence; as, *James* loved *Mary*, and still loves her. Now we see that the act of loving is described to be in a *continuative* or *progressive* state, and it is also connected with the *present* time; the verb is therefore in the past *imperfect* tense. In the following example, *James* loved *Mary* long before he married her, although the act of loving

may have no reference to the present time, nevertheless it is represented to be in a *continuative* state; therefore *loved* is here likewise in the past *imperfect* tense. Again, in *James loved Mary when he married her*, the act of loving is represented to have existed at the time that the marriage took place; that is, it expresses an action *present* with respect to a time *past*; therefore that action is also in the past *imperfect* tense. But in the sentence, *I wrote to John last Monday*, the act of writing is represented as having taken place at a particular or definite period, which is entirely *gone by*; it is not in a *progressive* state, nor has it any reference to another action; it is therefore in the past *perfect* tense.

9. It is of essential importance to the student to know how to distinguish these two tenses at once; and therefore, for the better illustration of them, some examples are here given in both languages. For instance, PAST IMPERFECT—*Iba á la librería*. PAST PERFECT—*Fui á la librería*. Both these examples are translated, *I went to the library*; but the meaning of the first is, *I used to go*, or *I was in the habit of going*, or *was accustomed to go to the library*; as, *Cuando estaba en Madrid iba todos los días á la librería* (When I was in Madrid I *went*, or I *used to go*, to the library every day). In this sentence the act of *going* is described as a *reiterated* action, or one that the actor was *accustomed* to do, or in the *habit* of doing; but in the second sentence above, the verb alludes to some *particular* or *stated* period; as in *Fui á la librería ayer* (I *went* to the library *yesterday*). Here we see that the particular period in which the act of *going* took place is directly referred to; the action is *perfectly* passed at a definite period, and has no connection with the present time.

10. By the past *imperfect* tense are also described all former customs, habits, professions, &c., of individuals and nations no longer existing, as well as those which belonged formerly to persons still existing. Ex.:

Los Israelitas **hacían** sacrificios á Dios.

The Israelites *made* sacrifices to God: i.e. *were in the habit of making*.

Los Egipcios **cultivaban** las ciencias.

The Egyptians *cultivated* the sciences.

Ciceron **era** grande orador.

Cicero *was* a great orator.

Yo **viajaba** mucho cuando **era** más joven.

I used to travel much when *I was* younger.

11. The past *perfect* tense describes a former, but not a progressive act, or state of being. It represents the occurrence as *entirely passed* at some particular period, as before stated. To authorize the use of this tense, the time in which the circumstance represented by it occurred must have no relation whatever with the present period; that is, it cannot be employed in reference to anything that has taken place in the century, year, month, week, or day of which the period in which we are speaking forms a portion. Ex.:

Fuí á verle **ayer**.

I went to see him *yesterday*.

Llegué á Londres en el año de 1911.

I arrived in London *in the year* 1911.

Murió hace dos meses.

He died two months ago.

Cervantes **nació** á mediados del siglo diez y seis, y **murió** á principios del diez y siete.

Cervantes *was born* about the middle of the sixteenth century, and *died* towards the beginning of the seventeenth.

12. In the *historical* style the past *perfect* tense is generally used, for which reason it has been called the *historical past* tense (see paragraph 5). Ex.:

No se **atreveron** los enemigos á subir la cuesta, ni **dieron** indicio de intentar el asalto, pero se **acercaron** á tiro de piedra.

The enemy *did* not *venture* to ascend the hill, nor *did* he *give* any indication of attempting an assault, but he *approached* within a stone's throw.

Ya entonces se **mostraron** por toda la línea victoriosos los aliados. **Recogieron** los Franceses á su antigua posición.

Then the allies *proved* victorious throughout the whole line. The French *retired* to their former position.

13. The observations made on the manner of forming the *present* tense with the help of auxiliaries, are equally applicable to the *past* tense, the auxiliaries being employed in their *past* form, and in the translation the verb being put in the *past* tense accordingly. Ex.:

Estaba escuchando.	<i>I was listening.</i>
Estuvimos paseando.	<i>We were walking.</i>
Vds. no le vieron, pero yo le vi.	You did not <i>see</i> him, but I <i>did</i> .
Yo le conocía, mas ellos no le conocían.	I <i>knew</i> him, but they <i>did</i> not <i>know</i> him.
Él la encontró; ¿no es verdad?	He <i>met</i> her; <i>did</i> he not?

FUTURE INDICATIVE

14. This tense indicates that something will exist or take place at a time which is not yet arrived. Ex.:

Él será elegido.	He <i>will be</i> elected.
Lo consideraremos.	We <i>will consider</i> it.
Enviaré la carta mañana.	I <i>shall send</i> the letter to-morrow.

15. The *future* tense is sometimes used in Spanish instead of the *present*, when something is affirmed respecting the certainty of which some doubt is entertained; as, Vendrá, quizá, para amenazarme (He comes, perhaps, to threaten me) instead of Viene quizá, &c.

16. It is likewise used in Spanish instead of the *present* or *past* tense in *interrogative* sentences, when the interrogator is almost persuaded that a contradictory reply could not be given to his interrogation. Ex.:

¿Habrá desgracia mayor que la mía?	Can there be (literally, will there be) a greater misfortune than mine?
¿Se habrá visto cosa mas primorosa?	Was there ever seen anything more exquisite?

17. When *shall* and *will* are not employed as signs of the English future tense, but as principal verbs denoting a *voluntary act*, *will*, or *threat*, they must be translated by verbs equivalent in meaning. Ex.:

¿Quiére Vd. prestarme su cortaplumas?	<i>Will</i> you lend me your penknife?
Quiere ir, or, se obstina en que ha de ir, aunque le dije que no fuera.	He <i>will</i> go, although I desired him not to go.
¿He de aguantar tal impertinencia?	<i>Shall</i> I suffer such impertinence?
Me he empeñado en que ha de ser como digo.	I insist that it <i>shall</i> be as I say.

18. When *shall* and *will* are employed as substitutes for the verbs which they represent, the same rule is to be observed as with the auxiliary *do* when so employed (see paragraph 4 of this section). Ex.:

Yo no procederé, pero él procederá.	I shall not proceed, but he <i>will</i> .
Ella esperará, mas yo no esperaré.	She will wait, but I <i>shall</i> not.
Vds. lo evitarán, yo no lo evitaré.	You will avoid it, I <i>will</i> not.
Quiere aventurarse; ¿no es verdad?	He will venture; <i>will</i> he?

PERFECT INDICATIVE

19. This tense denotes a past action, or state of being, but at a period of which the present time forms a part; as, *Le he escrito tres veces esta semana* (I *have written* to him three times this week).

In this sentence we see that the act of writing is passed, but the period in which it has been performed, namely, the *week*, still exists. This tense, therefore, denotes an occurrence that has taken place during the *present day, week, month, year, century*, or during any period which is not entirely elapsed. Ex.:

No le he visto hoy, ni en todo este mes.	I <i>have not seen</i> him to-day, nor during the whole of this month.
Muchas obras de mérito han sido escritas durante el presente siglo.	Many works of merit <i>have been written</i> during the present century.

In a like manner it denotes an action, or a state of being, continued to the time of affirming it; as, *Hasta hoy no he*

sentido *dolor alguno* (I *have felt* no pain whatever until to-day).

PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE

20. This tense, like the simple past, is divided into the *imperfect* and the *perfect*, and the difference between them is, that with the former the action is described to have taken place at some *unlimited* period prior to the occurrence of another action; but with the latter an action is denoted to have occurred *immediately* before the taking place of another, and is therefore always preceded by some adverb of time expressive of that effect; such as, **despues que**, after; **luego que**, or **así que**, as soon as; **no bien**, scarcely. Ex.:

Habia acabado de almorzar ántes
que él viniese.

Ya habia oído la noticia.

Llegaron así que hubimos acabado
de comer.

No bien hube acabado de escribir
cuando entró ella.

I *had finished* breakfast before he
came.

I *had* already *heard* the news.

They arrived *as soon as* we *had*
finished dinner.

I *had scarcely finished* writing
when she entered.

The compound perfect is sometimes emphatically expressed in the following manner: *Acabado que hube de escribir entró ella.*

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

21. This tense denotes that an action or an event will have occurred at or before the taking place of another future action or event. Ex.:

Mañana á esta hora ya lo habré-
mos sabido.

Habrán esparcido la noticia ántes
que se acabe el día.

We *shall have known* it by to-
morrow at this hour.

They *will have spread* the news
before the day is out.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

22. In this mood are given three tenses according to the GRAMMAR of the SPANISH ACADEMY, namely, the *present*, the *imperfect*, and the *future*, with their compounds. A verb in any tense of this mood implies, as in English, a subordination to some event expressed by some other verb in the sentence. But as the English subjunctive is not so striking as the Spanish, care should be taken by the student to analyse every doubtful sentence before he attempts to translate it.

23. In Spanish a verb in the *simple present* of the subjunctive, or the *imperfect* of the same mood with the termination *ra*, or *se*, may have reference to a *present* or *future* subordinate action, or state of being; but the termination *ria*, of the imperfect subjunctive, denotes a *future conditional* action or state. Ex.:

Temo que lo sepa ahora, ó mañana .	I fear he <i>may know</i> it <i>now</i> or <i>to-morrow</i> .
Aunque yo le amara ahora, ó despues .	Although I <i>might love</i> him <i>now</i> , or <i>afterwards</i> .
Me pesaría mucho si no viniere.	I <i>should be</i> very sorry if he should not come.

24. In the *compound present* the verb may have reference to a *past* occurrence. Ex.:

Aunque me lo haya dicho el otro día , no me acuerdo ya de ello.	Although he <i>may have told</i> it me <i>the other day</i> , I no longer re- member it.
No volveré hasta que me hayan entregado el dinero.	I shall not return until they <i>have</i> <i>delivered</i> me the money.

25. But in the *compound of the imperfect* the verb can only have reference to a *past* occurrence. Ex.:

Le hubiera ido á ver ayer si hubiese sabido que estaba en- fermo.	I <i>would have gone</i> to see him yesterday <i>had I known</i> he was ill.
Me habría pagado si hubiera tenido dinero en casa.	He <i>would have paid</i> me if he <i>had</i> <i>had</i> money at home.

26. The *future simple* can only refer to a *future subordinate* action, or state of being. Ex.:

Le traeré á Vd. lo que me dieren .	I will bring you whatever they <i>may give</i> me.
Si permaneciere aquí algún tiempo se lo avisaré.	If I <i>should</i> , or, <i>should</i> I, <i>remain</i> here any time I will let you know.

The *present* of the subjunctive may be substituted for this tense, except when the verb is preceded by the conditional *si*; as, *Todo lo que me den* (All that they may give me). *Cuando vengan* (When they (should) come).

27. The *future compound* refers to a past occurrence subordinate to a future event. Ex.:

Si él hubiere dejado Granada antes que le alcance mi carta.	If he <i>should have left</i> Granada before my letter (should) <i>reach</i> him.
Aún cuando le hubiere escrito antes que llegase.	If even he <i>should have written</i> him before he (might) arrive.

The *compound present* of the subjunctive may be substituted for this tense, except when the verb is preceded by the conditional *si*; as, *Cuando haya acabado*, or *luego que haya acabado mi tarea*, &c. (When I shall have finished, or As soon as I should have finished, my task, &c.). See Government of Verbs as relates to Moods and Tenses on a later page.

EMPLOYMENT OF THE TERMINATIONS **RA**, **SE**, AND **RIA**, OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

28. A verb in the imperfect tense of the subjunctive mood in Spanish has three terminations, namely, **ra**, **se**, and **ria**; as, **hablara**, **hablase**, **hablaría**; and the employment of the one or the other of these terminations is by no means a matter of indifference. The case is similar in English with the signs *should*, *might*, and *would*, of the subjunctive mood, the use of which so often embarrasses foreigners, and not unfrequently even Eng-

lishmen. A Spaniard seldom errs in the application of the terminations *ra*, *se*, and *ria*, although it would, perhaps, be impracticable to give *fixed* rules for their employment to apply in *all* cases. Nevertheless the pupil is here presented with rules which, in *most* cases, will guide him through what has been considered by many as one of the intricate labyrinths in the Spanish language.

In the conjugations of verbs, the signs *should*, *might*, and *would* are given as equivalents to the terminations *ra*, *se*, and *ria* respectively; yet they do not always correspond with them in this order. The most general rule that can be given for the employment of these terminations is, that *ra* or *se* corresponds with *might* or *should*; and *ria* corresponds with *would*. This rule, however, is subject to some exceptions; nevertheless the learner will find it very useful indeed. A still better rule, almost a general one, for those who are acquainted with the French or Italian language, is that the termination *ria* corresponds with the conditional of those two languages, and *ra* and *se*, indiscriminately, with the *imperfect* of the *subjunctive*. To those who are unacquainted with these languages, the following observations (nearly all of which are extracted from the GRAMMAR of the SPANISH ACADEMY) will afford a comprehensive view of the peculiar import of the inflections.¹

¹The plan set forth by the ROYAL ACADEMY OF MADRID, and adopted by almost every Spanish philologist, has, for the sake of uniformity, been followed in this Grammar, with regard to the placing of the three terminations *ra*, *se*, and *ria*, of Spanish verbs in the *imperfect* tense of the *subjunctive* mood. But, in reality, the termination *ria* indicates the verb to be in a *conditional* mood, and not *subjunctive*. And if we analyse these terminations we shall find that *amára* and *amáse* are derived from the Latin subjunctive *amarem* and *amavissem*; and that the termination *ria*—*amaría*—and the future of the indicative—*amaré*—are derived from the Spanish infinitive *amar* and the auxiliary *haber*; thus *amaré*, from *amar-he*; *amarás*, from *amar-has*, &c.; and *amaría*, from *amár-había* or *amarhía*, &c. Thus it is that *amára* and *amáse* coincide with the French and Italian subjunctive, *j'aimasse*, and *io amassi*; and *amaría*, with the conditional of those languages, *j'aimerais*, and *io amerei*.

1st.—When the verb in the imperfect of the subjunctive is preceded by a *conditional* conjunction, such as *si, con tal que, cuando, &c.* (*if, provided, when, &c.*), or by an interjection expressive of desire, either the termination *ra* or *se* may be employed. Ex.:

Si *tuviera*, or *tuviese*, dinero compraría libros.

If I had money I would buy books.

Aún *cuándo* *tratara*, or *tratase*, de remediar el mal.

Even when he *should*, or *though* he *might*, endeavour to remedy the evil.

Ojalá *fuera*, or *fuese*, cierto.

Would to God it *were* true.

2nd.—When the verb in the imperfect of the subjunctive is not preceded by a conditional conjunction, the termination *ra* or *ria* may be used. Ex.:

Bueno *fuera*, or *sería*, que le desterrasen.

It *would be* well that they banished him.

De buena gana *saliera*, or *saldría*.

I *would* willingly *go* out.

It results from the foregoing examples that the termination *ra* accommodates itself sometimes to serve in the place of *ria* or *se*, but that the latter two always differ in signification. Also that *ra* and *se* may be preceded by a *conditional* conjunction, but *ria* cannot.

3rd.—*Se* is generally employed if the imperfect subjunctive be preceded by a *relative*, or by the words *cuanto* or *cuantos*, as much or as many. Ex.:

Premiaré á todos los *que hubiesen* hecho su deber.

I will reward all those *who may have* done their duty.

Compre Vd. *cuanto* or *cuantos* quisiese.

Buy *as much*, or *as many*, as you wish.

4th.—*Ria* is employed to denote a supposition that something may have occurred at any past period. Ex.:

Le *parecería* que yendo temprano la alcanzaría.

It perhaps *appeared* to him that by going early he would overtake her.

5th.—When a verb in the imperfect of the subjunctive, governed by a conjunction, is preceded by a verb in any

of the past tenses of the indicative or the subjunctive, either of the terminations *ra* or *se* may be employed with the governed verb, when it expresses a *power* or a *duty*; but if it denote a *will* or an *inclination*, *ria* is required. Ex.:

Le llamé para que saliera , or saliese , conmigo.	I called him that he <i>might</i> go out with me.
Si hubiera dicho que viniera , or viniese , Vd. . . .	If he had said that you <i>should</i> come, or <i>were</i> to come.
No creíamos que le recompensaría .	We did not think that he <i>would</i> reward him.
En ese caso hubiera pensado que lo arreglaría .	In that case I should have thought that he <i>would</i> arrange it.

6th.—If the governing verb denote a *promise*, we should only employ the termination *ria* with the verb governed. Ex.:

Prometió que me prestaría el dinero.	He <i>promised</i> that he <i>would</i> lend me the money.
Me aseguró que no me expondría .	He <i>assured</i> me that he <i>would</i> not <i>expose</i> me.

7th.—When the conjunction *if* is employed in the sense of *whether*, the termination *ria* is required in the translation. Ex.:

No sé si me lo concedería ó no.	I do not know <i>if</i> , or <i>whether</i> , he would grant it to me.
--	--

8th.—When the expression *had I* or *had he*, &c., is used instead of *if I had*, &c., the termination *ra* or *se* may be employed in the translation. Ex.:

Si tuviera , or tuviese , buenos libros leería.	<i>Had I</i> , or <i>if I had</i> , good books I would read.
---	--

9th.—When *were* is employed in the sense of *would be*, the termination *ria* is required in the translation. Ex.:

Sería locura ir con este tiempo.	It <i>were</i> folly to go in this weather.
---	---

MANNER OF TRANSLATING *MAY*, *MIGHT*, *SHOULD*,
AND *WOULD* AS PRINCIPAL VERBS

29. When these words are *not* employed in English as *signs* of the subjunctive or conditional moods, but are used as principal verbs, they are translated into Spanish by verbs corresponding with them in signification; thus, *may* and *might* denote *power* or *liberty*, *should* denotes *duty* or *obligation*, and *would* expresses an *inclination* of the mind. *May* and *might* are translated by *poder*, *should* by *deber*, and *would* by *querer*. Ex.:

Puedo concluir cuando quiero.

Podía haberlo destruido.

No *debían* molestarle.

No *quiso* admitirlo.

I *may* finish when I like.

I *might* have destroyed it.

They *should* not molest him.

He *would* not accept it.

NOTE.—It may not be improper to notice here that *can* and *could* are also translated by *poder*, as they likewise denote *power*; though it is a power different from that expressed by *may* and *might*, inasmuch as the latter two denote a *moral* power or a *permission*, whereas the former two denote a *physical* or *absolute* power; as, I *can* write now, but I *could* not before (Puedo *escribir ahora*, *pero antes* no podía).

30. When *may*, *might*, *can*, *should*, and *would* are employed as substitutes for the verbs which they represent, the same rule is observed as with the auxiliaries *do*, *shall*, and *will*, noticed in paragraphs 4 and 18 of this Section. Ex.:

Vd. *puede* oír, pero yo no puedo.

Yo *podiera* haber hablado, y el *también*.

Debiera haberlo dicho; ¿no es verdad?

You *can* hear, but I *cannot*.

I *might* have spoken, and so *might* he.

He *should* have said so; *should* he not?

EXERCISE ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

I lend you the money on condition that you give it me back soon. We have heard that all the paintings which

we have brought (*traído*) you from Madrid were destroyed by fire (*incendio*); is this true? I wish that you always obey the orders of your superiors. I shall do my duty, come what may. I shall go to Madrid next month. God grant (that) it were true! Do speak to me with (*en*) confidence! I shall do all that is in my power! He told me this morning that he would visit (*ir á ver*) his patients (*enfermo*), and up to now he has not yet returned. Let us seek the friendship of the good, and avoid the society of the wicked; for bad company corrupts good manners. What sort of weather is it to-day? It snows (*nieva*) continually, as it snowed (*como nevó*) yesterday, and, according to all appearances, will also snow to-morrow. Let it snow; I should like it to snow (*imperf. subjunctive*) still more, for I am always very well when it is very cold. And I am always very well when it is neither cold nor warm. It is too windy (*demasiado viento*) to-day, and we should do better if we stayed at home. Whatever weather it may be (*haga*) I must go out (*debo salir*); for I promised to be with my uncle at a quarter-past ten, and I must keep my word. Do you doubt (*de*) that (*que*) I am an honourable man? No; but I doubt that you are able to do what you have promised me. Do not tell your brother that we are here. Do not come here! Here is no room for you! Do not tell him the truth! As soon as I had received the documents from my friend we made ourselves easy (*tranquilizarse*) about (*de*) his future. Let us take (*vamos á dar*) a walk! You will never be respected unless you forsake (*abandone*) the bad company you keep. You cannot finish (*concluir*) your work to-night, unless I help you. I will explain to you every difficulty, that you may not be disheartened (*desanimado*) in your undertaking (*empresa*). In case you want my assistance, call me; I shall help you.

Verb Drill

Es necesario que *tenga* Vd. la bondad de hacer eso. Es necesario que *esté* Vd. aquí temprano. Es necesario que Vd. *haga* eso. Es necesario que uno *tenga* dinero. Es menester que yo *vaya* al mercado. Es menester que yo me *marche* (or debo marcharme). Es justo que *sea* Vd. castigado. Basta que Vd. *sepa* eso. Es tiempo que *hable* Vd. Es necesario que *vendamos* de seguida nuestros géneros. ¿Qué debo decir? ¿Qué es necesario que yo *diga*? Importa que *se haga* eso. Es oportuno que nos *vayamos*. Es de desear que *vayas* al campo. Debe desearse el que *vayas* al campo. Es de desear que *vuelvas* pronto. Parece que *está* Vd. enfadado. Es necesario que yo *acabe* hoy. Será posible que no te *marches* hasta mañana. Mejor es que *hayamos* llegado esta mañana.

REMARKS.—The subjunctive with **que** is further used in Spanish after verbs expressing *doubt, wish, command, order, fear, ignorance, despair, complaint*, or any *affection of the mind*, that is to say, when the sense to be conveyed is that of a contingency, or of a doubtful event. Ex.:

Dudo (*I doubt*) que *haya* llegado. No dudo que *esté* incomodado. Quiero que me *obedezcan* (*I wish to be obeyed*). Deseo que se lo *digan*. Quiere que yo *tenga* paciencia. Niega (*he denies*) que él lo *haya* hecho. Temo que *esté* malo. No temo que se *escape* (*I am not afraid of his escaping*). Se queja que Vd. le *haya* maltratado (*He complains of your having ill-treated him*). Siento mucho el que Vd. lo *haya* hecho. Siento el que *haya* Vd. tenido que esperar. Le parecerá á Vd. bien el que yo no *vaya*. Ha desaprobado (or llevado á mal) el que Vd. lo *haya* dicho. ¿Qué quiere Vd. que *compren* esos hombres? (*What do you wish these men to buy?*) ¿Qué quiere Vd. que responda? (*What do you wish him to answer?*) ¿Qué quiere Vd. que yo *beba*? (*What do you want me to drink?*)

FORMATION AND SYNTAX OF PARTICIPLES

1. There are two participles to be considered, the one *active* or *present*, the other *passive* or *past*. Participles active derived from verbs of the first conjugation end in **ando**; as, **hablando**, speaking: those of the second and third conjugations end in **iendo**; as, **temiendo**, fearing; **sufriendo**, suffering. Participles past derived from verbs of the first conjugation end in **ado**; as, **hablado**, spoken: those of the second and third conjugations end in **ido**; as, **temido**, feared; **sufrido**, suffered. We will first see how participles are employed as forming part of the verb.

2. The *participle active*, as part of a verb, denotes action, or state of being, and is preceded by some verb to denote the *time* of action or being. Ex.:

Está, estaba, ha estado, or estará
escribiendo.

He is, was, has been, or will be
writing.

3. The English participle *present* is construed by the *gerund* in Spanish. Ex.:

Siendo ciertas las noticias.

The news *being* certain.

Estoy **escribiendo**.

I am *writing*.

Paseando, or estando **paseando**.

Walking, or being *walking*.

Los encontré **leyendo**.

I met them *reading*.

NOTE.—Sometimes the participle active is omitted before a noun; as in the following passage:

El marques (**siendo**) **sabedor**, de
que Abenhumeya estaba tan
pujante y apercebido para la
batalla. . . .

The marquis (*being*) *aware* that
Abenhumeya was so powerful
and well prepared for the
battle. . . .

4. When in English the participle active has reference to a noun or pronoun that is *not* the nominative case, the participle is frequently rendered in Spanish by a verb in some tense of the indicative or subjunctive mood. But should the English participle active refer to a noun or

pronoun that *is* the nominative case, it is translated into Spanish by a participle active also. Ex.:

Se lo di al dependiente que hacia de apoderado.	I gave it to the <i>clerk acting</i> as agent.
Haciendo yo de apoderado, le escribí sobre el asunto.	I, <i>acting</i> as agent, wrote to him on the subject.

5. When the participle active of the verbs *to go* and *to come* is preceded by any tense of the verb *to be*, denoting an action about to take place, the participle is translated by an equivalent verb in the same mood and tense as those in which the verb *to be* is placed. Ex.:

Nos vamos á embarcar hoy.	We <i>are going</i> to embark to-day.
Si Vd. pasare por aquí.	If you <i>should be coming</i> this way.
Viene hoy.	He <i>is coming</i> to-day.
Iban á salir.	They <i>were going</i> out.

6. Sometimes, particularly after verbs that denote *intention*, and after the verbs *to see*, *to hear*, and *to feel*, the participle active or the infinitive may be used indifferently in English; but in such cases the *infinitive* is required in Spanish. Ex.:

La casa que intento comprar .	The house I intend <i>purchasing</i> , or <i>to purchase</i> .
Hago idea de volver en una semana.	I purpose <i>returning</i> , or <i>to return</i> , in a week.
Los veo venir .	I see them <i>coming</i> .
La oigo llorar .	I hear her <i>cry</i> , or <i>crying</i> .
Sentí helárseme la sangre.	I felt my blood <i>freezing</i> .

7. Whenever the employment of the participle active is likely to produce ambiguity, it is preferable to resolve it into some tense of the verb from which it is derived; for instance, in the example *Los vimos yendo á pasear esta mañana* (We saw them *going* to walk this morning), the sense is ambiguous in both languages; for it is not clearly demonstrated by the participle active whether *we* or *they* were going to walk; it would therefore be preferable to say:

Los vimos cuando iban á pasear esta mañana; or	We saw them when <i>they were</i> <i>going</i> to walk this morning; or
Los vimos cuando íbamos á pasear esta mañana.	We saw them when <i>we were</i> <i>going</i> to walk this morning.

8. When the past participle is used with any part of the verb **haber**, it is *indeclinable*; but when used with the verbs **ser**, or **estar**, it agrees in gender and number with the nominative of these verbs (see paragraph 14). Ex.:

He dado; habíamos visto.	I have given; we have seen.
Soy amado, or amada; serán vendidos, or vendidas.	I am loved; they will be sold.
Están cansados, or cansadas.	They are tired.

9. The participle past is frequently used in Spanish in an absolute manner; in which case one of the participles active, **habiendo**, **siendo**, or **estando**, is understood. The participle so used must agree in number and gender with the noun forming the subject of discourse. Ex.:

Entrado pues Don Pedro en la tienda de Don Antonio, díjole que era tiempo que se fuesen.	Don Pedro then <i>having entered</i> Don Antonio's tent, said to him that it was time they should depart.
Logradas estas ventajas, se faci- lita la sabiduría (GRAMMAR of the ACADEMY).	These advantages <i>being gained</i> , knowledge is facilitated.

10. We have now to consider how participles are employed in this capacity as *nouns* and *adjectives*; and first of the *participle active*.

When in English the *participle active* is preceded by an article, a possessive or a demonstrative pronoun, a preposition, or by any word that makes it assume the character of a noun, or when used by itself in that capacity, it is generally rendered in Spanish by a *noun* or an *infinitive*, and sometimes by a *past participle*. Ex.:

El silbido del viento.	The <i>whistling</i> of the wind.
Su <i>venida</i> me sorprendió.	<i>His coming</i> surprised me.
Aquel balar de las ovejas.	That <i>bleating</i> of the sheep.
Se dedica al dibujo.	She devotes herself to <i>drawing</i> .

El **andar** contribuye á la salud.
 Sin **haberlo** observado.
 Me gusta el leer.
 Es **obrar** con prudencia.

Walking is conducive to health.
Without having observed it.
 I am fond of *reading*.
 It is *acting* with prudence.

From this rule may be generally excepted those active participles that are preceded by the prepositions *in* and *by*, in which cases the participle active is used in Spanish without the preposition. Ex.:

Trabajando se conserva la salud.
Considerando el asunto, &c.

By working we preserve health.
In considering the subject, &c.

Frequently, however, when the English participle active is preceded by the preposition *by*, it may be translated by the infinitive preceded by **con**; as, Horses become strengthened by *exercising* them (*Los caballos se fortalecen con ejercitarlos*, or *ejercitándolos*).

11. Instead of a compound participle, a simple participle active is sometimes used in English in an absolute manner; in such cases the compound infinitive is required in the translation; as, Their *coming* late was the cause of his not seeing them: i.e. their *having come* late, &c. (*El haber ellos venido tarde fué causa que él no los viese*).

12. There is a kind of participle active in Spanish employed in the capacity of verbal adjectives. Those derived from verbs of the first conjugation end in **ante**, as **amante**; those of the second and third conjugations end in **iente**, as **obediente**, **viviente**. They agree in number with the noun to which they refer, and are common to both genders. They sometimes also stand in the place of nouns; as, *Un marido amante* (A loving husband). *La hija obediente* (The obedient daughter). *Los autores vivientes* (Living authors). *Los creyentes* (The believers). *Los oyentes* (The hearers).

Observe that participles active, ending in **ndo**, as **amando**, **obedeciendo**, **viviendo**, are never used as adjectives.

13. There remains now to consider the *participle past*

in the capacity of an adjective. It is so used since it does not denote action, but a state of being, referring to or characterizing some noun, and agrees with it in Spanish in number and gender; as, *El soldado vencido* (The conquered soldier). *Los soldados vencidos* (The conquered soldiers). *Una mujer casada* (A married woman). *Mujeres casadas* (Married women).

14. When the *participle past* is employed with any part of the verb *ser*, or *estar*, to be, it likewise assumes the character of an adjective, and agrees in number and gender with the person or thing to which it alludes. Ex.:

El hijo es parecido al padre, y la
hija es parecida á la madre.

Son palacios bien contruidos y
casas bien acabadas.

El está nombrado.

Nosotros estamos perdidos.

Los platos están quebrados.

Las casas están vendidas.

The son is *like* the father, and
the daughter is *like* the mother.

They are well *constructed* palaces
and well *finished* houses.

He is appointed.

We are *lost*.

The plates are *broken*.

The houses are *sold*.

THE AUXILIARY VERBS

Previous to the conjugations of regular verbs, those of the auxiliary verbs *haber* and *ser*, to have and to be, are here given, as it is necessary that they should be first learnt, from their peculiar office in assisting in the conjugation of other verbs. The verb *tener* has also been conjugated next to *haber*, as they are both expressed by the same verb in English; and *estar* has been conjugated next to *ser*, for the same reason. Their significations and manner of employment are explained after their conjugations.

The personal pronouns *yo*, *tú*, *él*, &c., are usually *omitted* before the verb, except when special stress is intended to be laid upon them, or when their omission gives rise to ambiguity. *Vd.* and *Vds.* are, however, *never omitted*. This rule also applies in regard to the imperative.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB HABER, TO HAVE

INFINITIVE

Present: haber, to have.

Perfect: haber habido, to have had.

Future: haber de haber, to have to have.

GERUND OR PARTICIPLES

Present: habiendo, having.

Perfect: habiendo habido, having had.

Future: habiendo de haber, having to have.

Past Participle: habido, had.

SIMPLE TENSES

INDICATIVE

Present

yo he, I have.

tú has, thou hast (you have, *fam. sing.*).

él, ella ha, he, she, it has.

Vd. ha, you have (*pol. sing.*).

nosotros (-as) hemos, we have.

vosotros (-as) habéis, you have (*fam. pl.*).

ellos, ellas han, they have.

Vds. han, you have (*pol. pl.*).

SUBJUNCTIVE

que or si (yo), that or if

yo haya, I have or may have, &c.

tú hayas, thou have (you have, *fam. sing.*).

él, ella haya, he, she, it have.

Vd. haya, you have (*pol. sing.*).

nosotros (-as) hayamos, we have.

vosotros (-as) hayáis, you have (*fam. pl.*).

ellos, ellas hayan, they have.

Vds. hayan, you have (*pol. pl.*).

Imperfect (Semi-past Tense)

(yo, tu, él, &c.)

había, I had.

habías, thou hadst.

había, he, she, it had.

habíamos, we had.

habíais, you had.

habían, they had.

que or si (yo), that or if

hubiese, I had or might have, &c.

hubieses, thou had.

hubiese, he, she, it had.

hubiésemos, we had.

hubieseis, you had.

hubiesen, they had.

Past Definite (Historic Tense)

hube, I had.

hubiste, thou hadst.

hubo, he, she, it had.

hubimos, we had.

hubisteis, you had.

hubieron, they had.

[None.]

Future

habré, I shall have.
 habrás, thou wilt have.
 habrá, he, she, it will have.
 habremos, we shall have.
 habréis, you will have.
 habrán, they will have.

que or si (yo), that or if
 hubiere, I (shall) have.
 hubieras, thou (wilt) have.
 hubiere, he, she, it (will) have.
 hubiéremos, we (shall) have.
 hubiereis, you (will) have.
 hubieren, they (will) have.

(Conditional)

habría, I should have.
 habrías, thou wouldst have.
 habría, he, she, it would have.
 habríamos, we would have.
 habríais, you would have.
 habrían, they would have.

que or si (yo), that or if
 hubiera, I should have.
 hubieras, thou wouldst have.
 hubiera, he, she, it would have.
 hubiéramos, we would have.
 hubierais, you would have.
 hubieran, they would have.

COMPOUND TENSES

Perfect (Continuous Past)

ha habido (lit., it has had), there
 has (have) been.

que or si (yo), that or if
 haya habido, there have been or
 may have been.

Pluperfect (Ante-past Tense)

había habido, there had been.

que or si (yo), that or if
 hubiese habido, there had been or
 there might have been.

Second Pluperfect (Historic Ante-past Tense)

hubo habido, there had been.

[None.]

Future Perfect

habrá habido, there will have
 been.

que or si (yo), that or if
 hubiere habido, there (will) have
 been.

Perfect Conditional (considered as Past)

habría habido, there would have
 been.

que or si (yo), that or if
 hubiera habido, there would have
 been.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB TENER, TO HAVE, TO HOLD, TO POSSESS

INFINITIVE

Present: tener, to have, hold, possess.

Perfect: haber tenido, to have had, held, possessed.

Future: haber de tener, to have to have, hold, possess.

GERUND OR PARTICIPLES

Present: teniendo, having, holding, possessing.

Perfect: habiendo tenido, having had, held, possessed.

Future: habiendo de tener, having to have, hold, possess.

Past Participle: tenido, had, held, possessed.

SIMPLE TENSES

INDICATIVE

Present

tengo, I have, hold, possess.

tienes, thou hast (you have, *fam. sing.*).

tiene, he, she, it has (you have, *pol. sing.*).

tenemos, we have.

tenéis, you have (*fam. pl.*).

tienen, they have (you have, *pol. pl.*).

SUBJUNCTIVE

que or si (yo), that or if

tenga, I have, hold, possess, or may have, hold, possess, &c.

tengas, thou have.

tenga, he, she, it have.

tengamos, we have.

tengáis, you have.

tengan, they have.

Imperfect

tenía, I had, held, possessed.

tenías, thou hadst.

tenía, he, she, it had.

teníamos, we had.

teníais, you had.

tenían, they had.

que or si (yo), that or if

tuviese, I had, held, possessed, or have, hold, possess, &c.

tuvieses, thou had.

tuviese, he, she, it had.

tuviésemos, we had.

tuvieseis, you had.

tuviesen, they had.

Past Definite

tuve, I had, held, possessed.

tuviste, thou hadst.

tuvo, he, she, it had.

tuvimos, we had.

tuvisteis, you had.

tuvieron, they had.

[None.]

Future

tendré, I shall have, hold, possess.
 tendrás, thou wilt have.
 tendrá, he, she, it will have.
 tendremos, we shall have.
 tendréis, you (will) have.
 tendrán, they (will) have.

que or si (yo), that or if
 tuviere, I (shall) have, hold, possess.
 tuvieres, thou (wilt) have.
 tuviere, he, she, it (will) have.
 tuviéremos, we (shall) have.
 tuviereis, you (will) have.
 tuvieran, they (will) have.

Conditional

tendría, I should have, held,
 possess.
 tendrías, thou wouldst have.
 tendría, he, she, it would have.
 tendríamos, we should have.
 tendríais, you would have.
 tendrían, they would have.

que or si (yo), that or if
 tuviera, I should have, hold,
 possess.
 tuvieras, thou wouldst have.
 tuviera, he, she, it would have.
 tuviéramos, we should have.
 tuvierais, you would have.
 tuvieran, they would have.

COMPOUND TENSES

Perfect

he tenido, I have had, held,
 possessed.
 has tenido, thou hast had.
 ha tenido, he, she, it has had.
 hemos tenido, we have had.
 habéis tenido, you have had.
 han tenido, they have had.

que or si (yo), that or if
 haya tenido, I have had, held,
 possessed, or may have had,
 held, possessed, &c.
 hayas tenido, thou have had.
 haya tenido, he, she, it have had.
 hayamos tenido, we have had.
 hayáis tenido, you have had.
 hayan tenido, they have had.

Pluperfect

había tenido, I had had, held,
 possessed.
 habías tenido, thou hadst had.
 había tenido, he, she, it had had.
 habíamos tenido, we had had.
 habíais tenido, you had had.
 habían tenido, they had had.

que or si (yo), that or if
 hubiese tenido, I had, held, pos-
 sessed, or might have had,
 held, possessed, &c.
 hubieses tenido, thou had had.
 hubiese tenido, he, she, it had had.
 hubiésemos tenido, we had had.
 hubieseis tenido, you had had.
 hubiesen tenido, they had had.

Second Pluperfect

hube tenido, I had had, held,
 possessed.
hubiste tenido, thou hadst had.
hubo tenido, he, she, it had had.
hubimos tenido, we had had.
hubisteis tenido, you had had.
hubieron tenido, they had had.

[None.]

Perfect Future

habré tenido , I shall have had, held, possessed.	que or si (yo), that or if hubiere tenido , I (shall) have had, held, possessed.
habrás tenido , thou wilt have had.	hubieres tenido , thou (wilt) have had.
habrá tenido , he, she, it will have had.	hubiere tenido , he, she, it (wilt) have had.
habremos tenido , we shall have had.	hubiéremos tenido , we (shall) have had.
habréis tenido , you will have had.	hubiereis tenido , you (will) have had.
habrán tenido , they will have had.	hubieren tenido , they (will) have had.

Perfect Conditional

habría tenido , I should have had, held, possessed.	que or si (yo), that or if hubiera tenido , I should have had, held, possessed.
habrías tenido , thou wouldst have had.	hubieras tenido , thou wouldst have had.
habría tenido , he, she, it would have had.	hubiera tenido , he, she, it would have had.
habríamos tenido , we should have had.	hubiéramos tenido , we should have had.
habrías tenido , you would have had.	hubierais tenido , you would have had.
habrían tenido , they would have had.	hubieran tenido , they would have had.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Affirmative</i>	<i>Negative</i>
ten , have, hold, possess thou (<i>fam. sing.</i>).	no tengas , have thou not, do not hold, possess (<i>fam. sing.</i>).
tenga Vd. , have, hold, possess (<i>pol. sing.</i>).	no tenga Vd. , have not, do not hold, possess (<i>pol. sing.</i>).
tengamos , let us have, hold, pos- sess.	no tengamos , let us not have, let us not hold, possess.
tened , have, hold, possess ye (<i>fam. pl.</i>).	no tengáis , have ye not, do not hold, possess (<i>fam. pl.</i>).
tengan Vds. , have, hold, possess (<i>pol. pl.</i>).	no tengan Vds. , have not, do not hold, possess (<i>pol. pl.</i>).

OBSERVATIONS ON HABER AND TENER

When the verb *to have* is used in English in the capacity of an *auxiliary*, it is translated *haber*; but when employed as an *active* verb, denoting *possession*, it must be translated *tener*. We therefore say, *He comprado un libro*, for, *I have bought a book*; but we must say, *Tengo un libro*, for, *I have a book*. In the first instance, *to have* is used as an *auxiliary* to the verb *to buy*; but in the second, it is employed as an *active* verb, denoting the *possession* of the book. Nevertheless, in familiar discourse, we sometimes, though not frequently, notice *tener* governing a participle, in which case the participle is indeclinable; as, *Tengo ido dos veces* (I have been twice). *Tenemos hablado con él* (We have spoken to him). But if there be a noun or pronoun in the sentence governed by *tener*, the participle is made to agree with it; as, *Tengo ya comprados mis libros* (I have my books already bought). *Tengo leídas todas esas novelas* (I have read all those novels).

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB SER,
TO BE (PERMANENT STATE)

INFINITIVE

Present: **ser**, to be. *Perfect*: **haber sido**, to have been.

Future: **haber de ser**, to have to be.

GERUND

Present: siendo, being. Perfect: habiendo sido, having been.

PAST PARTICIPLE

sido, been.

SIMPLE TENSES

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

sóy, I am.
éres, thou art (you are, *fam. sing.*).
es, he is (Vd. es, you are).
sómos, we are.
soís, you are.
son, they are (Vds. son, you are).

que (yo), that
séa, I be or may be.
séas, thou be.
séa, he be.
seámos, we be.
seáis, you be.
séan, they be.

Imperfect

éra, I was.
éras, thou wast.
éra, he was.
éramos, we were.
érais, you were.
éran, they were.

que or si (yo), that or if
fuése, I were or might be.
fuéses, thou were (wert).
fuése, he were.
fuésemos, we were.
fuéseis, you were.
fuésen, they were.

Past Definite

fuí, I was.
fuíste, thou wast.
fué, he was.
fuímos, we were.
fuísteis, you were.
fuéron, they were.

[None.]

Future

seré, I shall be.
serás, thou wilt be.
será, he will be.
serémos, we shall be.
seréis, you will be.
serán, they will be.

que or si (yo), that or if
fuere, I (shall) be.
fueres, thou (wilt) be.
fuere, he (will) be.
fuéremos, we (shall) be.
fuereis, you (will) be.
fueren, they (will) be.

Conditional

sería, I should be.
serías, thou wouldst be.
sería, he would be.
seríamos, we should be.
seríais, you would be.
serían, they would be.

que or **si (yo)**, that or if
fuera, I should be.
fuéras, thou wouldst be.
fuera, he would be.
fuéramos, we should be.
fuérais, you would be.
fuéran, they would be.

COMPOUND TENSES

Perfect

he sido, I have been.
has sido, thou hast been.
ha sido, he has been.
hemos sido, we have been.
habéis sido, you have been.
han sido, they have been.

que **(yo)**, that
haya sido, I had been or might
 have been, &c.
háyas sido, thou have been.
haya sido, he have been.
hayamos sido, we have been.
hayáis sido, you have been.
hayan sido, they have been.

Pluperfect

había sido, I had been.
habías sido, thou hadst been.
había sido, he had been.
habíamos sido, we had been.
habíais sido, you had been.
habían sido, they had been.

que or **si (yo)**, that or if
hubiese sido, I had been or might
 have been, &c.
hubiéses sido, thou had been.
hubiese sido, he had been.
hubiésemos sido, we had been.
hubiéseis sido, you had been.
hubiesen sido, they had been.

Second Pluperfect

hubé sido, I had been.
hubiste sido, thou hadst been.
hubo sido, he had been.
hubimos sido, we had been.
hubisteis sido, you had been.
hubieron sido, they had been.

[None.]

Future Perfect

habré sido, I shall have been.
habrás sido, thou wilt have been.
habrá sido, he will have been.
habremos sido, we shall have been.
habréis sido, you will have been.
habrán sido, they will have been.

que or **si (yo)**, that or if
hubiere sido, I (shall) have been.
hubiéres sido, thou (wilt) have been.
hubiere sido, he (will) have been.
hubiéremos sido, we (shall) have
 been.
hubiéreis sido, you (will) have been.
hubieren sido, they (will) have been.

Perfect Conditional

habría sido, I should have been.
habrías sido, thou wouldst have been.
habría sido, he would have been.
habríamos sido, we should have been.
habrías sido, you would have been.
habrían sido, they would have been.

que or **si (yo)**, that or if
hubiera sido, I should have been.
hubieras sido, thou wouldst have been.
hubiera sido, he would have been.
hubiéramos sido, we should have been.
hubieras sido, you would have been.
hubieran sido, they would have been.

IMPERATIVE

Affirmative

sé (tú), be (thou) (*fam. sing.*).
séa Vd., be (*pol. sing.*).
seámos, let us be.
sed, be (ye) (*fam. pl.*).
seán Vds., be (*pol. pl.*).

Negative

no séas, be not or do not be (*fam. sing.*).
no séa Vd., be not, &c. (*pol. sing.*).
no seámos, let us not be.
no seáis, be not, &c. (*fam. pl.*).
no seán Vds., be not, &c. (*pol. pl.*).

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB **ESTAR**, TO BE
 (ACCIDENTAL AND TEMPORARY STATE)

INFINITIVE

Present: **estar**, to be. *Perfect*: **haber estado**, to have been.
Future: **haber de estar**, to have to be.

GERUND

Present: **estando**, being. *Perfect*: **habiendo estado**, having been.
Future: **habiendo de estar**, having to be.

PAST PARTICIPLE

estado, been.

SIMPLE TENSES

INDICATIVE

estóy, I am.
estás, thou art.
está, he is.
estámos, we are.
estáis, you are.
están, they are.

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

que **(yo)**, that
esté, I be or may be, &c.
estés, thou be.
esté, he be.
estémos, we be.
estéis, you be.
estén, they be.

Imperfect

estaba, I was.
 estabas, thou wast.
 estaba, he was.
 estábamos, we were.
 estabais, you were.
 estaban, they were.

que or si (yo), that or if
 estuviése, I were or might be, &c.
 estuviéscas, thou were (wert).
 estuviése, he were.
 estuviésemos, we were.
 estuviéscis, you were.
 estuviéscen, they were.

Past Definite

estuve, I was.
 estuviste, thou wast.
 estuvo, he was.
 estuvimos, we were.
 estuvisteis, you were.
 estuvieron, they were.

[None.]

Future

estaré, I shall be.
 estarás, thou wilt be.
 estará, he will be.
 estaremos, we shall be.
 estaréis, you will be.
 estarán, they will be.

que or si (yo), that or if
 estuviere, I (shall) be.
 estuviéres, thou (wilt) be.
 estuviere, he (will) be.
 estuviéremos, we (shall) be.
 estuviéreis, you (will) be.
 estuviéren, they (will) be.

Conditional

estaría, I should be.
 estarías, thou wouldst be.
 estaría, he would be.
 estaríamos, we should be.
 estaríais, you would be.
 estarían, they would be.

que or si (yo), that or if
 estuviéra, I should be.
 estuviéras, thou wouldst be.
 estuviéra, he would be.
 estuviéramos, we should be.
 estuviérais, you would be.
 estuviéran, they would be.

COMPOUND TENSES

Perfect

he estado, I have been.
 has estado, thou hast been.
 ha estado, he has been.
 hemos estado, we have been.
 habéis estado, you have been.
 han estado, they have been.

que (yo), that
 haya estado, I have been or may
 have been, &c.
 hayas estado, thou have been.
 haya estado, he have been.
 hayamos estado, we have been.
 hayáis estado, you have been.
 hayan estado, they have been.

Pluperfect

había estado, I had been.

habías estado, thou hadst been.

había estado, he had been.

habíamos estado, we had been.

habíais estado, you had been.

habían estado, they had been.

que or **si (yo)**, that or if
hubiése estado, I had been or
might have been, &c.

hubiéses estado, thou had been.

hubiése estado, he had been.

hubiésemos estado, we had been.

hubiéseis estado, you had been.

hubiésen estado, they had been.

Second Pluperfect

húbe estado, I had been.

hubiste estado, thou hadst been.

hubó estado, he had been.

hubimos estado, we had been.

hubisteis estado, you had been.

hubieron estado, they had been.

[None.]

Future Perfect

habré estado, I shall have been.

habrás estado, thou wilt have
been.

habrá estado, he will have been.

habrémos estado, we shall have
been.

habréis estado, you will have been.

habrán estado, they will have
been.

que or **si (yo)**, that or if

hubiere estado, I (shall) have been.

hubiéres estado, thou (wilt) have
been.

hubiere estado, he (will) have
been.

hubiéremos estado, we (shall) have
been.

hubiéreis estado, you (will) have
been.

hubiéren estado, they (will) have
been.

Perfect Conditional

habría estado, I should have been.

habrías estado, thou wouldst have
been.

habría estado, he would have
been.

habríamos estado, we should have
been.

habríais estado, you would have
been.

habrían estado, they would have
been.

que or **si (yo)**, that or if

hubiera estado, I should have been.

hubieras estado, thou wouldst have
been.

hubiera estado, he would have
been.

hubiéramos estado, we should have
been.

hubierais estado, you would have
been.

hubieran estado, they would have
been.

IMPERATIVE

*Affirmative*está (te), be (thou) (*fam. sing.*).esté Vd., be (*pol. sing.*).

estemos, let us be.

estad, be (ye) (*fam. pl.*).estén Vds., be (*pol. plur.*).*Negative*no estés, be not, or do not be
(*fam. sing.*).no esté Vd., be not, &c. (*pol. sing.*).

no estemos, let us not be.

no estéis, be not, &c. (*fam. pl.*).no estén Vds., be not, &c. (*pol. pl.*).

OBSERVATIONS ON SER AND ESTAR

In the foregoing conjugations of these two verbs, both are translated by the same verb in English—namely, *to be*; yet by no means can they be indiscriminately used in Spanish, since they differ materially from each other in signification. It is therefore essentially necessary that the learner be acquainted with their peculiar meaning and use—a matter that frequently embarrasses students of the Spanish language, and which has justly been considered one of its greatest difficulties to surmount, but which it is hoped the following observations will remove.

When we wish to express the absolute, natural, or inherent quality of anything—the qualities of the mind, the natural beauties and defects of the body, and all general truths—we must employ *ser*. Ex.:

El oro *es* pesado.La piedra *es* dura.La nieve *es* blanca.Ellos *son* humildes.El *es* docto.Ella *es* hermosa.Él *es* ciego.La costumbre *es* otra naturaleza.La necesidad *es* madre de la
invención.Gold *is* heavy.Stone *is* hard.Snow *is* white.They *are* humble.He *is* learned.She *is* handsome.He *is* blind.Custom *is* second nature.Necessity *is* the mother of in-
vention.

But to denote any accidental circumstance—chemical and mechanical changes, locality, the emotions of the mind, or when we speak of the state of one's health—we must use *estar*. Ex.:

Estoy pronto.	I <i>am</i> ready.
Está durmiendo.	He <i>is</i> asleep.
Esta agua está caliente.	This water <i>is</i> warm.
El vino ya está agrio.	The wine <i>is</i> already sour.
Están en Madrid.	They <i>are</i> in Madrid.
Estaré aquí mañana.	I shall <i>be</i> here to-morrow.
Está triste. Estoy contento.	She <i>is</i> sad. I <i>am</i> contented.
Estoy bueno. Están malos.	I <i>am</i> well. They <i>are</i> ill.
Está de moda.	He <i>is</i> in the fashion.
Estaba de rodillas.	He <i>was</i> on his knees.
Estoy de prisa.	I <i>am</i> in haste.
Estoy del mismo parecer.	I <i>am</i> of the same opinion.

In the following example the learner will observe the striking difference in the meaning of these two verbs: *Este es el niño que está enfermo* (This *is* the child that *is* ill). Here we see that the *absolute being* of the child is expressed by *ser*, but the *accidental circumstance* of its being *ill* is denoted by *estar*.

In speaking of a fruit, the peculiar nature of which is *sour*, we must say, *Esta fruta es agria* (This fruit *is* sour); but if we change the verb *ser* into *estar*, we denote that the fruit became sour by some accidental circumstance, or that, from its being gathered too early, it had not reached the necessary degree of maturity, and not that it belonged to any species of fruit of a *naturally sour* kind. Again, if we allude to two men, one with a wooden leg and the other walking with both legs, assisted by crutches, we should express the lameness of the former by the verb *ser*, because it is evident that it is *permanent*; thus, *Aquel hombre es cojo* (That man *is* lame); but the lameness of the latter may be translated either *es cojo*, or *está cojo*, according as we considered it permanent or temporary.

We must employ *ser* to express *possession*, and also to denote what a thing is *intended for*. Ex.:

La hacienda es de ella, pero el dinero es mío.	The property <i>is</i> hers, but the money <i>is</i> mine.
Los libros son para estudiar.	Books <i>are</i> to study from.
Esta carta es para Vd.	This letter <i>is</i> for you.

Likewise to signify the materials of which things are formed. Ex.:

Este reloj **es** de oro.

This *is* a gold watch.

Ese paño **es** de lana de Sajonia.

That cloth *is* of Saxony wool.

Estar is always employed with the *participle active*; as, *Estoy leyendo* (I am reading). *Estaban escribiendo* (They were writing).

Ser cannot be employed before a *participle active*, nor **estar** before a *noun*: both may be used with the other parts of speech respectively, according as the one or the other is required.

Ser is required to form the *passive voice*; as, *Son amados* (They are loved). *Fuimos elegidos* (We were elected).

There are some instances in which either **ser** or **estar** may be used, according to the meaning we wish to give to the construction. For instance, *I am of the same opinion*, may be translated, *Soy* or *Estoy* del mismo parecer; but with **ser** an unalterable state of opinion is meant, whereas with **estar** only *casual* opinion is expressed. Again, *Eso es muy alto*, and *Eso está muy alto* (That is very high). The first expression refers to something that is *lofty in stature*, &c., but the second, to something *placed or located very high*. Some adjectives also vary their meaning, according as they are employed with **ser** or **estar**. Ex.:

Ser bueno. **Estar** bueno.

To *be* good. To *be* well.

Ser vivo. **Estar** vivo.

To *be* lively. To *be* alive.

Ser despierto. **Estar** despierto.

To *be* vigilant. To *be* awake.

Ser malo. **Estar** malo.

To *be* wicked. To *be* ill.

Exercise on the Verbs Ser and Estar

VOCABULARY

el hierro, the iron.

blando, soft.

duro, hard.

la cereza, the cherry.

maduro, ripe.

la naranja, the orange.

sano, wholesome.

la uva, the grape.

todavía, yet.

agrio, sour.

enojado, angry.

aunque, although.

enfermizo, infirm.

engaño, deceit.

odioso, odious.
 lisonja, flattery.
 despreciado, despised.
 ciego, blind.
 pálido, pale.
 espantado, frightened.
 pobre, poor.
 estropeado, crippled.
 allí, there.
 agitado, agitated.
 sosegado, quiet.
 ahora, now.
 dócil, tractable.
 satisfecho, satisfied.
 colocación, situation.
 muebles, furniture.
 el sombrero, the hat.
 el recado, the message.
 la taza, the cup.
 la levita, the coat.
 la quimera, the quarrel.
 la envidia, the envy.
 despreciable, despicable.
 amado, beloved.
 todo el mundo, everybody.

triste, dull.
 cansado, tiresome, tired.
 el deseo, the wish, desire.
 la manera, the manner.
 el sueño, the dream.
 el heredero, the heir.
 el precio, the price.
 el error, the mistake.
 la piedra, the stone.
 el viaje, the journey.
 la cruz, the cross.
 el pájaro, the bird.
 la virtud, the virtue.
 la aldea, the village.
 el edificio, the building, edifice.
 lastimoso, -a, sorry, sad.
 precioso, -a, precious.
 cierto, -a, certain.
 colmado, -a, filled.
 mirar, to look at.
 alcanzar, to obtain, to get.
 muerto, died (*p.p.*), dead.
 tarde, late.
 estudiar, to study.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

Iron is hard. How soft this iron is already (*ya*). These cherries are not ripe. The orange is a very wholesome fruit (*fruta, f.*). These grapes are yet sour. He is a very kind man (*benigno*), but how angry he was! Although he has been ill for some time (*hace tiempo*), nevertheless (*sin embargo*) he is not an infirm man. Deceit is odious. Flattery should be despised. He has been blind these (*hace*) three months. She is very pale. They were frightened. He is a poor cripple. If they should be there, tell them that I shall be at home (*en casa*) the whole day (*todo el día*). He was much agitated; but he is more quiet now. He is very tractable (*afable*), and is satisfied with his situation. The house is mine, but the furniture is his. Is this hat yours?—No; it is my brother's. The message was for him. This is a silver cup. The coat is of super-

fine cloth. What is he doing? He is sleeping. Quarrels are detestable, and envy is despicable. She is beloved by everybody. He is a very dull man. We were dull the whole day. How tiresome he is! We are very tired. The building is very far (*lejos*) from the village. Where was (*Def.*) the son of the widow? Why are you not satisfied with (*con*) your situation? If you were in Madrid, your situation would be more favourable. This man has always been very happy (*feliz*), although (*aunque*) he is not at present satisfied with his (*su*) situation. I was just reading a book, when (*cuando*) my brother came (*vino*).

In Spanish the meaning of a verb is negated by prefixing *no* to it, as: I do not think, (*Yo*) *no pienso*. Your (polite mode) is expressed *el . . . de Vd.* (the . . . of you), or more elegantly *su . . . de Vd.* (your . . . of you).

THE REGULAR VERBS

Most Spanish verbs consist of stem and terminal syllables—the stem, or root-syllable, being the part which remains after cutting off the infinitive endings. Those are considered *regular* which, in conjugation, inflect the terminal syllable only, *not* the stem. They are divided into three conjugations, according to the endings of their infinitives. Those ending in:

-ar are of the 1st conjugation;

-er „ 2nd „

-ir „ 3rd „

In the following paradigms they are tabulated together in order that their characteristics may be clearly shown.

There are a considerable number of verbs which, although conjugated according to the above paradigm, nevertheless undergo the following orthographical changes in order to retain their *regular* pronunciation:—Before the terminal *-e*, verbs with infinitives ending in *-gar*, insert *u* after the final *g* of the stem; those in *-car* change *c* into *qu*; and those in *-zar* change *z* into *c*.

FIRST CONJUGATION -ar	SECOND CONJUGATION -er	THIRD CONJUGATION -ir
	INFINITIVE	
<i>Pres.</i> habl-ar, to speak. <i>Ferf.</i> haber hablado, to have spoken. <i>Fut.</i> haber de habl-ar, to have to speak.	tem-er, to fear. haber temido, to have feared. haber de temer, to have to fear.	viv-ir, to live. haber vivido, to have lived. haber de vivir, to have to live.
	GERUND	
<i>Pres.</i> habl-and-o, speaking. <i>Ferf.</i> habiendo hablado, having spoken. <i>Fut.</i> habiendo de habl-ar, having to speak.	tem-iendo, fearing. habiendo temido, having feared. habiendo de temer, having to fear.	viv-iendo, living. habiendo vivido, having lived. habiendo de vivir, having to live.
	PAST PARTICIPLE	
habl-ado, spoken.	tem-ido, feared.	viv-ido, lived.
	INDICATIVE	
	SIMPLE TENSES	
	<i>Present</i>	
habl-o, I speak. -as, thou speakest. -a, he speaks. -amos, we speak. -áis, you speak. -an, they speak.	tem-o, I fear. -es, thou fearest. -e, he fears. -emos, we fear. -éis, you fear. -en, they fear.	viv-o, I live. -es, thou livest. -e, he lives. -imos, we live. -ís, you live. -en, they live.

Imperfect

habl-**aba**, I spoke.
 -**abas**, thou speakest.
 -**aba**, he spoke.
 -**ábamos**, we spoke.
 -**abais**, you spoke.
 -**aban**, they spoke.

tem-**ía**, I feared.
 -**ías**, thou fearest.
 -**ía**, he feared.
 -**íamos**, we feared.
 -**iais**, you feared.
 -**ían**, they feared.

viv-**ía**, I lived.
 -**ías**, thou livest.
 -**ía**, he lived.
 -**íamos**, we lived.
 -**iais**, you lived.
 -**ían**, they lived.

Past Definite

habl-**é**, I spoke.
 -**aste**, thou spokest.
 -**ó**, he spoke.
 -**amos**, we spoke.
 -**asteis**, you spoke.
 -**aron**, they spoke.

tem-**í**, I feared.
 -**iste**, thou feared.
 -**ó**, he feared.
 -**imos**, we feared.
 -**isteis**, you feared.
 -**ieron**, they feared.

viv-**í**, I lived.
 -**iste**, thou livest.
 -**ó**, he lived.
 -**imos**, we lived.
 -**isteis**, you lived.
 -**ieron**, they lived.

Future

habl-**aré**, I shall speak.
 -**arás**, thou wilt speak.
 -**ará**, he will speak.
 -**aremos**, we shall speak.
 -**aréis**, you will speak.
 -**arán**, they will speak.

tem-**eré**, I shall fear.
 -**erás**, thou wilt fear.
 -**erá**, he will fear.
 -**eremos**, we shall fear.
 -**eréis**, you will fear.
 -**erán**, they will fear.

viv-**iré**, I shall live.
 -**irás**, thou wilt live.
 -**irá**, he will live.
 -**iremos**, we shall live.
 -**iréis**, you will live.
 -**irán**, they will live.

Conditional

habl-**aría**, I should speak.
 -**arías**, thou wouldst speak.
 -**aría**, he would speak.
 -**aríamos**, we should speak.
 -**aríais**, you would speak.
 -**arían**, they would speak.

tem-**ería**, I should fear.
 -**erías**, thou wouldst fear.
 -**ería**, he would fear.
 -**eríamos**, we should fear.
 -**eríais**, you would fear.
 -**erían**, they would fear.

viv-**iría**, I should live.
 -**irías**, thou wouldst live.
 -**iría**, he would live.
 -**iríamos**, we should live.
 -**iríais**, you would live.
 -**irían**, they would live.

SUBJUNCTIVE

SIMPLE TENSES

Present

que (yo), that

tem-a, I fear or may fear.

-as, thou fear.

-a, he fear.

-amos, we fear.

-áis, you fear.

-an, they fear.

viv-a, I live or may live.

-as, thou live.

-a, he live.

-amos, we live.

-áis, you live.

-an, they live.

Imperfect

que or si (yo), that or if

tem-iese, I feared or might fear.

-ieses, thou feared.

-iese, he feared.

-iésemos, we feared.

-ierais, you feared.

-iesen, they feared.

viv-iese, I lived or might live.

-ieses, thou lived.

-iese, he lived.

-iésemos, we lived.

-ierais, you lived.

-iesen, they lived.

Past Definite. [None.]*Future*

que or si (yo), that or if

tem-iere, I (shall) speak.

-ieres, thou (wilt) speak.

-iere, he (will) speak.

-iéremos, we (shall) speak.

-ierais, you (will) speak.

-ieren, they (will) speak.

viv-iere, I (shall) speak.

-ieres, thou (wilt) speak.

-iere, he (will) speak.

-iéremos, we (shall) speak.

-ierais, you (will) speak.

-ieren, they (will) speak.

habl-e, I speak or may speak.

-es, thou spoke.

-e, he spoke.

-emos, we spoke.

-áis, you speak.

-an, they speak.

habl-ase, I spoke or might speak.

-ases, thou spoke.

-ase, he spoke.

-ásemos, we spoke.

-arais, you spoke.

-asen, they spoke.

habl-are, I (shall) speak.

-ares, thou (wilt) speak.

-are, he (will) speak.

-áremos, we (shall) speak.

-arais, you (will) speak.

-aren, they (will) speak.

Conditional

que or si (yo), that or if

habl-ara, I should speak.

-aras, thou wouldst speak.

-ara, he would speak.

-áramos, we should speak.

-arais, you would speak.

-aran, they would speak.

tem-iera, I should speak.

-ieras, thou wouldst speak.

-iera, he would speak.

-iéramos, we should speak.

-ierais, you would speak.

-ieran, they would speak.

viv-iera, I should speak.

-ieras, thou wouldst speak.

-iera, he would speak.

-iéramos, we should speak.

-ierais, you would speak.

-ieran, they would speak.

COMPOUND TENSES

SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Indefinite

que (yo), that

he habl-ado, I have spoken.

has habl-ado, thou hast spoken.

ha tem-ido, he has feared.

hemos tem-ido, we have feared.

habéis viv-ido, you have lived.

han viv-ido, they have lived.

haya habl-ado, I have spoken or may have spoken.

hayas habl-ado, thou have spoken.

haya tem-ido, he has feared.

hayamos tem-ido, we have feared.

hayáis viv-ido, you have lived.

hayán viv-ido, they have lived.

Pluperfect

había habl-ado, I had spoken.

habías habl-ado, thou hadst spoken.

había tem-ido, he had feared.

habíamos tem-ido, we had feared.

habíais viv-ido, you had lived.

habían viv-ido, they had lived.

hubiese habl-ado, I had spoken or might have spoken.

hubieses habl-ado, thou hadst spoken.

hubiese tem-ido, he had feared.

hubiésemos tem-ido, we had feared.

hubieseis viv-ido, you had lived.

hubiesen viv-ido, they had lived.

Second Pluperfect

hubie habl-ado, I had spoken.
 hubiste habl-ado, thou hadst spoken.
 hubo tem-ido, he had feared.
 hubimos tem-ido, we had feared.
 hubisteis viv-ido, you had lived.
 hubieron viv-ido, they had lived.

[None.]

Future Perfect

habré habl-ado, I shall have spoken.
 habrás habl-ado, thou wilt have spoken.
 habrá tem-ido, he will have feared.
 habrémos tem-ido, we shall have feared.
 habréis viv-ido, you will have lived.
 habrán viv-ido, they will have lived.

que or si (yo), that or if
 hubiere habl-ado, I (shall) have spoken.
 hubieres habl-ado, thou (wilt) have spoken.
 hubiere tem-ido, he (will) have feared.
 hubiéremos tem-ido, we (shall) have feared.
 hubierais viv-ido, you (will) have lived.
 hubieren viv-ido, they (will) have lived.

Perfect Conditional

habría habl-ado, I should have spoken.
 habrias habl-ado, thou wouldst have spoken.
 habría tem-ido, he would have feared.
 habríamos tem-ido, we should have feared.
 habríais viv-ido, you would have lived.
 habrían viv-ido, they would have lived.

que or si (yo), that or if
 hubiera habl-ado, I should have spoken.
 hubieras habl-ado, thou wouldst have spoken.
 hubiera tem-ido, he would have feared.
 hubiéramos tem-ido, we should have feared.
 hubierais viv-ido, you would have lived.
 hubieran viv-ido, they would have lived.

IMPERATIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION

habl-a, speak (thou) (*fam. sing.*).
 no habl-es, do not speak (*fam. sing.*).
 habl-e Vd., speak (*pol. sing.*).
 no habl-e Vd., do not speak (*pol. sing.*).
 habl-emos, let us speak.
 no habl-emos, do not let us speak.
 habl-ad, speak (ye) (*fam. pl.*).
 no habl-áis, do not speak (*fam. pl.*).
 habl-en Vds., speak (*pol. pl.*).
 no habl-en Vds., do not speak (*pol. pl.*).

SECOND CONJUGATION

tem-e, tear (thou) (*fam. sing.*).
 no tem-as, do not tear (*fam. sing.*).
 tem-a Vd., fear (*pol. sing.*).
 no tem-a Vd., do not fear (*pol. sing.*).
 tem-amos, let us fear.
 no tem-amos, do not let us fear.
 tem-ed, fear (ye) (*fam. pl.*).
 no tem-áis, do not fear (*fam. pl.*).
 tem-an Vds., fear (*pol. pl.*).
 no tem-an Vds., do not fear (*pol. pl.*).

THIRD CONJUGATION

viv-e, live (thou) (*fam. sing.*).
 viv-a Vd., live (*pol. sing.*).
 viv-amos, let us live.
 viv-id, live (ye) (*fam. pl.*).
 viv-an Vds., live (*pol. pl.*).
 no viv-as, do not live (*fam. sing.*).
 no viv-a Vd., do not live (*pol. sing.*).
 no viv-amos, do not let us live.
 no viv-áis, do not live (*fam. pl.*).
 no viv-an Vds., do not live (*pol. pl.*).

Exercise on the Moods and Tenses of Verbs (Infinitive)

VOCABULARY

correr, to run.
 cantar, to sing.
 pasear, to walk.
 comer, to eat.
 vender, to sell.
 enviar, to send.
 escribir, to write.
 observar, to observe.
 sacrificar, to sacrifice.
 aprender, to learn.
 estudiar, to study.
 empezar, to begin.
 llegar, to arrive.
 florecer, to flourish.
 consultar, to consult.
 socorrer, to relieve.
 hablar, to speak.
 quedar, to remain.
 creer, to believe.
 trabajar, to work.
 cuidar, to care.
 prometer, to promise.
 partir, to depart.
 mencionar, to mention.
 ofender, to offend.
 ver, to see.
 mandar, to command, order.
 celebrar, to rejoice.
 oír, to hear.

pretender, to pretend.
 gustar, to like.
 sorprender, to surprise.
 librar, to free.
 impedir, to prevent.
 escuchar, to listen.
 lograr, to succeed.
 pagar, to pay.
 reflexionar, to reflect.
 considerar, to consider.
 concluir, to conclude.
 discurrir, to discourse.
 entrar, to enter.
 acabar, to finish.
 imaginar, to imagine.
 recompensar, to reward.
 responder, to answer.
 pasar, to pass.
 omitir, to omit.
 velar, to watch.
 permitir, to permit.
 resolver, to resolve.
 suprimir, to suppress.
 pensar, to think.
 soler, to be accustomed.
 agradar, to gratify.
 intentar, to intend.
 preferir, to prefer.
 llover, to rain.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

The boys run. She sings. The ladies are walking.
 He is eating it. They are selling them. The English
 send their ships to all parts of the world. He writes much.
 He plays on the flute (*flauta*). I do think so. He does
 not dine early (*temprano*), but she does. You do not
 observe it, but I do. The pagans (*paganos*) sacrificed

victims (*victima*) to their gods. Solon was one of the seven sages (*sabio*) of Greece, and studied at Athens. Plato (*Platon*) studied under (*bajo*) Socrates, after whose death (*muerte*) he began his travels (*viaje*) through (*por*) Greece: he afterwards (*después*) went to Egypt, where (*donde*), at that period (*período*), flourished Theodorus. I was breakfasting (*almorzando*) when you arrived. She consulted him, and so did I. He did not relieve them, but she did. I shall speak to him to-morrow. He shall remain here (*aquí*) if he likes. I will surmount (*vencer*) every difficulty (*dificultad*). I will surprise them. Will he sacrifice his interests in this manner? Shall we study our lesson? He *will* remain, and there is no (*no hay*) remedy (*remedio*). You *shall* not take it (*tomar*). We *shall* free them, and nothing shall prevent us. He *will* not listen, but she will. We shall succeed; shall we not? They have paid me. They had not reflected. I have not considered it. He had concluded his discourse when we entered. I had scarcely finished when he began. I imagine he may have the same views. Perhaps (*puede que*) he may reward her. I fear he may not answer me. Even though (*aún cuando*) he should believe it. Although (*aunque*) he might read much, he would learn but little. If he should pass by this way (*por aquí*) I would call him. You may omit what you please. I can work now, but I could not then. He would watch the whole night. They should take care of (*cuidar*) her. You should promise, and so should she. He might permit me; might he not? I expect to depart to-morrow. I resolved not to mention it. Speak thou to him. Let them promise me. Suppress your tears (*lágrima*). Let him not sell them.

READING EXERCISE

Mi situación es muy lastimosa. Esta cruz de oro estaba adornada de piedras preciosas. La necesidad es la madre de las invenciones. Ya es de noche, ¡á Dios! La vida es un sueño. Es una cosa deliciosa vivir en la compañía

de un buen amigo. El deseo de alcanzar fama es activo en muchos hombres. Sería muy hermoso este viaje, si no hiciese tanto calor (*were it not so hot*). La corona es del rey. El caballo era mio. Este vino es de España. Estas ruedas (*wheels*) son para un coche. La flor es para ella. La carta es para Escocia (*Scotland*). Esta máquina es para copiar cartas. El estaba en la calle. El era en la calle. El reo (*culprit*) está delante del juez (*judge*). Yo estaré á la puerta (*door*). El desertor estaba entre (*between*) dos soldados. Estoy escribiendo (*writing*). Ella estaba leyendo (*reading*). El estará predicando (*preaching*). El vestido es de paño (*cloth*). Las medias (*stockings*) eran de seda. Los candeleros (*candlesticks*) son de plata (*silver*). La mesa es de caoba (*mahogany*). La leche está ágría (*sour*). El plomo (*lead*) está derretido (*melted*). El agua está caliente (*warm*). La carne estaba asada (*roasted*). El temor (*fear*) de Dios es el principio (*beginning*) de la sabiduría (*wisdom*). Perdonar las injurias es obrar (*to act*) como Cristianos. ¿Quién soy yo? Yo soy un hombre humilde (*humble*). Estoy enfadado (*angry*). Estoy contento (*pleased*). La muerte es terrible. Estoy enojado con Vd. Madrid es una ciudad bonita, noble y rica. ¿Qué tal es el clima de Inglaterra? Es bastante bueno, los inviernos no son muy severos, pero muy largos, mientras que los veranos y otoños son agradables y poco variables. El Señor M. es un buen profesor.

READING EXERCISE

Verb Drill

¿Qué están haciendo Vds., Señores? Estamos contando (*counting*) nuestro dinero. ¿Lo han hallado? No, amigo mio, trabajamos y lo ganamos. ¿Donde trabajan Vds.? Trabajamos en un almacén de muebles (*we work in a furniture store*). Mi tío maneja el ascensor (*lift*) y yo abro (*open*) y cierro (*close*) la puerta para los parro-

quianos (*customers*). ¿Es una casa al por mayor? (*is it a wholesale house?*) Vendemos (*we sell*) al por mayor y al por menor (*retail*). En el primer piso (*first floor*) tenemos mesas (*tables*), sillas (*chairs*), mecedoras (*rocking-chairs*), pupitres (*desks*), y aparadores (*sideboards*). En el segundo piso hay alfombras (*carpets*), cuadros (*pictures*), cortinas (*curtains*), ropa de cama (*bedding*), y otras cosas. Tenemos quincallería (*hardware*) en el tercer (*third*) piso, toda clase (*all kinds*) de estufas (*stoves*) y utensilios (*utensils*) para cocina (*kitchen*). Embarcamos (*we ship*) muchos muebles para Sur America. Nuestros principales (*employers*) son muy buenos con nosotros, y nos esforzamos por agradarlos (*and we try to please them*). ¿Les pagan á Vds. buen salario? Sí. Yo gano trescientas libras esterlinas anuales, por saber el Español é Ingles, que son las dos principales lenguas comerciales. ¿Por qué tienen estos dependientes tan buen éxito? (*successful*). Porque ellos se empeñan (*they try*) en complacer (*to please*) á su maestro (*teacher*), y estudiar bien la lengua castellana (*Spanish language, Castillian*). Este café es excelente. La crema (*cream*) es muy pura (*is very rich*). Sí; lo es. Tenemos una vaca (*cow*) de Jersey. Estas uvas (*grapes*) son de nuestro huerto (*are from our orchard*).

CONVERSATION

I am in a great dilemma.

This is a difficult matter.

They are not at his disposal.

We could harbour no doubt.

I have changed my mind.

He gave an absolute promise.

What can be his object?

You do not consider me at all.

There is no doubt about it.

I have warned him earnestly.

I hope it will end well.

Me encuentro en un grande embrazo.

Este es un asunto difícil.

No están á su disposición.

No nos cabia duda.

He mudado de pensar.

Dió una promesa positiva.

¿Qué mira puede llevar?

No me toma Vd. absolutamente en cuenta.

No hay duda de ello.

Le he advertido seriamente.

Espero que acabará favorablemente,

He must have confused. the names.

It is still doubtful.

All our endeavours have been without effect.

Either way will do.

He manages to make both ends meet.

I shall endeavour to satisfy you.

At last, I had to give it up.

We shall bear it in mind.

What follows next?

In consideration of this circumstance.

You confound the one with the other.

I gave you clearly to understand.

You are very careless of your money.

This exceeds all bounds.

Debe haber confundido los nombres.

Es aún dudoso.

Todos nuestros esfuerzos han sido ineficaces.

De uno ú otro modo satisfecerá.

Consigue atar cabos.

Procuraré darle satisfacción.

Por fin, tuve que desistir.

Lo tendremos presente.

¿Qué sigue?

En consideración de esta circunstancia.

Vd. confunde uno con otro.

Le he explicado á Vd. claramente.

Es Vd. muy descuidado con su dinero.

Esto pasa de los limites.

CONJUGATION OF A REFLEXIVE VERB

INFINITIVE

Present: **lavarse**, to wash one's self.

Perfect: **haberse lavado**, to have washed one's self.

Future: **haberse de lavar**, to have to wash one's self.

GERUND

Present: **lavándose**, washing one's self.

Perfect: **habiéndose lavado**, having washed one's self.

Future: **habiéndose de lavar**, having to wash one's self.

PAST PARTICIPLE

lavádose, washed one's self.

SIMPLE TENSES

INDICATIVE

Present

yo me lavo, I wash myself.

tú te lavas, thou wasthest thyself.

él } **se lava**, he (&c.) washes
ella } himself.
Vd. }

SUBJUNCTIVE

que—that

yo me lave, I wash or may wash myself.

tú te laves, thou wash thyself.

él } **se lave**, he (&c.) wash him-
ella } self.
Vd. }

nosotros (-as) nos lavamos, we wash ourselves.

vosotros (-as) os laváis, you wash yourselves.

ellos } **se lavan**, they (&c.) wash
ellas } themselves.
Vds. }

nosotros (-as) nos lavemos, we wash ourselves.

vosotros (-as) os lavéis, you wash yourselves.

ellos } **se laven**, they (&c.) wash
ellas } themselves.
Vds. }

Imperfect

me lavaba, I washed myself.

te lavabas, thou washed thyself.

se lavaba, he washed himself.

nos lavábamos, we washed ourselves.

os lavabais, you washed yourselves.

se lavaban, they washed themselves.

que or si (yo), that or if

me lavase, I washed or might wash myself.

te lavase, thou washed thyself.

se lavase, he washed himself.

nos lavásemos, we washed ourselves.

os lavaseis, you washed yourselves.

se lavasen, they washed themselves.

Past Definite

me lavé, I washed myself.

te lavaste, thou washedst thyself.

se lavó, he washed himself.

nos lavamos, we washed ourselves.

os lavasteis, you washed yourselves.

se lavaron, they washed themselves.

[None.]

Future

me lavaré, I shall wash myself.

te lavarás, thou wilt wash thyself.

se lavará, he will wash himself.

nos lavaremos, we shall wash ourselves.

os lavaréis, you will wash yourselves.

se lavarán, they will wash themselves.

que or si (yo), that or if

me lavare, I (shall) wash myself.

te lavares, thou (wilt) wash thyself.

se lavare, he (will) wash himself.

nos laváremos, we (shall) wash ourselves.

os lavareis, you (will) wash yourselves.

se lavaren, they (will) wash themselves.

Conditional

me **lavaría**, I should wash myself.
 te **lavarías**, thou wouldst wash thyself.
 se **lavaría**, he would wash himself.
 nos **lavaríamos**, we should wash ourselves.
 os **lavaríais**, you would wash yourselves.
 se **lavarían**, they would wash themselves.

que or **si (yo)**, that or if
 me **lavara**, I should wash myself.
 te **lavaras**, thou wouldst wash thyself.
 se **lavara**, he would wash himself.
 nos **laváramos**, we should wash ourselves.
 os **lavarais**, you would wash yourselves.
 se **lavarán**, they would wash themselves.

IMPERATIVE

Affirmative

lávate, wash thyself (*fam. sing.*).
lávese Vd., wash yourself (*pol. sing.*).
lavémonos, let us wash ourselves.
laváos, wash yourselves (*fam. pl.*).
lávense Vds., wash yourselves (*pol. pl.*).

Negative

no te laves, do not wash thyself (*fam. sing.*).
no se lave Vd., do not wash yourself (*pol. sing.*).
no nos lavemos, do not let us wash ourselves.
no os lavéis, do not wash yourselves (*fam. pl.*).
no se laven Vds., do not wash yourselves (*pol. pl.*).

COMPOUND TENSES

INDICATIVE

Past Indefinite

me **he**, te **has**, se **ha**.
 nos **hemos**, os **habéis**, se **han** lavado.

SUBJUNCTIVE

que (**yo**)
 me **haya**, te **hayas**, se **haya**.
 nos **hayamos**, os **hayáis**, se **hayan** lavado.

Pluperfect

me **había**, te **habías**.
 se **había**, &c., lavado.

si (yo)
 me **hubiese**, te **hubieses**.
 se **hubiese**, &c., lavado.

Second Pluperfect

me **hube**, te **hubiste**.
 se **hubo**, &c., lavado.

[None.]

Future Perfect

me habré, te habrás.
se habrá, &c., lavado.

que or si (yo)
me hubiere, te hubieras.
se hubiere, &c., lavado.

Perfect Conditional

me habría, te habrías.
se habría, &c., lavado.

me hubiera, te hubieras.
se hubiera, &c., lavado.

CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB

INFINITIVE

Present: ser amado, -os, -as, to be loved.

Perfect: haber sido amado, -a, &c., to have been loved.

Future: haber de ser amado, -a, &c., to have to be loved.

GERUND

siendo amado, -a, &c., being loved.

PAST PARTICIPLE

sido amado, -a, &c., having been loved.

SIMPLE TENSES

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

soy, eres, es amado, -a, I am loved
or I am being loved, &c.
somos, sois, son amados, -as, we
are loved, &c.

que (yo)
sea, seas, sea amado, -a, that I be
loved or may be loved, &c.
seamos, seáis, sean amados, -as,
that we be loved, &c.

Imperfect

era, eras, era amado, -a, I was
loved, &c.

éramos, erais, eran amados, -as.

que or si (yo)
fuese, fueses, fuese amado, -a, that
or if I were loved or might be
loved, &c.
fuésemos, fueseis, fuesen amados,
-as.

Past Definite

fui, fuiste, fué amado, -a, I was
loved, &c.

fuimos, fuisteis, fueron amados, -as.

[None.]

Future

seré, serás, será amado, -a, I shall be loved, &c. seremos, seréis, serán amados, -as.	que or si (yo) fuere, fueres, fuere amado, -a, that or if I (shall) be loved, &c. fuéremos, fuereis, fueren amados, -as.
---	---

Conditional

sería, serías, sería amado, -a, I should be loved, &c. seríamos, seríais, serían amados, -as.	que or si (yo) fuera, fueras, fuera amado, -a, that or if I should be loved, &c. fuéramos, fuerais, fueran amados, -as.
--	--

IMPERATIVE

<i>Affirmative</i>	<i>Negative</i>
sé amado, -a, be loved (<i>fam. sing.</i>).	no seas amado, -a, don't be loved (<i>fam. sing.</i>).
sea Vd. amado, -a, be loved (<i>pol. sing.</i>).	no sea Vd. amado, -a, do not be loved (<i>pol. sing.</i>).
seamos amados, -as, let us be loved.	no seamos amados, -as, do not let us be loved.
sed amados, -as, be loved (<i>fam. pl.</i>).	no seáis amados, -as, don't be loved (<i>fam. pl.</i>).
sean Vds. amados, -as, be loved (<i>pol. pl.</i>).	no sean Vds. amados, -as, do not be loved (<i>pol. pl.</i>).

COMPOUND TENSES

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Past Indefinite</i>	
he, has, ha sido amado, -a, I have been loved, &c.	que (yo) haya, hayas, haya sido amado, -a, that or if I have been loved or may have been loved, &c. hayamos, hayáis, hayan sido amados, -as.

Pluperfect

había, habías, había sido amado, -a, I had been loved, &c.	que or si (yo) hubiese, hubieses, hubiese sido amado, -a, that or if I had been loved or might have been loved, &c.
---	--

Second Pluperfect

hube, hubiste, hubo sido amado, -a,
I had been loved, &c.

[None.]

Future Perfect

habré, habrás, habrá sido amado,
-a, I shall have been loved, &c.

que or si (yo)
hubiere, hubieres, hubiere sido
amado, -a, that or if I (shall)
have been loved, &c.

habremos, habréis, habrán sido, &c.

Perfect Conditional

habría, habrías, habría sido amado,
-a, I should have been loved,
&c.

que or si (yo)
hubiera, hubieras, hubiera sido
amado, -a, that or if I should
have been loved, &c.

CONJUGATION OF LEER, TO READ

Present Infinitive: leer, to read.*Gerund*: leyendo (instead of leyendo).*Past Participle*: leído.

INDICATIVE

Pres. leo, lees, lee.

leemos, leéis, leen.

Impf. leía, leías, leía.

leíamos, leíais, leían.

Past } leí, leíste, leyó.*Def.* } leímos, leísteis, leyeron.*Fut.* leeré, leerás, leerá, &c.*Cond.* leería, leerías, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE

lea, leas, lea.

leamos, leáis, lean.

leyese, &c.

[None.]

leyere, &c.

leyera, &c.

IMPERATIVE

lee.

lea Vd.

leamos.

leed.

lean Vds.

no leas.

no lea Vd.

no leamos.

no leáis.

no lean Vds.

CONJUGATION OF AN IMPERSONAL VERB

granizar, to hail.

GERUND

granizando.

PAST PARTICIPLE

granizado.

	INDICATIVE	SIMPLE TENSES	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	graniza, it hails.		(que) granice.
<i>Imperf.</i>	granizaba.		(que or si) granizase.
<i>Def.</i>	granizó.		None.
<i>Fut.</i>	granizará.		(que or si) granizare.
<i>Cond.</i>	granizaría.		(que or si) granizara.

COMPOUND TENSES

ha, había, hubo, } granizado.	(que or si) haya, hubiese, } grani-
habría, habría, } granizado.	(que or si) hubiere, hubiera, } zado.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE PASSIVE VOICE

A *reflexive* verb in the *third* person singular or plural, in any of the moods and tenses, is often employed in Spanish when the meaning intended to be conveyed by it is *passive*; for instance, *Ten men were employed*, is frequently translated, *Se emplearon diez hombres*, instead of *Diez hombres fueron empleados*; and, *The necessary precautions have been taken*, might be translated, *Se han tomado las precauciones necesarias*, as well as, *Las precauciones necesarias han sido tomadas*. Nevertheless, the learner should be very cautious how he employs this manner of expressing the *passive* voice, for fear of rendering his sentences ambiguous. We see that the first example, *Se emplearon diez hombres*, might be either taken for *Ten men were employed* or *Ten men employed themselves*. In the second example, however, no ambiguity can arise from employing the verb in either manner, since, as it is impossible for the precautions to take themselves, we must understand that the sense intended to be conveyed is that the precautions *were taken*.

However, as this manner of forming the passive voice with the pronoun *se* is so frequently made use of in Spanish, the pupil is recommended to make himself as familiar as possible with the peculiarity, by directing his attention to it while reading. Observe the following examples:

Mañana se venderá la casa.
Los muchachos se esperan esta
noche.

Qué se ha de hacer?
No se puede remediar.

En su glorioso reinado se ejer-
citaron todas las artes de la
paz y de la guerra, y se vieron
los accidentes de ámbas for-
tunas, próspera y adversa.

Debió mucho á este Principe
la lengua Castellana; pues
ademas de haberla ilustrado
con la pluma, mandó se usase
en todos los decretos y privi-
legios reales, y en las escri-
turas públicas, que ántes se
escribian en Latin.

The house *will be sold* to-morrow.
 The boys *are expected* to-night.

What *is to be done?*
 It *cannot be helped*.

In his glorious reign (Ferdinand
 V.'s) all the arts of peace and war
were practised, and the chances
 of both adverse and prosperous
 fortune *were witnessed*.

The Castilian language owed
 much to this prince (Alphonsus
 X); for besides having enriched
 it with his pen, he commanded
 that it *should be used* in all the
 royal orders and permissions,
 and in all public documents,
 which *were formerly written* in
 Latin.

In translating a complete passive sentence, such as,
Wisdom is praised by all, if it be done with the verb **ser**,
 the ablative **todos** (all) may be governed by the preposition
de or **por**; but if it be constructed with the pronoun **se**,
 then the ablative can only be governed by **por**. Ex.:
La sabiduría es alabada de, or *por todos*: *La sabiduría se*
alaba por todos.—GRAMMAR of the SPANISH ACADEMY.

NOTE.—The pronoun **se**, with the third person sin-
 gular of the *active* voice, is employed in Spanish in all
 vague and general reports. Ex.:

Se dice que, &c.
Se cree que la noticia es verda-
dera.
Se habla de guerra.
Se dice que es grande orador.

They say, or it is said that, &c.
 It is believed that the news is
 true.
 War is spoken of.
 He is said to be a great orator.

The active voice alone, without the pronoun **se**, may
 also be employed with the like expressions, in the follow-
 ing manner:

Dicen que, &c.
Creen que la noticia es verdadera.
Hablan de guerra.
Dicen que es grande orador.

They say that, &c.
 They believe that the news is true.
 They speak of war.
 They say he is a great orator.

The pronoun **se**, with a verb in the third person, is also sometimes used as an equivalent for *one* in sense of *anyone, any person*. Ex.: *Se necesita descanso despues del trabajo* (One requires rest after labour).

The same pronoun is sometimes also used as occupying the place of some third person before a pronoun in the dative or accusative case; as, *Se me pregunta si*, &c. (I am asked if, &c.). *Se le busca á Vd.* (You are enquired for). *Se me ha pasado de la memoria* (It has escaped my memory).

Exercise on Reflexive and Passive Verbs

VOCABULARY

la melancolía, the melancholy.
 el delito, the crime.
 el enemigo, the enemy.
 siempre, always.
 alabar, to praise.
 ofender, to offend.
 estimar, to esteem.
 conocido, acquaintance.
 proteger, to protect.
 atacar, to attack.
 declarar, to declare.
 apresar, to capture.
 la comedia, the comedy.
 el tratado, the treaty.
 el comercio, the commerce.
 pasear, to walk.
 el sol, the sun.
 acostarse, to go to bed, to lie down.
 alegrarse, to rejoice at something.
 el criado, the servant.
 sentó plaza, he has enlisted.
 pagar, to pay.
 mentir, to lie.
 la salida del sol, the sunrise.
 la puesta del sol, the sunset.
 la hora, the hour.
 cortar, to cut.

adular, to flatter.
 inocente, innocent.
 elegir, to elect.
 comitiva, committee.
 convencer, to convince.
 la verdad, the truth.
 acusar, to accuse.
 basta, it is sufficient.
 sospechar, to suspect.
 emplear, to employ.
 la calle, the street.
 empedrar, to pave.
 derribar, to throw down.
 representar, to perform.
 el músico, the musician.
 barrer, to sweep.
 hacer, to make.
 llegar, to arrive.
 el cuchillo, the knife.
 el pan, the bread.
 el dedo, the finger.
 el abogado, the lawyer.
 la escoba, the broom.
 la felicidad, the happiness.
 la madera, the wood.
 al contrario, on the contrary.
 el suelo, the floor.
 la luna, the moon.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

He gives himself up to melancholy. They accuse themselves (*ellos mismos*) of the crime. You will hurt (*lastimarse*) yourself. Do not trouble yourself (*moles-tarse*). He freed himself (*librarse*) from the enemy. They had wounded (*herirse*) one another. They have always praised (*alabarse*) each other. If they should offend (*ofenderse*) one another. Let us seat (*sentarse*) ourselves down here. Comfort (*consolarse*) yourselves, my children. She is esteemed by her acquaintances. He was protected by them. They were attacked by the enemy. That they may be declared innocent. That I might be elected by the committee. Let us be convinced of the truth. To be accused it is sufficient (*basta*) to be suspected. They were employed. The street has been paved. Having been captured, the houses were thrown down. A new comedy will be performed to-morrow. Some treaty of commerce has been spoken of. It is believed to be true. He is said to be a great musician. Why has that child been praised? It has been praised because it has studied well. Why (*porqué*) has (*han*) that other child been punished? It has been (*le han*) punished because it has been naughty and idle (*holgazan*). What must one do (*qué debe hacerse*) in order not to be despised? One must be (*debe uno ser*) studious and good. What has become of your friend? He has become a lawyer. How did you like the wine? I liked it very well. Has it done you (*le ha hecho á Vd.*) good (*provecho*)? It has done me (*me ha hecho*) good. What has become of my book? I do not know what has become of it. I rejoice to hear that he is no longer ill, for I love him. Have you cut your hair? (*Se ha cortado Vd. su pelo*)? I have not cut it myself (*Yo no me lo he cortado*), but I have had it cut (*pero me lo he hecho cortar*).

NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE VERBS

VERBS USED NEGATIVELY

In Spanish the negative *no* invariably precedes the verb or its auxiliary; and should there be a pronoun of the dative or accusative case before the verb, the negative precedes both. (Observe that the auxiliary *do*, of negative and interrogative sentences, is not translated.) Ex.:

No puedo venir.

I cannot come.

No la veo.

I do not see her.

No le ha hablado.

He has not spoken to him.

If the nominative is expressed, it may be placed either before the negative particle or after the verb; thus, *Yo no puedo venir*, or *no puedo yo venir*, or *no puedo venir yo*; but never *no yo puedo venir*.

Two negatives do not destroy each other in Spanish as they do in English; on the contrary, they add strength to one another. Ex.:

No tengo *nada* que dar á Vd.

I have *nothing* to give you.

No lo sabe *nadie*.

Nobody knows it.

No lo he visto *jamás*.

I have *never* seen it.

These phrases, nevertheless, may with equal propriety, though perhaps with less energy, be expressed thus: *Nada tengo que dar á Vd.*; *Nadie lo sabe*; *Jamás lo he visto*. The *no* can never be used when any other negative precedes the verb.

There are some instances, however, in which one negative naturally destroys the other in Spanish as well as in English; thus, *No deseo verla nunca* means, I never wish to see her; but *No deseo nunca verla* means, I do not desire never to see her; signifying, by the latter expression, a wish to see her *sometimes*. And *No pretendo sino que me pague* denotes, I only pretend that he should pay me. "*No podían no ser cómplices en la usurpación de la autoridad*" means, They *could not but* be accomplices in the usurpation of the authority.

In many instances the negative **no** is seen used in Spanish by way of pleonasm when nothing of a negative sense exists; thus, *El es mas rico que no ella* (He is richer than she). *Temía no entrara y me hallaría durmiendo* (I feared he might come in and find me asleep). *Por poco no me caigo* (I was near falling). But in these and the like phrases the **no** had better be omitted.

And, on the contrary, in phrases where any portion of time is qualified by the word **todo**, the negative is frequently omitted, when the sense seems to require it to be expressed; as, *En toda la noche he podido dormir* (I have *not* been able to sleep the whole night).

VERBS USED INTERROGATIVELY

With regard to the order of construction preserved in interrogative sentences, no precise rule can be given. It is the modulation of the voice that mostly determines, in speaking, when the verb is used interrogatively; and in writing, the note of interrogation. However, in the natural order, the nominative, in interrogative sentences, when expressed, is generally placed after the verb (though not always immediately after it, unless it be a pronoun); but this order may, for energy or elegance, be inverted. If the interrogative sentence has a negative also, the negative is still always put before the verb. Ex.:

¿Sabe él que estoy aquí?

Dónde se fueron vuestras alegrías
antiguas . . . ?

¿Este es el rostro que yo ví
traspasado . . . ?

¿No te lastiman mas los lamentos
de todos esos infelices?

Does he know that I am here?

*Whither are all your former joys
gone . . . ?*

*Is this the countenance that I saw
afflicted . . . ?*

*Do not the cries of those unhappy
creatures any longer move thee
to pity?*

Exercise on Negative and Interrogative Verbs

VOCABULARY

oír, to hear.
 allí, there.
 las armas, the arms.
 aspirar, to aspire.
 defender, to defend.
 desear, to desire.
 creer, to believe.
 insultar, to insult.
 lisonjear, to flatter.
 incomodar, to trouble.
 jamas, never.
 saber, to know.
 paciencia, patience.
 conocer, to know.
 nadie, nobody.
 vender, to sell.
 responder, to answer.

llegar, to arrive.
 prestar, to lend.
 aumentar, to increase.
 confirmar, to confirm.
 premiar, to reward.
 ahorrar, to spare.
 procurar, to procure.
 pretender, to pretend.
 reportar, to report.
 publicar, to publish.
 mucho, much.
 poco, little.
 hoy, to-day.
 mañana, to-morrow.
 pasado mañana, the day after to-morrow.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

They are not the same (*mismo*). I have not heard it. She was not there. They had no arms. I do not aspire to so much. They could not defend him. We should not desire what is not ours (*nuestro*). They should not believe it. I am not engaged (*comprometer*). They were not condemned. You should not be insulted. That they may not be received. I do not flatter myself. They do not trouble themselves. I never knew it. I will never believe it. They have no patience. He knew nobody. Do not sell him anything. Do I answer well? Shall we arrive to-day? Would he lend it to me? Were they increased? Have they confirmed it? Has he been rewarded? Would they spare themselves that trouble? Have they procured nothing? Will they not pretend it? Would they not have reported him? Will they not be published?

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS

1. Active transitive verbs have the power of governing other words. The regimen, or the word governed by the verb, may be either a noun, a pronoun, or an infinitive; and it is sometimes preceded by a preposition, and sometimes not; and very frequently a different preposition is required in Spanish from the one used in English, as we have seen is the case in regard to prepositions employed with adjectives. The choice of the preposition depends chiefly on the meaning of the verb, and on the direction of its action. No *fixed* rule can possibly be given for a matter so variable and unstable as this, which constant reading alone can render familiar to the student. As likely to be of much assistance to him, however, a few general rules will here be given, in order to point out cases only wherein the two languages frequently differ in the choice of the preposition. But first we give the following examples of verbs accompanied by prepositions different from those used in English with corresponding verbs, the examples being extracted with permission from the GRAMMAR of the SPANISH ACADEMY, and their translations given in illustration of the foregoing remarks:

Comprar **al** or **del** vendedor.

Contestar **á** la pregunta.

Pedir **á** alguno.

Parecerse **á** otro.

Salvar **á** alguno del peligro.

Armarse **de** paciencia.

Mantenerse **de** yerbas.

Depender **de** alguno.

Descuidarse **de** su obligación.

Prendarse **de** alguno.

Proveer **de** víveres.

Barar **en** tierra.

Cavar la imaginación **en** alguno.

Contenerse **en** su obligación.

Extrihar **en** alguna cosa.

To purchase *of* the seller.

To answer the question.

To solicit anyone.

To resemble another.

To rescue anyone from the danger.

To arm oneself *with* patience.

To live *on* herbs.

To depend *on* anyone.

To neglect one's duty.

To be taken *with* anyone.

To provide *with* provisions.

To run *aground*.

To fix the attention *on* anyone.

To hold *to* one's contract.

To rest *on* anything.

Saltar en tierra.	To jump <i>on</i> shore.
Acertar con la casa.	To hit <i>upon</i> the house.
Desposarse con alguno.	To be betrothed <i>to</i> anyone.
Encararse con alguno.	To face anyone.
Salir con la pretensión.	To succeed <i>in</i> one's pretension.
Asparse por alguna cosa.	To be vexed <i>at</i> anything.
Atufarse por poco.	To be affronted <i>at</i> trifles.
Salir por fiador.	To stand security.
Nacer para trabajos.	To be born <i>to</i> troubles.
Prestar la dieta para la salud.	To supply the diet <i>conducive to</i> health.

2. Active transitive verbs in Spanish govern the word to which their meaning is directed in the accusative case, with or without the preposition **á**, as the occasion may require. (See Observations on the Employment of the Preposition **á** in the Accusative Case, paragraph 13.) Ex.:

Amar á Dios.	To love God.
Hirió al hombre.	He wounded the man.
Despreciar la mentira.	To despise falsehood.
Ella le mandó.	She sent him.

Many verbs have not the power of conveying a meaning that affects an object, and have therefore no government; such are **nacer**, to be borne; **crecer**, to grow, and all those in which there is no apparent action in their meaning. There are, however, some intransitive verbs that have an active signification, and convey their meaning to another object by means of prepositions. Ex.:

Ir á Madrid.	To go <i>to</i> Madrid.
Vengo de casa.	I come <i>from</i> home.
Siéntese en el sofá.	Be seated <i>on</i> the sofa.

Reflexive verbs also govern their regimen in the accusative case; which regimen is the personal pronoun annexed to them. Ex.:

Se aman.	They love one another.
Nos prometimos.	We promised ourselves.
Están vistiéndose.	They are dressing themselves.

If to the reflexive verb there follow a noun, a pronoun, or an infinitive, these are generally preceded by prepositions. Ex.:

Se destrizo **en** lágrimas.

Me acordaré **de** él.

Se acostumbran **á** trabajar.

She melted into tears.

I will remember him.

They accustom themselves to work.

3. Verbs of *asking, thanking, buying, taking away, borrowing, opposing, and resembling*, generally require **á** before their indirect regimen. Ex.:

Pregunte Vd. **al** criado.

Agradezco **á** Vd. **el** favor.

Compré la sortija **al** joyero.

Quitaron el libro **al** muchacho.

Ask the servant.

I thank you for the favour.

I bought the ring of the jeweller.

They took away the book from the boy.

Pedí prestado el dinero **á** Juan.

Se opuso **á** las órdenes.

El hijo se semeja **al** padre.

I borrowed the money of John.

He opposed the orders.

The son resembles the father.

The following require the same preposition before the *direct* regimen, namely, verbs of *answering, playing, and suiting*. Ex.:

Responda Vd. **á** mi pregunta.

Jugamos **al** ajedrez.

¿Le conviene **á** Vd. eso?

Answer my question.

We played at chess.

Does that suit you?

4. Verbs denoting *fullness or abundance, want, and dependence* generally require **de** with their regimen. Ex.:

Abundar **de** riquezas.

Estaba llenando el baul **de** vestidos
y **de** libros.

Faltar **de** juicio.

Dependa Vd. **de** mí.

To abound in riches.

He was filling the trunk with clothes and books.

To be wanting in judgment.

Depend on me.

Passive verbs likewise require **de** before the noun by which they are followed. Ex.:

Virginia fué amada **de** Rafael.

Son aborrecidos **de** todos.

Virginia was beloved by Raphael.

They are hated by everybody.

Sometimes, however, the preposition **por** may be used instead of **de**; but it must be observed that these two prepositions are not always indiscriminately used with passive verbs. If the verb denote an action of the body, **por** should be employed; as, *Fué muerto por un asesino* (He was murdered by an assassin); but if the action expressed by the verb denote a will, or an effect of the mind, then either **de** or **por** may be used; though the preference appears to be more generally given to the former; as, *La obra fué censurada de or por los críticos* (The work was censured by the critics). *Él es estimado de or por todos* (He is esteemed by everybody).

5. The noun or pronoun that denotes the person or thing in which the meaning of the verb is concentrated is preceded by **en**. Ex.:

Piensa **en** tus propios asuntos.

Think on your own affairs.

Fijar la atención **en** algo.

To fix the attention on anything.

If the regimen be an infinitive, the same preposition is required; as, *Esmerarse en hacer algo* (To delight in doing anything).

6. The noun denoting the instrument with which the action of the verb is effected is governed by **con**; but the noun expressive of the injury inflicted by the instrument is preceded by either **de** or **con** in the singular, and by **á** in the plural. Ex.:

La mató **con** un puñal.

He killed her with a dagger.

La mató **de** or **con** una puñalada.

He killed her by the thrust of a dagger.

Le hirió **á** golpes.

He wounded him with blows.

Verbs denoting *conduct* or *behaviour* also generally require **con** before the regimen. Ex.:

Se porta bien **con** los suyos.

He behaves well with, or towards, his relations.

Para con may be used in the same sense; as, *Se porta bien para con los suyos*.

The verb *meterse* governs the regimen with **con**, if it be a person, and with **en**, if it be an inanimate object. Ex.:

Meterse con alguno.

To meddle with anyone.

Meterse en negocios ajenos.

To interfere with other people's business.

7. The regimen denoting the *cause* or *motive* that gives rise to the action of the governing verb is preceded by **por**. Ex.:

Trabajan **por** ganar.

They work in order to gain.

Lo hice **por** miedo.

I did it through fear.

Anhelar **por** saber.

To be eager to know.

Para may be used instead of **por**, when we wish to denote the *end* or *purpose* of the action expressed by the governing verb. Ex.:

Lo hice **para** salvarla.

I did it in order to save her.

Vino **para** verle.

He came for the purpose of seeing him.

Sometimes the distinction between these two prepositions is so slight that they may be indiscriminately used with nearly the same effect; thus, *Trabajan por ganar* means, They work *for the sake of* gain—that is, they were induced by the idea of gain to work; and *Trabajan para ganar* signifies, They work *for the purpose of* gaining, or *in order to* gain.

Another peculiarity in the use of these two prepositions is, that after the verb **estar**, or **quedar**, the infinitive governed by **por** signifies that the action expressed by it is not yet completed; as, *Ese edificio está todavía por acabar* (That edifice is not yet finished). *Nos queda aun una legua por andar* (We have yet a league to walk). The infinitive, preceded by **por**, also expresses an inclination on the part of the agent to do the act denoted by the infinitive; as, *Estoy por decirselo* (I have a mind to tell it to him). But, preceded by **para**, the infinitive denotes that the action is just about to take place; as, *El buque*

está para *hacerse á la vela* (The vessel is about to set sail). It sometimes also expresses the inclination, or the capacity of the agent to do the act; as, *No estoy para chascar* (I am not inclined, or fit to joke).

To inquire after, or *for* anyone, is translated *preguntar por*; as, *Pregunté por su hijo* (I inquired after his son).

Observe that when the preposition *to* is suppressed in English, it must be expressed in Spanish; as, *Presté el libro á Juan* (I lent (to) John the book). *Dí un duro al hombre* (I gave (to) the man a dollar).

See also Section on Prepositions, page 336.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS IN RELATION TO MOODS AND TENSES

A verb active transitive may govern another verb either in the infinitive, the indicative, or the subjunctive mood. But, as the governed verb is not always put in the same mood and tense in Spanish and English, the student's attention is called to the following observations, which are intended to point out, in most cases, the difference that in this respect exists in the two languages. He will, however, observe, that the remarks do not apply in every case, this being likewise a matter that is in a great measure governed by taste. They will, nevertheless, assist him very materially.

1. In Spanish the governed verb is frequently put in the infinitive when there is but one agent to both verbs; that is, when the verb governed expresses something relative to the nominative of the governing verb, or when the governed verb is not preceded by the conjunction *que*.
Ex.:

Él pretendía **engañar**.

Querían **engañarle**.

Yo no puedo **exponerle**.

He pretended to feign.

They wanted to deceive him.

I cannot expose him.

2. In these examples we see that both languages agree in the employment of the infinitive with the governed verb.

But when the second verb is preceded by the conjunction **que**, or when each verb has a different agent, the governed verb in Spanish is generally put either in the indicative or the subjunctive mood, as the occasion may require. Ex.:

Ellos se creen que son valientes.	They believe themselves <i>to be</i> brave.
Él queria que yo me sometiese .	He wished me <i>to submit</i> .
Mandó que (ellos) trajesen vino.	He ordered them <i>to bring</i> wine.
Me parece que (ella) está enferma.	She appears to me <i>to be</i> ill.

Literally, *They think that they are brave. He wished that I should submit. He ordered that they might bring wine. It appears to me that she is ill.*

Here we see that the governed verb in Spanish is put in one of the tenses of the indicative or the subjunctive mood, while in either case it may remain in the infinitive in English. The placing of the governed verb in Spanish in one or the other mood is not a matter of indifference, but one which mostly depends on the nature of the governing verb, and not unfrequently on choice, as will be noticed presently.

These rules extend also to intransitive verbs, the signification of which does not pass over to the governed verb without the assistance of a preposition. Ex.:

Vendré á arreglar con Vd.	I will come and settle with you.
Nacemos para morir.	We are born to die.
Me quedaré aquí para que él me vea.	I shall remain here that he may see me.

3. We have seen that the infinitive is sometimes preceded in Spanish by a preposition, and sometimes not; this also depends on the nature of the governing verb. We will now see what verbs govern infinitives with prepositions, and with what prepositions they govern.

The following verbs generally govern infinitives with **á**; namely, *acostumbrarse*, to accustom oneself; *aprender*, to learn; *atreverse*, to venture, to dare; *ayudar*, to help; *convidar*, to invite; *disponerse*, to prepare oneself; *considerarse obligado*, to consider oneself obliged; *empezar*, to

begin; *enseñar*, to teach; *exortar*, to exhort; *ponerse*, to set about; and also verbs of movement to any place. Ex.:

Me acostumbro á andar.

Aprenden á leer.

No se atreve á exponerse.

Ayúdeme á vestir.

Le convidé á comer.

Me considero obligado á obedecer.

Nos dispusimos á trabajar.

Empiezo á entenderlo.

Me enseñó á dibujar.

Exhortar á alguno á hacer su deber.

Se pusieron á reñir.

Voy á encontrarlos.

Vengo á informar á Vd.

I accustom myself to walk.

They learn to read.

He does not venture to expose himself.

Assist me to dress myself.

I invited him to dine.

I consider myself obliged to obey.

We prepared ourselves to work.

I begin to understand it.

He taught me to draw.

To exhort anyone to do his duty.

They set about quarrelling.

I am going to meet them.

I come to inform you.

Several reflexive verbs also govern infinitives with *á*, when the latter indicate what has produced the effect implied in the governing verb. Ex.:

Matarse á estudiar.

Cansarse á trabajar.

To kill oneself with studying.

To tire oneself with working.

The same preposition is sometimes put between two infinitives, to mark the distinction in the respective meanings of their actions. Ex.:

Va mucho de decir á hacer.

There is a great difference between saying and doing.

The verbs *acabar*, to finish, and *cesar*, to cease, govern infinitives with *de*. Ex.:

¿Acabó Vd. de escribir?

Cesaron de perseguirle.

Have you finished writing?

They ceased persecuting him.

Tener and *hacer* govern infinitives with *de* when a noun intervenes between them. Ex.:

Tuvo la bondad de venir.

Hágame Vd. el favor de darme.

He had the kindness to come.

Do me the favour to give me.

Infinitives are governed by *con* when they express the

manner how, and the *means by which*, anything is obtained.

Ex.:

El saber se logra **con** estudiar.

Knowledge is obtained by study.

Nada se gana **con** enfadarse.

We gain nothing by being angry.

Infinitives are governed by **en** when they do not express any kind of motion. Ex.:

Se ocupa **en** leer.

He occupies himself in reading.

Se esmera **en** hablar bien.

He delights in speaking well.

Sobre and **tras**, when used in the sense of *besides*, govern infinitives. Ex.:

Sobre, or **tras**, ser rico es muy avaro.

Besides being rich he is very parsimonious.

For infinitives governed by **para** and **por**, see paragraph 7, page 225.

Some Spanish reflexive verbs govern infinitives in the *active* voice, when the passive would be used in English.

Ex.:

Me dejé **engañar** de él.

I allowed myself *to be deceived* by him.

Se hizo **oir** de ellos.

He caused himself *to be heard* by them.

4. It has just been noticed in Observation 2 that when the governing verb has a different agent from the verb governed, the latter is placed either in the indicative or the subjunctive mood, as the occasion may require; this also sometimes occurs when both verbs have the same agent. Rules will now be given to direct the learner in what mood and tense to employ the governed verb.

5. The following verbs generally govern their regimen in the subjunctive mood, namely, verbs of *commanding*, *requesting*, *fearing*, *wishing*, *wondering*, *doubting*, *permitting*, *requiring*, *preventing*, *persuading*, *suiting*, and sometimes those of *thinking*, *believing*, *rejoicing*, and *hoping*; likewise *impersonal* verbs, and those verbs preceded by conjunctions expressive of *doubt*, *wish*, *supposi-*

tion, or *uncertainty*, as noticed in Rules on Verbs, paragraph 22.

6. Such verbs in the *present* or *future indicative*, or the *present subjunctive*, govern their regimen in the *present subjunctive*, simple or compound. Ex.:

Manda que se haga luego.	He orders it to be done immediately.
Suplico que me dispense Vd.	I beg you will excuse me.
Que yo tema que me insulte.	That I may fear he might insult me.
Me alegro que lo haya vencido.	I am glad that he has overcome it.
Dudo que pueda conseguir.	I doubt whether he is able to succeed.
Conviene que sepan.	It is proper that they should know.
Desearé que Vd. se divierta.	I hope you may be amused.
Para que yo desee que él me obedezca.	That I should wish him to obey me.
Me maravillo que lo hayan creído.	I wonder that they should have believed it.

The verb that follows the relative *que*, preceded by a superlative, is also sometimes put in the subjunctive in Spanish; as, *Es la idea mas sublime que conozca* (It is the most sublime idea that I know of).

7. Verbs in any of the *past* tenses, *simple* or *compound*, of the *indicative* or *subjunctive*, or in the compound future of the indicative, have generally their regimen in the *imperfect* of the *subjunctive*, *simple* or *compound*, with the termination *ra* or *se*. Ex.:

Dudaba, or dudé, que le conviniese, or que le hubiera convenido.	I doubted <i>that</i> he would convince him, or <i>that</i> he would have convinced him.
Ha mandado que lo llevara, or llevase Vd.	He has ordered <i>that</i> you should carry it.
Había pedido que no lo dijéramos, or dijesemos.	He had requested <i>that</i> we might not tell it.
Me alegrara que lo hubiera hecho.	I would rejoice <i>that</i> he had done it.
Le habría ordenado que volviera, or volviese.	I would have ordered him to return.
Les habrá permitido que le siguieran, or siguiesen.	Perhaps he may have allowed them to follow him.

The *compound* of the *present*, and *compound* of the *future indicative*, however, may also govern their regimen in the *present* of the *subjunctive*; as, *Ha mandado que lo lleve Vd.*; *Les habrá permitido que le sigan.*

8. Generally speaking, in any case where the verb governed expresses a *will* or *inclination*, it is used with the termination *ría*. Ex.:

Prometió que me contestaría.	He promised that he would answer me.
Creí que no vendría.	I thought he would not come.
Había prometido que cantaría.	She had promised that she would sing.
Hubiera creído que vivirían felices.	I should have thought that they would live happily.

9. Verbs, however, of *declaring* or *saying*, *thinking* or *believing*, in any of the tenses of the indicative or subjunctive, may govern their regimen with the conjunction *que*, in the same mood and tense in both languages. Ex.:

Declaro que lo sé, lo supe, lo había sabido, lo sabría, &c.	I declare <i>that</i> I know it, knew it, had known it, would know it, &c.
Si digere que no puede, no pudo, no pudiere, &c., pagar.	If he should say <i>that</i> he is not, was not, should not be, &c., able to pay.
Pensaba que Vd. no tardaría; que no había tardado, &c.	I thought <i>that</i> you would not be late, <i>that</i> you had not been late, &c.
Creo que ni la ha visto, ni desea verla.	I believe <i>that</i> he neither has seen, nor wishes to see her.

NOTE.—The rules which have been given for verbs governing with certain prepositions will, in many cases, extend to the same verbs when they govern the indicative or the subjunctive mood with a conjunction (compare remarks on page 227). Ex.:

Tengo miedo de que no lo hayan sabido.	I fear that they may not have known it.
Se empeñó en que se lo prestara.	He insisted on my lending it to him.
Le enseñaron á que fingiese mil excusas.	They taught him to feign a thousand excuses.

PECULIAR MANNER OF EMPLOYING CERTAIN VERBS

Acabar de.—The expressions *to have just*, and *to be just*, employed in English before a past participle, are rendered in Spanish by *acabar de*, preceding an infinitive; as, *Acabo de oír de su llegada* (I have just heard of his arrival). *Acaba de entrar* (He is just come in).

Alegrarse.—The verbs *to be glad*, and *to be rejoiced at*, are translated by the reflexive verb *alegrarse*; as, *Me alegro de saberlo* (I am glad to know it). *Se alegró de la noticia* (He was rejoiced at the news).

Caber, *to be capable of containing*, *to hold*, *to have or find room*, &c. This verb is employed in different ways in Spanish; as, *Cuántas personas caben en este salón?* (How many persons does this saloon contain, or can find room in it?) *No cabíamos todos en la cámara* (The cabin could not contain us all). *¿Puede caber eso en tu imaginación?* (Can that enter thy imagination?) *Cabe mucho en este baul* (This trunk holds a great deal). *Caber de piés* (To have room to stand). *Cabe mucha malicia en él* (He harbours much malice). *Tal es lo que á mi me cupo en suerte* (Such has fallen to my lot). *No caber en sí* (To be well satisfied with oneself). *No caber de gozo* (To be overjoyed).

Caer, *to fall*, is sometimes employed in the sense of *to look into*, in the following manner: *Estas ventanas caen al corral* (These windows look into the courtyard).

When *to become* is employed with reference to any part of a person's dress, it is translated *caer*, or *sentar*; as, *Este vestido le cae*, or, *le sienta muy bien* (This dress becomes you very well).

Caer en gracia means *to take one's fancy*; as, *Parece que esa señora le ha caído á Vd. en gracia* (It seems that that lady has taken your fancy).

Dar, *to give*, is employed with different meanings; as, *Dar en el blanco* (To hit the mark). *Dar el pésame* (To condole). *Dar que hacer* (To give trouble). *Darse á la vela* (To set sail).

Darse de, and **darse cuidado**, are used in the sense of *to care about*; as, *Qué se le da á Vd. de eso?* (What do you care about that?) *No se me da cuidado de nada* (I care about nothing).

Dar por supuesto means *to take for granted*; as, *Dí por supuesto que ya no volvería* (I took it for granted that he would not return).

Dejar de, before infinitives, means *to fail*, and *to leave off*; as, *No deje Vd. de hacerlo* (Do not fail to do it). *Dejemos de hablar más del asunto* (Let us leave off speaking on the subject).

Echar, *to throw*, is used with various meanings; as, *Echar á perder* (To spoil). *Echar á pique un buque* (To sink a ship). *Echar en olvido* (To forget).

Echar de ménos means *to miss* (i.e. *to be sensible of the absence of*); as, *Acá echo de ménos mis acostumbradas diversiones* (Here I miss my accustomed amusements). *Le eché á Vd. de ménos en el baile* (I missed you at the ball).

Echar de ver means *to be evident*, or *visible*; as, *Se echa de ver en eso la prudencia de Vd.* (Your prudence is evident, or visible, or shows itself in that).

Echar á perder means *to spoil*; as, *Todo lo echan á perder* (They spoil everything). *Así se echará á perder* (It will get spoiled in that manner).

Estar en que signifies *to be inclined to think*; as, *Estoy en que no vendrá hoy* (I am inclined to think that he will not come to-day).

Estar á pique de means *to be within an ace of*; as, *Estuvimos á pique de perdernos* (We were within an ace of being lost).

Faltar de, before an infinitive, means *to fail*; as, *Faltó de venir dos veces* (He failed twice to come).

Guardarse de, before an infinitive, signifies *to take care not to*; as, *Se guardará muy bien de venir* (He will take good care not to come). *Me guardaré de decirle nada* (I will take care not to say anything to him).

Gustar, *to like*, and **faltar**, *to want*, have a peculiar

regimen in Spanish, inasmuch as the objective case of the corresponding verb in English becomes the nominative in Spanish, and the nominative of the English verb becomes the objective in Spanish; as, *Me gustan los libros* (I like books). *¿Le gusta á Vd. este vino?* (Do you like this wine?) *¿Qué les falta?* (What do they require?) *Les faltan muchas cosas* (They require many things). *Hacer falta* may be used in the place of *faltar*; as, *¿Qué les hace falta?* *Les hacen falta muchas cosas*. The verb *gustar*, however, sometimes retains the same kind of regimen as in English, only that the object of the verb is preceded by *de*; as, *Los porfiados siempre gustan de quimeras* (Obstinate people are always fond of disputes).

Hacer, *to do*, *to make*, is employed in various colloquial phrases; as, *Haré por verle* (I will try, or endeavour to see him). *Hacer caso de lo que dicen otros* (To mind what other people say). *Hacerse á la vela* (To set sail). *Hacer castillos en el aire*, or *torres en el viento* (To build castles in the air). *Se hace muy soberbio* (He becomes very proud). *Quién hizo el papel de gracioso?* (Who acted the part of clown?) *Él hacía de cónsul* (He acted as consul).

Ir, *to go*, is also employed in several familiar phrases; as, *Ir con alguno* (To agree with anyone). *Ir*, or *quedar en zaga* (To remain behindhand). *Irse á pique* (To founder at sea). *Irsele de la memoria á alguno* (To escape one's memory).

Llevar, *to take*, *to carry*, has several idiomatical meanings; as, *Llevar á mal* (To take amiss). *Me llevó dos duros por la compostura* (He charged me two dollars for the repair). *Llevaba una casaca á la francesa* (He wore a coat in the French fashion). *Llevarse chasco* (To be disappointed). *Me llevé chasco en eso* (I was disappointed in that).

Mandar and *hacer* both signify *to order*, and *to cause to be done*; as, *Mandé que me trajesen vino* (I ordered them to bring me wine). *Haré que sepa su deber* (I will make him know his duty). *Mandé* (or *ordené*) *que me hiciese un vestido* (I ordered him to make me a dress).

Oler á is *to smell of*, and **Saber á**, *to taste of*; as, *Esto huele á aceite y sabe á sebo* (This smells of oil, and tastes of tallow).

Salir is employed in various ways; as, *Salir á luz* (To come to light; to be published). *Salir con algo* (To obtain one's end). *Salir de sí* (To be enraptured). *Salga lo que saliere* (Happen what may). *Esta casa me sale en más de mil libras* (This house stands me in more than a thousand pounds).

Sentir and **Pesar**.—*To be sorry*, and *to grieve*, are translated by these verbs; as, *Lo siento mucho* (I am very sorry for it, i.e. I feel it much). *Me pesa mucho saberlo* (I am very sorry to know it, i.e. It grieves me much to know it).

Servirse is used in the third person only in the sense of *to be kind enough to*; as, *Sírvase Vd. hacerme este favor* (Be kind enough to do me this favour). *Se sirvió enviarme este regalo* (He was pleased to send me this present).

Tardar en, before an infinitive, means *to be long in doing anything*; as, *Tarda mucho en decidir* (He is long in deciding). *Cuánto tarda en venir!* (How long he is in coming!)

Tener, *to have*, is variously employed; as, *Tener á ménos hablar con uno* (Not to deign to speak to one). *No tiene que ver con lo que yo digo* (It has nothing to do with what I say). *Tiene Vd. razon* (You are right). *Él no tiene razon* (He is wrong).

Volver, *to return*, expresses the repetition of the action denoted by the governed infinitive; as, *Vuelva Vd. á leerlo* (Read it over again). *Volveré á venir mañana* (I shall come again to-morrow).

Tratar de means *to endeavour to*; as, *Trate Vd. de venir más temprano* (Endeavour to come earlier). *Trataré de hallarlo* (I shall endeavour to find it).

[For further idioms in verbs, see the author's *New Spanish Reader*. Blackie & Son, Ltd.]

Exercise on the Government of Verbs

VOCABULARY

vencer, to overcome.
 flojo, weak.
 pedir, to ask.
 consejo, counsel.
 reconocido, thankful.
 comprar, to purchase.
 negociante, merchant.
 privar, to deprive.
 semejarse, to resemble.
 incurrir, to incur.
 contestar, to answer.
 mientras, whilst.
 jugar, to play.
 convenir, to suit.
 acordarse, to remember.
 descuidar, to neglect.
 lograr, to gain, to obtain.
 impeler, to impel.
 concluir, to conclude.
 quedar, to remain.
 acabar, to finish.
 partir, to leave.
 ceder, to yield.
 pretender, to pretend.
 sacrificar, to sacrifice.
 aguardar, to wait.
 empezar, to begin.
 comprender, to understand.
 ántes, before.
 pedir prestado, to borrow.
 el peligro, the danger.
 la ley, the law.
 el estado, the state.
 la partida, the game.
 el billar, the billiard.
 el cuarto, the room.
 el pasado, the past.
 el deber, the duty.
 el estudio, the study.
 la necesidad, the necessity.
 la moderación, the moderation.
 la prosperidad, the prosperity.

el asunto, the business.
 la circunstancia, the circumstance.
 el paso, the step.
 aprender, to learn.
 leer, to read.
 acostumbrar, to accustom.
 atreverse, to dare.
 ayudar, to assist.
 llevar, to carry.
 enseñar, to teach.
 cantar, to sing.
 convidar, to invite.
 comer, to dine, to eat.
 considerar, to consider.
 disponer, to prepare.
 someter, to submit.
 llorar, to weep.
 acabar, to finish.
 escribir, to write.
 decir, to tell.
 acompañar, to accompany.
 affigir, to fret.
 mirar, to look.
 respetar, to respect.
 conocer, to know.
 suplicar, to beseech.
 merecer, to deserve.
 saber, to know.
 obrar, to act.
 amargamente, bitterly.
 cesar, to cease.
 atormentar, to torment.
 la bondad, the goodness.
 la pintura, the picture.
 desear, to hope, to desire.
 recobrar, to recover.
 la salud, the health.
 mejor, better.
 temer, to fear.
 fiar, to trust.
 tomar, to take.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

Courage often (*muchas veces*) overcomes (*vencer*) those difficulties that cause the weak to give way (*desmayar*). Ask counsel of thy friend. I am very thankful for your attention. We purchased our goods of a very respectable merchant. We should deprive no one of his own. Of whom did you borrow (*pedir prestado*) the money? He resembles his sister. It concerns you to know that you incur danger in opposing (*oponerse*) the laws of the state. I am going to answer this letter whilst you play a game (*jugar una partida*) at billiards. Will this suit your brother? The room is filled (*lleno*) with smoke (*humo*). Never depend entirely (*jamas dependa enteramente*) on others. I remember well the past. We must not neglect our duty. Knowledge is gained by study. Adonis was beloved by Venus and by Proserpina. They were impelled by necessity. It is very difficult (*difícultoso*) to possess moderation in prosperity. Behave kindly (*portarse benigneamente*) towards everybody. I am going for him, that he may conclude the business, since (*desde*) there remains but little to finish. I have a mind to go and see if he is ready (*pronto*) to leave. We ought to yield to circumstances. I do not pretend to sacrifice your interests. I wish you may obtain your end (*fin*). They advise me to wait. I repented of having taken such a step. I began to understand Spanish before I learned to read it. I accustom myself to do now what I once did not dare to do. Assist me to carry this. He went to see if he could teach him to sing. If he should invite me to dine with him, I shall consider myself obliged to go. Preparing myself to submit, I sat down (*me puse*) to weep bitterly. We have finished writing. At last he ceased tormenting me. Have the goodness to tell me. He did me the favour (*favor*) to accompany me. Little (*poco*) is obtained by fretting. I amuse myself in looking at the pictures. He caused himself to be respected by his acquaintances. I beseech you

to remain. I hope you may soon recover your health. He must behave better in order that I may wish him to come back. I feared he might have suspected me. I had wished that they had deserved it. I never would have permitted (*consentir*) it to be known. Perhaps (*quizá*) he may have told him to bring them. If he thinks that I want him. They declared that they would not trust him. I would have believed it impossible that he could have acted in this manner.

ENTIRELY IRREGULAR VERBS

I. Andar, to go, walk

GERUND: **andando**. PAST PARTICIPLE: **andado**.

INDICATIVE

Present

ando.
andas.
anda.
andamos.
andáis.
andan.

SUBJUNCTIVE

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

ande.
andes.
ande.
andemos.
andéis.
anden.

Imperfect

andaba.
andabas.
andaba.
andábamos.
andabais.
andaban.

anduviése.
anduviéses.
anduviése.
anduviésemos.
anduviéseis.
anduviésen.

Past Definite

andúve.
anduvíste.
andúvo.
anduvímos.
anduvístéis.
anduviéron.

[None.]

Future

andaré.
andarás.
andaré.
andaremos.
andaréis.
andarán.

anduviére.
anduviéres.
anduviére.
anduviéremos.
anduviéreis.
anduviéren.

Conditional

andaría.
andarías.
andaría.
andaríamos.
andaríais
andarían.

anduviera.
anduvieras.
anduviera.
anduviéramos.
anduvierais.
anduvieran.

IMPERATIVE

anda.	no andes.
ande Vd.	no ande Vd.
andemos.	no andemos.
andad.	no andéis.
anden Vds.	no anden Vds.

2. Asir, to seize, grasp (asir del brazo, to seize by the arm)

GERUND: **asiendo.** PAST PARTICIPLE: **asido**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

asgo.
ases.
ase.
asimos.
asís.
asen.

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

asga.
asgas.
asga.
asgamos.
asgáis.
asgan.

Imperfect

asía.
asías.
asía.
asíamos.
asíais.
asían,

asiese.
asieses.
asiese.
asiesémos.
asieseis.
asiesen.

VERBS

Past Definite

así.
asiste.
asíó.
asimos.
asisteis.
asieron.

[None.]

Future

asiré.
asirás.
asirá.
asiremos.
asiréis.
asirán.

asiere.
asieres.
asiere.
asiéremos.
asiereis.
asieren.

Conditional

asiría.
asirías.
asiría.
asiríamos.
asiríais.
asirían.

asiera.
asieras.
asiera.
asiéramos.
asierais.
asieran.

IMPERATIVE

ase.	no asgas.
asga Vd.	no asga Vd.
asgamos.	no asgamos.
asíd.	no asgáis.
asgan Vds.	no asgan Vds.

3. Caber, to have room

GERUND: **cabiendo.** PAST PARTICIPLE: **cabido.**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

quepo.
cabe.
cabe.
cabemos.
cabéis.
caben.

que *or* si (yo, &c.)
quepa.
quepas.
quepa.
quepamos.
quepáis.
quepan.

Imperfect

cabía.
cabías.
cabía.
cabíamos.
cabíais.
cabían.

cupiese.
cupieses.
cupiese.
cupiésemos.
cupieseis.
cupiesen.

Past Definite

cupe.
cupiste.
cupo.
cupimos.
cupisteis.
cupieron.

[None.]

Future

cabré.
cabrás.
cabrá.
cabrémos.
cabréis.
cabrán.

cupiere.
cupieres.
cupiere.
cupiéremos.
cupiereis.
cupieren.

Conditional

cabría.
cabrías.
cabría.
cabríamos.
cabríais.
cabrían.

cupiera.
cupieras.
cupiera.
cupiéramos.
cupierais.
cupieran.

IMPERATIVE

(cabe tu.)
quepa Vd.
quepamos.
cabed.
quepan Vds.

(no quepas.)
no quepa Vd.
no quepamos.
no quepáis.
no quepan Vds.

N.B.—*Caber* is used mostly in a figurative sense. Ex.:

No cabe duda.

There is no doubt.

Mala suerte le cupo.

Bad luck fell to his share.

Todo cabe en Tomás.

Thomas is capable of anything.

El profesor no cabe en sí de
alegría.

*The professor is unable to contain
himself for joy.*

4. Caer, to fall, drop

GERUND: cayendo. PAST PARTICIPLE: caído.

INDICATIVE

Present

caigo.
caes.
cae.
caemos.
caéis.
caen.

SUBJUNCTIVE

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

caiga.
caigas.
caiga.
caigamos.
caigáis.
caigan.

Imperfect

caía.
caías.
caía.
caíamos.
caíais.
caían.

cayese.
cayeses.
cayese.
cayésemos.
cayeseis.
cayesen.

Past Definite

caí.
caíste.
cayó.
caímos.
caísteis.
cayeron.

[None.]

Future

caeré.
caerás.
caerá.
caeremos.
caeréis.
caerán.

cayere.
cayeres.
cayere.
cayéremos.
cayeréis.
cayeren.

Conditional

caería.
caerías.
caería.
caeríamos.
caeríais.
caerían.

cayera.
cayeras.
cayera.
cayéramos.
cayerais.
cayeran.

IMPERATIVE

cae.	no caigas.
caiga Vd.	no caiga Vd.
caigamos.	no caigamos.
caed.	no caigáis.
caigan Vds.	no caigan Vds.

The following verbs are conjugated in the same manner as **caer** :—

caerse , to fall or drop down.	caerse de viejo , to break down with old age.
caerse de ánimo , to droop, get down-hearted or low-spirited.	decaer , to decay.
	recaer , to relapse.

5. Conducir, to conduct, convey, guide, lead

GERUND: **conduciendo**. PAST PARTICIPLE: **conducido**.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
	<i>Present</i>	
conduzco.	|	que <i>or</i> si (yo, &c.)
conduces.	|	conduzca.
conduce.	|	conduzcas.
conducimos.	|	conduzca.
conducis.	|	conduzcámos.
conducen.	|	conduzcáis.
		conduzcan.
	<i>Imperfect</i>	
conducía.	|	condujése.
conducías.	|	condujésedes.
conducía.	|	condujése.
conducíamos.	|	condujésemos.
conducíais.	|	condujéseis.
conducían.	|	condujésen.
	<i>Past Definite</i>	
conduje.	|	
condujiste.	|	
conduje.	|	
condujimos.	|	
condujisteis.	|	
condujéron.	|	
		[None.]

VERBS

Future

conduciré.
conducirás.
conduciré.
conduciremos.
conduciréis.
conducirán.

condujére.
condujéres.
condujére.
condujéremos.
condujéreis.
condujéren.

Conditional

conduciría.
conducirías.
conduciría.
conduciríamos.
conduciríais.
conducirían.

condujéra.
condujéras.
condujéra.
condujéramos.
condujérais.
condujéran.

IMPERATIVE

conduce
conduzca Vd.
conduzcamos.
conducid.
conduzcan Vds.

no conduzcas.
no conduzca Vd.
no conduzcamos.
no conduzcaís.
no conduzcan Vds.

The following verbs are conjugated in the same manner as **conducir**:—

conducirse, to behave, conduct
one's self.
deducir, to deduce, infer.
inducir, to induce.
introducir, to introduce.

producir, to produce, bring forth.
reducir, to reduce, lessen.
reproducir, to reproduce.
seducir, to seduce.
traducir, to translate.

6. **Dar**, to give

GERUND: **dando**. PAST PARTICIPLE: **dado**.

INDICATIVE

Present

doy.
das.
da.
damos.
dais.
dan.

SUBJUNCTIVE

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

dé.
des.
dé.
demos.
déis.
den.

Imperfect

daba.		diése.
dabas.		diéses.
daba.		diése.
dábamos.		diésemos.
dabais.		diéseis.
daban.		diésen.

Past Definite

dí.		
díste.		
dió.		
dímos.		[None.]
dísteis.		
diéron.		

Future

daré.		diére.
darás.		diéres.
dará.		diére.
daremos.		diéremos.
daréis.		diéreis.
darán.		diéren.

Conditional

daría.		diéra.
darías.		diéras.
daría.		diéra.
daríamos.		diéramos.
daríais.		diérais.
darían.		diéran.

IMPERATIVE

da.	no des.
dé Vd.	no dé Vd.
demos.	no demos.
dad.	no deis.
den Vds.	no den Vds.

7. Decir, to say, tell

GERUND: diciendo. PAST PARTICIPLE: dicho.

INDICATIVE

Present

digo.
dices.
dice.
decimos.
decís.
dicén.

SUBJUNCTIVE

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

diga.
digas.
diga.
digamos.
digáis.
digan.

Imperfect

decía.
decías.
decía.
decíamos.
decíais.
decían.

dijese.
dijeses.
dijese.
dijésemos.
dijéiséis.
dijesen.

Past Definite

dije.
dijiste.
dijo.
dijimos.
dijisteis.
dijeron.

[None.]

Future

diré.
dirás.
dirá.
diremos.
diréis.
dirán.

dijere.
dijeres.
dijere.
dijéremos.
dijéreis.
dijeren.

Conditional

diría.
dirías.
diría.
diríamos.
diríais.
dirían.

dijera.
dijeras.
dijera.
dijéramos.
dijerais.
dijeran.

IMPERATIVE

di.	no digas.
diga Vd.	no diga Vd.
digamos.	no digamos.
decid.	no digáis.
digan Vds.	no digan Vds.

8. Dormir, to sleep: o into ue and u

GERUND: durmiendo. PAST PARTICIPLE: dormido.

INDICATIVE

Present

duérmo.
duérmes.
duérme.
dormímos.
dormís.
duérmen.

SUBJUNCTIVE

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

duérma.
duérmas.
duérma.
durmámos.
durmáis.
duérman.

Imperfect

dormía.
dormías.
dormía.
dormíamos.
dormíais.
dormían.

durmiése.
durmiéses.
durmiése.
durmiésemos.
durmiéseis.
durmiésen.

Past Definite

dormí.
dormiste.
dormió.
dormimos.
dormisteis.
durmieron.

[None.]

Future

dormiré.
dormirás.
dormirá.
durmiremos.
durmireis.
dormirán.

durmiere.
durmiéres.
durmiere.
durmiremos.
durmireis.
durmieren.

VERBS

Conditional

dormiría.		durmiéramos.
dormirías.		durmiérais.
dormiría.		durmiéramos.
dormiríamos.		durmiérais.
dormiríais.		durmiéramos.
dormirían.		durmiérais.

IMPERATIVE

duerme.	no duermas.
duerma Vd.	no duerma Vd.
durmamos.	no durmamos.
dormid.	no durmáis.
duerman Vds.	no duerman Vds.

9. Hacer, to do, make, render

GERUND: *haciendo*. PAST PARTICIPLE: *hecho*.

INDICATIVE

Present

SUBJUNCTIVE

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

hágo.
haces.
hace.
hacemos.
hacéis.
hacen.

hága.
hagas.
haga.
hagamos.
hagáis.
hagan.

Imperfect

hacía.
hacías.
hacía.
hacíamos.
hacíais.
hacían.

hiciése.
hiciéses.
hiciése.
hiciésemos.
hiciéseis.
hiciésen.

Past Definite

híce.
hicíste.
hízo.
hicíamos.
hicísteis.
hicieron.

[None.]

Future

haré.		hiciére.
harás.		hiciéres.
hará.		hiciére.
haremos.		hiciéremos.
haréis.		hiciéreis.
harán.		hiciéren.

Conditional

haría.		hiciéra.
harías.		hiciéras.
haría.		hiciéra.
haríamos.		hiciéramos.
haríais.		hiciérais.
harían.		hiciéran.

IMPERATIVE

haz.	no hagas.
haga Vd.	no haga Vd.
hagámos.	no hagámos.
haced.	no hagáis.
hagan Vds.	no hagan Vds.

The following verbs are conjugated in the same manner as **hacer** :—

contrahacer , to counterfeit, falsify.	rehacerse , to recover, regain strength, rally.
deshacer , to undo.	satisfacer , to satisfy, content.
rehacer , to remake, do again, repair.	

10. Ir, to walk, go

GERUND: **yendo**. PAST PARTICIPLE: **ido**.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

voy.		que <i>or si</i> (yo, &c.)
vas.		vaya.
va.		vayas.
vamos.		vaya.
vais.		vayamos.
van.		vayáis.
		vayan.

VERBS

Imperfect

iba.
ibas.
iba.
ibamos.
ibais.
iban.

fuese.
fueses.
fuese.
fuésemos.
fueseis.
fuesen.

Past Definite

fuí.
fuiste.
fué.
fuimos.
fuisteis.
fueron.

[None.]

Future

iré.
irás.
irá.
iremos.
iréis.
irán.

fuere.
fueres.
fuere.
fuéremos.
fuereis.
fueren.

Conditional

iría.
irías.
iría.
iríamos.
iríais.
irían.

fuera.
fueras.
fuera.
fuéramos.
fuerais.
fueran.

IMPERATIVE

ve.
vaya (se) Vd.
vamos.
id (os).
vayan (se) Vds.

no (te) vayas.
no (se) vaya Vd.
no (nos) vamos.
no (os) vayáis.
no (se) vayan Vds.

REMAINDER OF THE ENTIRELY IRREGULAR VERBS

N.B.—The order followed in giving the Irregular verbs is that of the SPANISH ACADEMY.

I. Morir, to die

This is conjugated like **dormir**, except in the past participle.

GERUND: **muriendo**. PAST PARTICIPLE: **muerto**.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
	<i>Present</i>	
		que <i>or</i> si (yo, &c.)
muero.		muera.
mueres.		mueras.
muere.		muera.
morimos.		muramos.
moris.		mueráis.
mueren.		mueran.
	<i>Imperfect</i>	
moría.		muriese.
morías.		murieses.
moría.		muriese.
moríamos.		muriésemos.
moríais.		murieseis.
morían.		muriesen.
	<i>Past Definite</i>	
morí.		
moriste.		
murió.		[None.]
morímos.		
morísteis.		
muriéron.		
	<i>Future</i>	
moriré.		muriere.
morirás.		murieres.
morirá.		muriere.
moriremos.		muriéremos.
moriréis.		muriereis.
morirán.		murieren.
	<i>Conditional</i>	
moriría.		muriera.
morirías.		murieras.
moriría.		muriera.
moriríamos.		muriéramos.
moriríais.		murierais.
morirían.		murieran

IMPERATIVE

muere.	no mueras.
muera Vd.	no muera Vd.
muramos.	no muramos.
morid.	no muráis.
mueran Vds.	no mueran Vds.

2. Oir, to hear (so also entreoir, to hear indistinctly).

GERUND: oyendo. PAST PARTICIPLE: oído.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
	<i>Present</i>	
oigo.	|	que <i>or</i> si (yo, &c.)
oyes.	|	oiga.
oye.	|	oigas.
oímos.	|	oiga.
oís.	|	oigamos.
oyen.	|	oigáis.
	|	oigan.
	<i>Imperfect</i>	
oía.	|	oyese.
oías.	|	oyeses.
oía.	|	oyese.
oíamos.	|	oyésemos.
oíais.	|	oyeseis.
oían.	|	oyesen.
	<i>Past Definite</i>	
oí.	|	
oíste.	|	
oyó.	|	[None.]
oímos.	|	
oísteis.	|	
oyéron.	|	
	<i>Future</i>	
oiré.	|	oyere.
oirás.	|	oyeres.
oirá.	|	oyere.
oiremos.	|	oyéremos.
oiréis.	|	oyereis.
oirán.	|	oyeren.

Conditional

oiría.		oyera.
oirías.		oyeras.
oiría.		oyera.
oiríamos.		oyéramos.
oiríais.		oyerais.
oirían		oyeran.

IMPERATIVE

oye.	no oigas.
oiga Vd.	no oiga Vd.
oigamos.	no oigamos.
oid.	no oigáis.
oigan Vds.	no oigan Vds.

3. Poder, to be able

GERUND: **pudiendo.** PAST PARTICIPLE: **podido.**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

puedo, I can or may.
puedes.
puede.
podemos.
podéis.
pueden.

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

pueda.
puedas.
pueda.
podamos.
podáis.
puedan.

Imperfect

podía.
podías.
podía.
podíamos.
podíais.
podían.

pudiese.
pudieses.
pudiese.
pudiésemos.
pudieseis.
pudiesen.

Past Definite

pude.
pudiste.
pudo.
pudimos.
pudisteis.
pudieron.

[None.]

VERBS

Future

podré.
podrás.
podrá.
podrémos.
podréis.
podrán.

pudiere.
pudieres.
pudiere.
pudiéremos.
pudiereis.
pudieren.

Conditional

podría.
podrías.
podría.
podríamos.
podríais.
podrían.

pudiera.
pudieras.
pudiera.
pudiéramos.
pudierais.
pudieran.

IMPERATIVE

puede.	no puedas.
pueda Vd.	no pueda Vd.
podamos.	no podamos.
poded.	no podáis.
puedan Vds.	no puedan Vds.

4. Podrir, to rot

GERUND: pudriendo. PAST PARTICIPLE: podrido.

INDICATIVE

Present

pudro.
pudres.
pudre.
podrimos.
podrís.
pudren.

SUBJUNCTIVE

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

pudra.
pudras.
pudra.
pudramos.
pudráis.
pudran.

Imperfect

podría.
podrías.
podría.
podríamos.
podríais.
podrían.

pudriese.
pudrieses.
pudriese.
pudriésemos.
pudrieseis.
pudriesen.

Past Definite

<p> pudrí. pudriste. pudrió. pudrimos. pudristeis. pudrieron. </p>	|	<p>[None.]</p>
---	--	----------------

Future

<p> pudriré. pudrirás. pudrirá. pudrirémos. pudriréis. pudrirán. </p>	|	<p> pudriere. pudrieres. pudriere. pudriéremos. pudriereis. pudrieren. </p>
--	--	--

Conditional

<p> pudriría. pudrirías. pudriría. pudriríamos. pudriríais. pudrirían. </p>	|	<p> pudriera. pudrieras. pudriera. pudriéramos. pudrierais. pudrieran. </p>
--	--	--

IMPERATIVE

pudre.	no pudras.
pudra Vd.	no pudra Vd.
pudramos.	no pudramos.
podrid.	no pudráis.
pudran Vds.	no pudran Vds.

5. Poner, to put, place, lay

GERUND: poniendo. PAST PARTICIPLE: puesto.

INDICATIVE

Present

pongo.
 pones.
 pone.
 ponemos.
 ponéis.
 ponen.

SUBJUNCTIVE

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

ponga.
 pongas.
 ponga.
 pongamos.
 pongáis.
 pongan.

VERBS

Imperfect

ponía.
ponías.
ponía.
poníamos.
poníais.
ponían.

pusiese.
pusieses.
pusiese.
pusiésemos.
pusieseis.
pusiesen.

Past Definite

puse.
pusiste.
puso.
pusimos.
pusisteis.
pusieron.

[None.]

Future

pondré.
pondrás.
pondrá.
pondremos.
pondréis.
pondrán.

pusiere.
pusieres.
pusiere.
pusiéremos.
pusiereis.
pusieren.

Conditional

pondría.
pondrías.
pondría.
pondríamos.
pondríais.
pondrían.

pusiera.
pusieras.
pusiera.
pusiéramos.
pusierais.
pusieran.

IMPÉRATIVE

pon.
ponga Vd.
pongamos.
poned.
pongan Vds.

no pongas.
no ponga Vd.
no pongamos.
no pongáis.
no pongan Vds.

The following verbs are conjugated in the same manner as **poner** :—

anteponer, to place before, to put together.

componer, construct, compose, repair, adjust.

deponer, to depose, deposit.

descomponer, to take to pieces, discompose, disorder.

disponer, to dispose, prepare.

disponerse, to prepare one's self, get one's self ready.

exponer, to expose, exhibit, explain, expound.
imponer, to lay upon, impose.
indisponerse, to become indisposed, angry.
oponer, to oppose.
proponer, to propose, suggest.

proponerse, to intend, make up one's mind.
reponer, to reply.
reponerse, to recover.
sobreponer, to place upon.
suponer, to suppose.
tra(n)poner, to transpose.

6. Querer, to wish, desire, like, love

GERUND: queriendo. PAST PARTICIPLE: querido.

INDICATIVE

Present

quiero.
 quieres.
 quiere.
 queremos.
 queréis.
 queren.

SUBJUNCTIVE

que *or* si (yo, &c.)

quiera.
 quieras.
 quiera.
 queramos.
 queráis.
 quieran.

Imperfect

quería.
 querías.
 quería.
 queríamos.
 queríais.
 querían.

quisiese.
 quisieses.
 quisiese.
 quisiésemos.
 quisieseis.
 quisiesen.

Past Definite

quise.
 quisiste.
 quiso.
 quisimos.
 quisisteis.
 quisieron.

[None.]

Future

querré.
 querrás.
 querrá.
 querramos.
 querréis.
 querrán.

quisiere.
 quisieres.
 quisiere.
 quisiéremos.
 quisiereis.
 quisieren.

VERBS

Conditional

querría.
 querrias.
 querría.
 querríamos.
 querríais.
 querrían.

quisiera.
 quisieras.
 quisiera.
 quisieramos.
 quisierais.
 quisieran.

IMPERATIVE

quiere.
 quiera Vd.
 queramos.
 quered.
 quieran Vds.

no quieras.
 no quiera Vd.
 no queramos.
 no queráis.
 no quieran Vds.

7. Saber, to know, know how to, be aware of

GERUND: *sabiendo*. PAST PARTICIPLE: *sabido*.

INDICATIVE

Present

sé
 sabes.
 sabe.
 sabemos.
 sabéis.
 saben.

SUBJUNCTIVE

que *or* si (yo, &c.)
 sepa.
 sepas.
 sepa.
 sepamos.
 sepáis.
 sepan.

Imperfect

sabía.
 sabías.
 sabía.
 sabíamos.
 sabíais.
 sabían.

supiese.
 supieses.
 supiese.
 supiésemos.
 supieseis.
 supiesen.

Past Definite

supe.
 supiste.
 supo.
 supimos.
 supisteis.
 supieron.

[None.]

<i>Future</i>	
sabré.	supiere.
sabrás.	supieres.
sabrà.	supiere.
sabremos.	supiéremos.
sabréis.	supiereis.
sabrán.	supieren.

<i>Conditional</i>	
sabría.	supiera.
sabrías.	supieras.
sabría.	supiera.
sabríamos.	supiéramos.
sabríais.	supierais.
sabrían.	supieran.

IMPERATIVE	
sabe (tú).	no sepas.
sepa Vd.	no sepa Vd.
sepamos.	no sepamos.
sabad.	no sepáis.
sepan Vds.	no sepan Vds.

8. Salir, to go out, set out, depart, come out, leave, &c.

GERUND: **saliendo.** PAST PARTICIPLE: **salido.**

INDICATIVE	<i>Present</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE
		que <i>or</i> si (yo, &c.)
salgo.		salga.
sales.		salgas.
sale.		salga.
salimos.		salgamos.
salís.		salgáis.
salen.		salgan.
	<i>Imperfect</i>	
salía.		saliese.
salías.		salieses.
salía.		saliese.
salíamos.		saliésemos.
salíais.		salieseis.
salían.		saliesen.

VERBS

Past Definite

salí.
saliste.
salió.
salimos.
salisteis.
saliéron.

[None.]

Future

saldré.
saldrás
saldrá.
saldremos.
saldréis.
saldrán.

saliera.
salieres.
saliera.
saliéremos.
salieréis.
salieren.

Conditional

saldría.
saldrían.
saldría.
saldríamos.
saldríais.
saldrían.

saliera.
salieras.
saliera.
saliéramos.
salierais.
salieran.

IMPERATIVE

sal.	no salgas.
salga Vd.	no salga Vd.
salgamos.	no salgamos.
salid.	no salgáis.
salgan Vds.	no salgan Vds.

Conjugated in the same way :

sobresalir, to exceed, excel, surpass.

9. **Traer**, to carry, bring, fetch

GERUND: **trayendo**. PAST PARTICIPLE: **traído**.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

traigo.
traes.
trae.
traemos.
traéis.
traen.

que *or* si (yo, &c.)
traiga.
traigas.
traiga.
traigamos.
traigáis.
traigan.

Imperfect

traía.		trajese.
traías.		trajeses.
traía.		trajese.
traíamos.		trajésemos.
traíais.		trajeseis.
traían.		trajesen.

Past Definite

traje.		
trajiste.		
trajo.		[None.]
trajimos.		
trajisteis.		
trajeron.		

Future

traeré.		trajere.
traerás.		trajeres.
traerá.		trajere.
traeremos.		trajéremos.
traeréis.		trajereis.
traerán.		trajeren.

Conditional

traería.		trajera.
traerías.		trajeras.
traería.		trajera.
traeríamos.		trajéramos.
traeríais.		trajeráis.
traerían.		trajeran.

IMPERATIVE

trae.	no traigas.
traiga Vd.	no traiga Vd.
traigamos.	no traigamos.
traed.	no traigáis.
traigan Vds.	no traigan Vds.

Conjugated in the same way :

atraer , to attract.	extraer , to extract.
contraer , to contract.	retraer , to retract.
distraer , to distract.	su(b)straer , to subtract, deduct.

10. Valer, to be worth, be of value, hold good

GERUND: *valiendo*. PAST PARTICIPLE: *valido*.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
	<i>Present</i>	
valgo.	|	que <i>or</i> si (yo, &c.)
vales.	|	valga.
vale.	|	valgas.
valemos.	|	valga.
valéis.	|	valgamos.
valen.	|	valgáis.
	|	valgan.
	<i>Imperfect</i>	
valía.	|	valiese.
valías.	|	valieses.
valía.	|	valiese.
valíamos.	|	valiésemos.
valíais.	|	valieseis.
valían.	|	valiesen.
	<i>Past Definite</i>	
valí.	|	
valiste.	|	
valió.	|	[None.]
valimos.	|	
valisteis.	|	
valieron.	|	
	<i>Future</i>	
valdré.	|	valiere.
valdrás.	|	valieres.
valdrá.	|	valiere.
valdremos.	|	valiéremos.
valdréis.	|	valiereis.
valdrán.	|	valieren.
	<i>Conditional</i>	
valdría.	|	valiera.
valdrías.	|	valieras.
valdría.	|	valiera.
valdríamos.	|	valiéramos.
valdríais.	|	valierais.
valdrían.	|	valieran.

IMPERATIVE

vale.	no valgas.
valga Vd.	no valga Vd.
valgamos.	no valgamos.
valed.	no valgáis.
valgan Vds.	no valgan Vds.

Conjugated in the same way :

valerse de, to make use of, avail oneself of.

equivaler, to be equivalent.

prevalerse, to prevail, avail oneself of.

II. Venir, to come

GERUND: **viniendo**. PAST PARTICIPLE: **venido**.

INDICATIVE

Present

SUBJUNCTIVE

vengo.
vienes.
viene.
venimos.
venís.
vienen.

que or si (yo, &c.)

venga.
vengas.
venga.
vengamos.
vengáis.
vengan.

Imperfect

venía.
venías.
venía.
veníamos.
veníais.
venían.

viniese.
vinieses.
viniese.
viniésemos.
vinieseis.
viniesen.

Past Definite

vine.
viniste.
vino.
vinimos.
vinisteis.
vinieron.

[None.]

VERBS

Future

vendré.
vendrás.
vendrá.
vendremos.
vendréis.
vendrán.

viniere.
vinieres.
viniere.
viniéremos.
viniereis.
vinieren.

Conditional

vendría.
vendrías.
vendría.
vendríamos.
vendríais.
vendrían.

viniera.
vinieras.
viniera.
viniéramos.
vinierais.
vinieran.

IMPERATIVE

ven.	no vengas.
venga Vd.	no venga Vd.
vengamos.	no vengamos.
venid.	no vengáis.
vengan Vds.	no vengán Vds.

Conjugated in the same way:

avvenir, to come to an understanding.

convenir, to convene, agree, suit, be to the purpose;
behove, become.

desavvenir-se, to disagree, fall out.

intervenir, to intervene.

prevenir, to prevent, advise, acquaint, warn.

prevenir, to come from, proceed.

sobrevenir, to happen, come unexpectedly, supervene.

12. Ver, to see

GERUND: **viendo**. PAST PARTICIPLE: **visto**.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

veo.
ves.
ve.
vemos.
veis.
ven.

que or si (yo, &c.)
vea.
veas.
vea.
veamos.
veáis.
vean.

Imperfect

veía.
veías.
veía.
veíamos.
veíais.
veían.

viere.
vieres.
viere.
viéramos.
vierais.
vieran.

Past Definite

vi.
viste.
vió.
vimos.
visteis.
vieron.

[None.]

Future

veré.
verás.
verá.
veremos.
veréis.
verán.

viere.
vieres.
viere.
viéramos.
vieréis.
vieren.

Conditional

vería.
verías.
vería.
veríamos.
veríais.
verían.

viera.
vieras.
viera.
viéramos.
vierais.
vieran.

IMPERATIVE

vean Vds.	no vean Vds.
ve (ahi).	no veas.
vea Vd.	no vea Vd.
veamos	no veamos.
ved.	no vedáis.

Conjugated in the same way :

antever, to see before, foresee.

prever, to foresee, foreknow, anticipate.

preverse, to take care, heed, look about.

rever, to see again.

CLASSIFICATION OF SPANISH VERBS

We noticed, at the end of the conjugation of the auxiliary and regular verbs, the different modifications in the orthography of certain verbs in their terminations, without their ceasing to be regular. We have also reviewed, in the order of the three conjugations, the diversities which mark the Irregular verbs; we have only now to present as a whole, easy to be taken in at a glance, a classification enabling the student at once to recognize, by means of a number, the irregularity of each verb. This arrangement, which has not hitherto been made for Spanish verbs, will be completed by a general table of the Irregular verbs. In this table each infinitive is accompanied by the number of the class to which it belongs; by means of this number the pupil will find the model of the conjugation, followed by the verb required.

The first table, A, that of the *Regular* verbs, shows the different changes in the orthography of the terminations. The verbs are naturally classed in it by the termination of the infinitive.

The second table, B, that of the *Irregular* verbs, contains a model of each sort of irregularity. These different varieties may be classed as follows:

1st Class.—Verbs that take an *i* before the *e* in the root. Verbs having this irregularity only, belong to the first and second conjugations.

2nd Class.—Verbs changing the *o* in the root for *ue*. Verbs having this irregularity alone, belong also to these conjugations.

3rd Class.—Verbs changing the *e* in the root for *i*. These verbs belong to the third conjugation.

4th Class.—Verbs uniting the irregularity of first and third classes, viz.: sometimes adding an *i* before the *e* of the root, sometimes changing the *e* into *i*. These verbs belong to the third conjugation.

5th Class.—Verbs in *acer*, *ecer*, *ocer*, *ucir*. These

verbs take a **z** before the **c** in the root, when followed by **a** and **o**. They properly belong to the division of *Regular* verbs; but, as the SPANISH ROYAL ACADEMY always ranks them amongst the Irregular verbs, we have not thought it advisable to deviate from this custom.

6th Class.—An alphabetical list of verbs, participating in the irregularity of several of the preceding classes, or having a more extended or particular irregularity.

The first five classes each contain more or less numerous series of verbs; the table, therefore, only presents one model of each of these series. In the sixth class are placed those verbs, very limited in number, of which the irregularity is exclusively their own, and only extends to their compounds.

In these tables we place near each other the tenses of a similar formation, viz.:

1st.—Indicative present, imperative, subjunctive present.

2nd.—Preterite definite, imperfect of the subjunctive, future of the subjunctive.

3rd.—Future, conditional (2nd form of the imperfect of the subjunctive).

The terminations in **ar**, **er**, or **ir**, in the infinitive, sufficiently mark to which of the three conjugations the verb belongs.

A.—TABLE OF

In which the last letter of the

Infinitive.	Indicative Present.	Imperative.	Subjunctive Present.	Preterite Definite.
1. <i>Tocar, to touch.</i>	toco.	toca tú, toque él, toquen ellos.	toque, toques, toque, toquemos, toqueis, toquen.	toqué, tocaste, &c.
1. <i>Pagar, to pay.</i>	pago.	paga tú, pague él, paguen ellos.	pague, pagues, pague, paguemos, pagueis, paguen.	pagué, pagaste, &c.
2. <i>Vencer, to conquer.</i>	venzo, vences, &c.	vence tú, venza él, venzan ellos.	venza, venzas, venza, venzamos, venzais, venzan.	venci.
3. <i>Resarcir, to mend.</i>	resarzo, resarces, &c.	resarce tú, resarza él, resarzan ellos.	resarza, resarzas, resarza, resarzamos, resarzaís, resarzan.	resarci.
3. <i>Delinquir, to infringe.</i>	delinco, delinques, &c.	delinque tú, delinca él, delincan ellos.	delinca, delincas, delinca, delincamos, delincaís, delincan.	delinquí.
2. <i>Escoger, to choose.</i>	escojo, escoges, &c.	escoge tú, escoja él, escojan ellos.	escoja, escojas, escoja, escojamos, escojaís, escojan.	escogí.
2. <i>Creer, to believe.</i>	creo.	créa tú.	crea.	creí, creiste, creyó, creímos, creisteis, creyeron.
3. <i>Atribuir, to attribute.</i>	atribuyo, atribuyes, atribuye, atribuimos, atribuis, atribuyen.	atribuye tú, atribuya él, atribuyamos nos, atribuid vos, atribuyan ellos.	atribuya, atribuyas, atribuya, atribuyamos, atribuyaís, atribuyan.	atribuí, atribuiste, atribuyó, atribuimos, atribuisteis, atribuyeron.

REGULAR VERBS

root alters with the termination

Subjunctive Imperfect.	Subjunctive Future.	Future.	Conditional. and Imperfect of the Sub- junctive.	Gerund.
tocara, tocase.	tocare.	tocaré.	tocaría.	—
pagara, pagase.	pagare.	pagaré.	pagaría.	—
venciera, venciese.	venciere.	venceré.	vencería.	—
resarciera, resarciese.	resarciere.	resarciré.	resarciría.	—
delinquiera, delinquiese.	delinquiere.	delinquiré.	delinquiría.	—
escogiera, escogiese.	escogiere.	escogeré.	escogería.	—
creyera, creyese.	creyere.	creeré.	creería.	creyendo.
atribuyera, atribuyese.	atribuyere.	atribuiré.	atribuiría.	atribuyendo.

B.—TABLE OF

The compound and derived verbs are conjugated like their
in Roman numbers, placed

Infinitive.	Indicative Present.	Imperative.	Subjunctive Present.	Preterite Definite.
I. Acertar, <i>to succeed.</i>	acierto.	acierta tú.	acierte.	—
Ascender, <i>to ascend.</i>	asciendo.	asciende tú.	ascienda.	—
II. Almorzar, <i>to breakfast.</i>	almuerzo.	almuerza tú.	almuerce.	—
Absolver, <i>to absolve.</i>	absuelvo.	absuelve tú.	absuelva.	—
Cocer, <i>to cook.</i>	cuezo.	—	cueza.	—
III. Pedir, <i>to ask.</i>	pido.	pide tú.	pida.	pidió (3rd per. sing.), pidieron (3rd per. pl.).
Regir, <i>to govern.</i>	rijo, rijes, &c.	rije tú, rija él, rijan ellos.	rija.	regí.
IV. Sentir, <i>to feel.</i>	siento.	siente tú.	sienta.	sintió, sintieron.
V. Conocer, <i>to know.</i>	conozco.	—	conozca.	—
Lucir, <i>to shine.</i>	luzco.	—	luzca.	—
VI. Andar, <i>to walk.</i>	—	—	anduve.	anduviera, anduviese.
Asir, <i>to seize.</i>	asgo.	—	asga.	—
Caber, <i>to hold (to be contained).</i>	quepo.	—	quepa	cupe.
Caer, <i>to fall.</i>	caigo.	—	caiga.	cayó, cayeron.
Conducir, <i>to lead.</i>	cunduzco.	—	conduzca.	conduje.
Dar, <i>to give.</i>	doy.	—	—	dí.
Decir, <i>to say.</i>	digo.	di.	diga.	dije.
Dormir, <i>to sleep.</i>	duermo.	duerme tú.	duerma.	durmió (3rd per. sing.), durmieron (3rd per. pl.).

IRREGULAR VERBS

primitives. Each of the Six Classes is marked by a figure, at the beginning of the line.

Subjunctive Imperfect.	Subjunctive Future.	Future.	Conditional. <i>and Imperfect of the Sub- junctive.</i>	Gerund.
—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
pidiera, pidiese.	pidiere.	—	—	pidiendo.
rigiera, rigiese.	rigiere.	regiré.	regiría.	rigiendo.
sintiera, sintiese.	sintiere.	—	—	sintiendo.
—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
anduviere.	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
cupiera, cupiese.	cupiere.	cabré.	cabría.	—
cayera, cayese.	cayere.	—	—	—
condujera, condujese.	condujere.	—	—	—
diera, diese.	diere.	—	—	—
dijera, dijese.	dijere.	diré.	diría.	diciendo.
durmiera, durmiese.	durmiere.	—	—	durmiendo.

B.—TABLE OF

Infinitive.	Indicative Present.	Imperative.	Subjunctive Present.	Preterite Definite.
Errar, <i>to mistake.</i>	yerro.	—	yerra.	—
Estar, <i>to be.</i>	estoy.	está tú.	esté.	estuve.
Haber, <i>to have.</i>	he.	—	haya.	hube.
Hacer, <i>to do.</i>	hago.	haz.	haga.	hice.
Ir, <i>to go.</i>	voy.	ve tú.	vaya.	fué.
Jugar, <i>to play.</i>	juego.	juega tú.	juegue.	—
Morir, <i>to die.</i>	muerdo.	muerde tú.	muerda.	murió (3rd per. sing.).
Oír, <i>to hear.</i>	oigo.	—	oiga.	—
Poder, <i>to be able.</i>	puedo.	—	pueda.	pude.
Poner, <i>to put.</i>	pongo.	pon tú.	ponga.	puse.
Querer, <i>to will, love.</i>	quiero.	—	quiera.	quise.
Saber, <i>to know.</i>	sé.	—	sepa.	supe.
Salir, <i>to ascend.</i>	salgo.	—	salga.	—
Ser, <i>to be.</i>	soy.	sé tú.	sea.	fué.
Tener, <i>to have.</i>	tengo.	ten tú.	tenga.	tuve.
Traer, <i>to bring.</i>	traigo.	—	traiga.	traje.
Valer, <i>to be worth.</i>	valgo.	—	valga.	—
Venir, <i>to come.</i>	vengo.	ven tú.	venga.	vine.

IRREGULAR VERBS—*Continued*

Subjunctive Imperfect.	Subjunctive Future.	Future.	Conditional. and Imperfect of the Sub- junctive.	Gerund.
—	—	—	—	—
estuviera, estuviese.	estuviere.	estaré.	estaría.	—
hubiera, hubiese.	hubiere.	habré.	habría.	habiendo.
hiciera, hiciese.	hiciera.	haré.	haría.	—
fuera, fuese.	fuere.	iré.	iría.	yendo.
—	—	—	—	—
muriera, muriese.	muriere.	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
pudiera, pudiese.	pudiere.	podré.	podría.	pudiendo.
pusiera, pusiese.	pusiere.	pondré.	pondría.	—
quisiera, quisiese.	quisiere.	querré.	querría.	—
supiera, supiese.	supiere.	sabré.	sabría.	—
—	—	saldré.	saldría.	—
fuera, fuese.	fuere.	seré.	sería.	siendo.
tuviera, tuviese.	tuviere.	tendré.	tendría.	teniendo.
trajera, trajese.	trajere.	—	—	—
—	—	valdré.	valdría.	—
viniera, viniese.	viniere.	vendré.	vendría.	viniendo.

THE PARTICIPLE

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION IN DETAIL

The participle is so called because it participates in the nature of the verb and of the adjective: of the verb, because it has its signification and complement, and because, with the auxiliaries *to have* and *to be*, it forms several tenses in the verb. Ex.:

Ho leído, *I have read.*

Estoy enfadado, *I am angry.*

Of the adjective, because it serves to qualify substantives. Ex.:

Una carta bien escrita, *A well-written letter.*

Participles are divided into *active* and *past*.

The *active* participle, properly so called, is in Spanish rather a sort of verbal adjective: for the first conjugation it ends in *ante*, as *amante*, loving; for the second in *ente*, as *obediente*, obedient; *oyente*, listening. But this participle is seldom used, and in very few verbs, yet it represents the present participle that belonged to all Latin verbs.

The *past* participle of the first conjugation ends in *ado*, as *amado*, loved; that of the second and third in *ido*, as *obedecido*, obeyed; *oido*, heard. Whenever the verb has another, it is irregular. Verbs with irregular participle may be ranged under two heads: the first, having one perfectly irregular; the second, having a participle to which belong two forms—the one regular, the other irregular.

We reproduce here the list of the eleven verbs, which have a completely irregular past participle.

FIRST CLASS

Verbs having an irregular past participle:

INFINITIVE

abrir, *to open.*

cubrir, *to cover.*

PAST PARTICIPLE

abierto, *opened.*

cubierto, *covered.*

INFINITIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
decir, <i>to say.</i>	dicho, <i>said.</i>
escribir, <i>to write.</i>	escrito, <i>written.</i>
hacer, <i>to do.</i>	hecho, <i>done.</i>
imprimir, <i>to print.</i>	impreso, <i>printed.</i>
morir, <i>to die.</i>	muerto, ¹ <i>dead.</i>
poner, <i>to put.</i>	puesto, <i>put.</i>
resolver, <i>to resolve.</i>	resuelto, <i>resolved.</i>
ver, <i>to see.</i>	visto, <i>seen.</i>
volver, <i>to turn.</i>	vuelto, <i>turned.</i>

The compounds have participles to correspond, as *revuelto*, from *revolver*, to move; *contrahecho*, from *contra-hacer*, to counterfeit; *encubierto*, from *encubrir*, to cover, &c.; so with the compounds of *escribir*, to write; *inscribir*, to inscribe; *proscribir*, to proscribe; the past participle of which may also be *inscripto*, inscribed; *proscripto*, proscribed. *Bendecir*, to bless, and *maldecir*, to curse, must be excepted, as they belong to the second class of verbs with an irregular past participle.

SECOND CLASS

Verbs having a double past participle:

INFINITIVE	REGULAR PARTICIPLE	IRREGULAR PARTICIPLE
absortarse, <i>to be absorbed</i> (obsolete).	absortado (obsolete).	absorto.
abstraer, <i>to abstract.</i>	abstraído.	abstracto.
aceptar, <i>to accept.</i>	aceptado.	acepto.
adquirir, <i>to acquire.</i>	adquirido.	adquisito (obsol.).
aficionarse, <i>to attach oneself.</i>	aficionado.	afecto.
afijar, <i>to fix</i> (obsolete).	afijado (obsolete).	afijo.
afligir, <i>to afflict.</i>	afligido.	aflicto.
aguzar, <i>to whet.</i>	aguzado.	agudo.
ahitar, <i>to overload.</i>	ahitado.	ahito.
alertarse, <i>to hasten.</i>	alertado.	alerto.
angostar, <i>to narrow.</i>	angostado.	angosto.
astringir, <i>to constrain</i> (obsolete).	astringido (obsol.).	astricto.

¹ In some cases custom has authorized the use of this participle in the active sense, as if it belonged to the verb *matar*, to kill; and we say: *He muerto una liebre*, I have killed a hare; instead of *he matado una liebre*.

INFINITIVE	REGULAR PARTICIPLE	IRREGULAR PARTICIPLE
atender, <i>to mind.</i>	atendido.	atento.
bendecir, <i>to bless.</i>	bendecido.	bendito.
circuncidar, <i>to circumcise.</i>	circuncidado.	circunciso.
colmar, <i>to heap up.</i>	colmado.	colmo (obsol.).
combarse, <i>to hold oneself up.</i>	combado.	combo.
compaginar, <i>to join the leaves.</i>	compaginado.	compacto.
compeler, <i>to compel.</i>	compelido.	compulso.
completar, <i>to complete.</i>	completado.	completo.
comprender, <i>to understand.</i>	comprendido.	compenso.
comprimir, <i>to compress.</i>	comprimido.	compreso.
conceder, <i>to grant.</i>	concedido.	conceso (obsol.).
concluir, <i>to conclude.</i>	concluido.	concluso.
concretar, <i>to attach oneself to.</i>	concretado.	concreto.
confesar, <i>to own.</i>	confesado.	confeso.
confundir, <i>to confound.</i>	confundido.	confuso.
consumir, <i>to consume.</i>	consumido.	consunto (obsol.).
contener, <i>to contain.</i>	contenido.	contento.
contentarse, <i>to be satisfied with.</i>	contentado.	contento.
contraer, <i>to constrain.</i>	contraído.	contracto.
contundir, <i>to bruise.</i>	contundido.	contuso.
convelerse, <i>to contract.</i>	convelido.	convulso.
convencer, <i>to convince.</i>	convencido.	convicto.
convertir, <i>to convert.</i>	convertido.	converso.
convulsarse, <i>to convulse.</i>	convulsado.	convulso.
corregir, <i>to correct.</i>	corregido.	correcto.
corromper, <i>to corrupt.</i>	corrupido.	corrupto.
corvar, <i>to bend.</i>	corvado.	corvo.
crespar, <i>to curl.</i>	crespado.	crespo.
cruentar, <i>to ensanguine</i> (obsol.).	cruentado (obsol.).	cruento.
cuadrar, <i>to square.</i>	cuadrado.	cuadro.
cultivar, <i>to cultivate.</i>	cultivado.	culto.
densar, <i>to condense.</i>	densado.	denso.
descalzar, <i>to put off one's shoes and stockings.</i>	descalzado.	descalzo.
desertar, <i>to desert.</i>	desertado.	desierto.
desnudar, <i>to undress.</i>	desnudado.	desnudo.
despertar, <i>to awake.</i>	despertado.	despierto.
destruir, <i>to destroy.</i>	destruido.	destruido (obsol.).
difundir, <i>to diffuse.</i>	difundido.	difuso.
digerir, <i>to digest.</i>	digerido.	digesto (obsol.).
dirigir, <i>to direct.</i>	dirigido.	directo.
dispersar, <i>to disperse.</i>	dispersado.	disperso.

INFINITIVE	REGULAR PARTICIPLE	IRREGULAR PARTICIPLE
distinguir, <i>to distinguish.</i>	distinguido.	distinto.
dividir, <i>to divide.</i>	dividido.	diviso.
elegir, <i>to choose.</i>	elegido.	electo.
enjuagar, <i>to wipe.</i>	enjudo.	enjuto.
erigir, <i>to erect.</i>	erecido.	erecto.
espesar, <i>to thicken.</i>	espesado.	espeso.
estrechar, <i>to tighten.</i>	estrechado.	estrecho.
estreñir, <i>to constipate.</i>	estreñado.	estricto.
exceptuar, <i>to except.</i>	exceptuado.	excepto.
excluir, <i>to exclude.</i>	excluido.	excluso.
excretar, <i>to eject.</i>	excretado.	excreto.
exentar, <i>to exempt.</i>	exentado.	exento.
expeler, <i>to expel.</i>	expelido.	expulso.
expresar, <i>to express.</i>	expresado.	expreso.
extender, <i>to extend.</i>	extendido.	extenso.
extinguir, <i>to extinguish.</i>	extinguido.	extinto.
extraer, <i>to extend.</i>	extraído.	extracto.
faltar, <i>to fail.</i>	faltado.	falto.
favorecer, <i>to favour.</i>	favorecido.	favorito.
fechar, <i>to date.</i>	fechado.	fecho.
fijar, <i>to fix.</i>	fijado.	fijo.
fingir, <i>to feign.</i>	finjado.	ficto.
freir, <i>to fry.</i>	freído.	frito.
hartar, <i>to satiate.</i>	hartado.	harto.
iludir, <i>to elude</i> (obsolete).	iludido (obsolete).	iluso.
imprimir, <i>to print.</i>	imprimido.	impreso.
improvisar, <i>to speak extempore.</i>	improvisado.	improviso.
incluir, <i>to include.</i>	incluido.	incluso.
incurrir, <i>to incur.</i>	incurrido.	incurso.
infartar, <i>to dam up.</i>	infartado.	infarto.
infectar, <i>to infect.</i>	infectado.	} infecto.
inficionar, <i>to corrupt.</i>	inficionado.	
infundir, <i>to infuse.</i>	infundido.	infuso.
injerir, } <i>to graft.</i>	{ injerido.	} injerto.
injertar, }	{ injertado.	
inscribir, <i>to inscribe.</i>	inscrito.	inscrito.
inserir, <i>to insert</i> (obsolete).	inserido (obsolete).	} inserto.
insertar, <i>to insert.</i>	insertado.	
instruir, <i>to instruct.</i>	instruido.	instructo (obsol.).
interrumpir, <i>to interrupt.</i>	interrumpido.	interrupto.
intrusarse, <i>to intrude.</i>	intrusado.	intruso.

INFINITIVE	REGULAR PARTICIPLE	IRREGULAR PARTICIPLE
invertir, <i>to invert.</i>	invertido.	inverso.
juntar, <i>to join.</i>	juntado.	junto.
limpiar, <i>to clean.</i>	limpiado.	limpiado.
maldecir, <i>to curse.</i>	maldecido.	maldito.
malquistar, <i>to embroil.</i>	malquistado.	malquisto.
manifestar, <i>to manifest.</i>	manifestado.	manifiesto.
marchitar, <i>to fade.</i>	marchitado.	marchito.
nacer, <i>to be born.</i>	nacido.	nato.
ocultar, <i>to conceal.</i>	ocultado.	oculto.
omitir, <i>to omit.</i>	omitido.	omiso.
oscurecer, <i>to obscure.</i>	oscurecido.	oscuro.
pasar, <i>to pass.</i>	pasado.	paso.
perfeccionar, <i>to perfect.</i>	perfeccionado.	perfecto.
permitir, <i>to permit.</i>	permitido.	permiso (obsol.).
pervertir, <i>to pervert.</i>	pervertido.	perverso.
polucionar, <i>to soil</i> (seldom used).	polucionado.	poluto.
poseer, <i>to possess.</i>	poseido.	poseso.
prender, <i>to seize.</i>	prendido.	preso.
prescribir, <i>to prescribe.</i>	prescrito.	prescrito.
presumir, <i>to presume.</i>	presumido.	presunto.
pretender, <i>to pretend.</i>	pretendido.	pretenso.
proferir, <i>to pronounce.</i>	proferido.	proferito (obsol.).
profesar, <i>to profess.</i>	profesado.	profeso.
propender, <i>to incline.</i>	propendido.	propenso.
proscribir, <i>to proscribe.</i>	proscrito.	proscrito.
prostituirse, <i>to prostitute.</i>	prostituido.	prostituto.
proveer, <i>to provide.</i>	proveido.	provisto.
raer, <i>to scrape.</i>	raído.	raso.
ranciarse, <i>to grow rancid.</i>	ranciado.	rancio.
rarefacier, <i>to rarefy.</i>	rarefacido.	rarefacto.
recluir, <i>to shut up.</i>	recluido.	recluso.
refletar, <i>to reflect.</i>	reflejado.	refleto.
refringir, <i>to refract.</i>	refringido.	refracto.
repletar, <i>to fill.</i>	repletado.	repleto.
restringir, <i>to confine.</i>	restringido.	restringido.
rizar, <i>to curl.</i>	rizado.	rizo.
romper, <i>to break.</i>	rompido.	roto.
salpresar, <i>to salt.</i>	salpresado.	salpreso.
salvar, <i>to save.</i>	salvado.	salvo.
secar, <i>to dry.</i>	secado.	seco.
selegir, <i>to choose</i> (seldom used).	selegido (seldom used).	selecto.

INFINITIVE	REGULAR PARTICIPLE	IRREGULAR PARTICIPLE
sepultar, <i>to bury.</i>	sepultado.	sepulto.
situar, <i>to situate.</i>	situado.	sito.
soltar, <i>to untie.</i>	soltado.	suelto.
sujetar, <i>to subject.</i>	sujetado.	sujeto.
suprimir, <i>to suppress.</i>	suprimido.	supreso.
surgir, <i>to arise.</i>	surgido.	surto.
suspender, <i>to suspend.</i>	suspendido.	suspenso.
sustituir, <i>to substitute.</i>	sustituido.	sustituto.
tender, <i>to stretch.</i>	tendido.	tenso.
teñir, <i>to dye.</i>	teñido.	tinto.
torcer, <i>to wring.</i>	torcido.	tuerto.
vaciar, <i>to empty.</i>	vaciado.	vacio.
zafarse, <i>to escape.</i>	zafado.	zafo.

The *regular* participle is always employed with *haber*, to form the compound tenses. Ex.:

Se han hartado de fruta, *They have satisfied themselves with fruit.*

The *irregular* past participle is employed as a verbal and absolute adjective; it must never be joined to the verb *haber*, with the exception of *preso*, *prescrito*, *provisto*, *roto*, *injerto*, *opreso*, and *supreso*. With these only can we say either: *ha prendido*, or *ha preso*, he has taken, &c. One of these especially, *roto*, is more used than *rompido*.

PAST PARTICIPLES, HAVING AN ACTIVE SIGNIFICATION

Certain past participles in Spanish have a remarkable property. In spite of their form and signification, which are thoroughly passive, custom has given them an active signification. Some, considered as verbal adjectives, qualify the noun to which they are joined. The following are examples of both:

acostumbrado, <i>accustomed to.</i>	callado, <i>discreet, who knows how to hold his tongue.</i>
agradecido, <i>grateful.</i>	cansado, <i>boring, tiresome to others.</i>
almorzado, <i>who has breakfasted.</i>	cenado, <i>who has supped.</i>
atrevido, <i>bold.</i>	comedido, <i>prudent, measured.</i>
bien hablado, <i>who speaks well.</i>	

comido, *who has dined.*
 desesperado, *despairing of.*
 desprendido, *generous.*
 disimulado, *dissimulated.*
 encogido, *timid.*
 entendido, *clever, intelligent.*
 esforzado, *brave, audacious.*
 fingido, *deceitful.*
 instruido, *learned.*
 leído, *learned, well-read.*
 medido, *cautious, measured.*
 mirado, *circumspect, prudent.*
 moderado, *moderate.*

ocasionado, *quarrelsome, ill-tempered.*
 osado, *venturesome, audacious.*
 parado, *slow, dwindling.*
 parecido, *resembling.*
 pausado, *self-possessed, not in a hurry.*
 porfiado, *obstinate, pertinacious.*
 precavido, *cautious.*
 preciado, *vain, presumptuous.*
 recatado, *prudent.*
 sabido, *susceptible, feeling.*
 valido, *who is in favour.*

These participles do not lose, any more than corresponding words in English, their passive signification. Thus when we say: *hombre leído, mujer leída* (a man or a woman who has read much; a well-read man or woman); *libro leído, carta leída* (a read book, a read letter), the sense of the sentence plainly indicates that *leído* and *leída* have an active signification in the first sentence, and a passive in the second. In Spanish, however, there is sometimes a rather delicate distinction to be made between the two. If we say *Juan es hombre cansado* (John is a tiresome man), the participle has an active signification; whereas in this sentence, *Juan está cansado* (John is tired), the signification is passive.

OBSERVATIONS. — The past participle, joined to the verb *haber*, serves to form the compound tenses, and is invariable; with the verbs *ser*, or *estar*, it forms the passive voice, and in this case agrees in number and gender with its nominative case, as was previously pointed out.

The past participle joined to the verb *tener* is invariable, if *tener* is used as an auxiliary. Ex.:

Mi prima tiene escrito á su padre. *My cousin has written to her father.*

The past participle becomes an adjective, if *tener* is employed as an active verb. Ex.:

Tengo escrita una carta. *I have written a letter, &c.*

Lastly, the participle agrees with the substantive in what are called absolute phrases. Ex.:

Acabada la cena, se despidieron. *The supper ended, they retired.*

VERBAL ADJECTIVES

INFINITIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE	VERBAL ADJECTIVES
absolver , to absolve, acquit.	-ido.	absuelto , absolved, acquitted.
absorver , to absorb, imbibe.	-ido.	absorto , amazed, absorbed.
abstraer , to abstract, secrete.	-ido.	abstracto , abstract.
afectar , to affect, feign, pretend.	-ado.	afecto , affectionate.
aguzar , to sharpen, whet.	-ado.	agudo , sharp, pointed.
alertarse , to be on the alert, on one's guard.	-ado.	alerto , alert, vigilant.
anexar , to annex, join.	-ado.	anexo (anejo) , annexed, joined, joint.
angostar , to narrow, contract.	-ado.	angosto , narrow, strait, close.
atender , to attend to, pay attention to, consider.	-ido.	atento , attentive, mindful, polite.
bendicir , to bless, consecrate.	-ido.	bendito , blessed, consecrated.
bienquerer , to wish (one) well.	-ido.	bienquisto , liked, esteemed.
calentar , to warm, heat.	-ado.	caliente , warm, hot.
cegar , to blind, become blind.	-ado.	ciego , blind.
compaginar , to join, couple.	-ado.	compacto , compact, close.
completar , to complete.	-ado.	completo , complete.
concretar , to cohere, combine.	-ado.	concreto , concrete.
confundir , to confound, confuse.	-ido.	confuso , confused.
contentar , to satisfy, content.	-ado.	{ contento , content, pleased, satisfied.
contentarse , be satisfied, content.		
convencer , to convince.	-ido.	convicto , convicted.
corregir , to correct, amend.	-ido.	correcto , correct.
cortar , to cut (off), curtail.	-ado.	corto , short or little.
crespar , to curl.	-ado.	crespo , crisp, curly.
cultivar , to cultivate.	-ado.	culto , well brought up, accomplished, enlightened.
decidir , to decide, determine, resolve.	-ido.	indeciso , undecided, uncertain.
defender , to defend, forbid.	-ido.	indefenso , defenceless.
descalzar , to take off one's shoes.	-ido.	descalzo , barefoot(ed).
desertar , to desert.	-ado.	desierto , waste, desert, desolate.
desnudar , to denude, undress.	-ado.	desnudo , naked, bare.

INFINITIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE	VERBAL ADJECTIVES
despertar , to wake up.	-ado.	despierto , awake, watchful.
diferenciar , to differ, vary.	-ado.	diferente , different, various.
distinguir , to discern, distinguish.	-ido.	distinto , distinct, different.
distinguirse , to distinguish oneself.	-ido.	distinguido , distinguished.
enjugar , to dry.	-ado.	enjuto , dry, lank, thin.
espesar , to thicken, to condense.	-ado.	espeso , thick, condensed.
estrechar , to tighten, compress.	-ado.	estrecho , narrow, strait, tight.
estrefir , to obstruct.	-ido.	estricto , strict, rigorous, exact.
exceptuar , to except, exempt.	-ado.	excepto , excepting, except.
eximir , to exempt.	-ido.	exento , exempt, free.
extender , to extend, stretch out.	-ido.	extenso , extensive.
extraer , to extract (from a book).	-ido.	(el extracto , the extract, compendium).
falsear , to falsify, counterfeit.	-ado.	falso , wrong, false, deceitful, fictitious.
faltar , to be wanting, need, fail, come short of.	-ado.	falto de , deficient in, short for want of.
favorecer , to favour, befriend.	-ido.	favorito , favourite.
fijar , to fix, fasten, settle.	-ado.	fijo , fixed, firm, settled.
freir , to fry.	-ido.	*frito , fried.
hartar , to satiate, satisfy.	-ado.	harto , satiated, full, satisfied.
imprimir , to print.	-ido.	*impreso , printed.
incluir , to include, enclose.	-ido.	incluso , enclosed.
infectar , to infect.	-ado.	} infecto , infected, infectious.
inficionar , to corrupt, pervert.	-ado.	
ingerir , to insert, graft.	-ido.	} *injerto , inserted, grafted, inoculated.
injertar , to graft, inoculate.	-ado.	
invertir , to invert, invest.	-ido.	inverso , inverse, reverse.
juntar , to join, connect.	-ado.	junto , joint, together.
limpiar , to clean, cleanse, purify.	-ado.	limpio , clean, pure, limpid.
llenar , to fill.	-ado.	lleno , full.
madurar , to ripen, mature.	-ado.	maduro , ripe, mature.
maldecir , to curse.	-ido.	maldito , damned, cursed, accursed.
malquerer , to bear ill will, hate.	-ido.	malquisto , hated, detested.
mancar , to miss, fail; disable, maim.	-ado.	manco , defective, faulty, one-armed, maimed.
manifestar , to manifest, declare, proclaim.	-ado.	manifesto , manifest, clear, patent.
marchitar , to wither, fade.	-ado.	marchito , faded, withered.

INFINITIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE	VERBAL ADJECTIVES
ocultar , to conceal, hide.	-ado.	oculto , concealed, hidden, secret.
omitir , to omit.	-ido.	omiso , remiss, neglectful.
oprimir , to oppress.	-ido.	opreso , oppressed.
perfeccionar , to perfect, accomplish.	-ado.	perfecto , perfect, accomplished.
pervertir , to pervert, deprave, corrupt.	-ido.	perverso , perverse, depraved, corrupt.
prender , to take, seize, arrest.	-ido.	*preso , taken in charge, arrested (taken by the police).
prender con un alfiler , to fasten with a pin.	ido.	
producir , to produce, bring forth.	-ido.	(el producto, the product, produce.)
proveer (de) , to provide with, supply with provisions.	-ido.	*provisto , provided (with).
reflejar , to reflect.	-ado.	(el reflejo, the reflex.)
rizar , to curl, frizzle, frill.	-ado.	rizo , crisp, curly, frizzled.
salvar , to save.	-ado.	salvo , safe, saved.
secar , to dry.	-ado.	seco , dry, barren.
soltar , to loosen, let loose, set free.	-ado.	*suelto , loose, free.
someter , to submit, subdue.	-ido.	sumiso , submissive, humble.
sujetar , to subdue, subject, keep under, curb.	-ado.	sujeto , subject, liable.
suprimir , to suppress.	-ido.	*supreso , suppressed.
suspender , to suspend.	-ido.	suspenso , undecided, in suspense, amazed, astonished.
sustituir , to substitute, take the place of.	-ido.	(el sustituto, the substitute.)
teñir , to dye, colour.	-ido.	tinto , red (of wine).
torcer , to twist, twirl, wring.	-ido.	tuerto , one-eyed.
travesar , to cross, traverse.	-ado.	travieso , restless, mischievous.
vaciar , to empty.	-ado.	vacío , empty, void.
valer , to be worth, be of value, hold good.	-ido.	válido , valid.
yuntar , to yoke (oxen).	-ado.	(la yunta, the pair, yoke of oxen.)

N.B.—The verbal adjectives marked with an asterisk may be also used as *participles*, that is to say, for the formation of compound tenses with *haber*.

A LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS IN ALPHABETIC ORDER

The Roman numeral which precedes each infinitive, shows to which class of the Table B the verb belongs.

- | | |
|---|---|
| II. Absolver, <i>to absolve.</i> | I. Cerner, <i>to sift.</i> |
| I. Acertar, <i>to succeed.</i> | I. Cerrar, <i>to shut.</i> |
| II. Acordar, <i>to suit.</i> | I. Cimentar, <i>to cement.</i> |
| II. Acostar, <i>to lay.</i> | II. Cocer, <i>to cook.</i> |
| I. Acrecentar, <i>to increase.</i> | II. Colar, <i>to flow.</i> |
| I. Adestrar, <i>to make handy.</i> | III. Colegir, <i>to collect, to conclude.</i> |
| IV. Adherir, <i>to adhere.</i> | II. Colgar, <i>to suspend.</i> |
| IV. Adquirir, <i>to acquire.</i> | I. Comenzar, <i>to begin.</i> |
| IV. Advertir, <i>to mind.</i> | III. Competir, <i>to rival.</i> |
| II. Agorar, <i>to presage.</i> | III. Concebir, <i>to conceive.</i> |
| I. Alentar, <i>to encourage.</i> | I. Concertar, <i>to concert.</i> |
| II. Almorzar, <i>to breakfast.</i> | II. Concordar, <i>to agree.</i> |
| II. Amolar, <i>to sharpen.</i> | VI. Conducir, <i>to lead.</i> |
| VI. Andar, <i>to walk.</i> | IV. Conferir, <i>to confer.</i> |
| I. Apacentar, <i>to feed.</i> | I. Confesar, <i>to confess.</i> |
| II. Apostar, <i>to wager.</i> | V. Conocer, <i>to know.</i> |
| I. Apretar, <i>to tighten.</i> | II. Consolar, <i>to console.</i> |
| II. Aprobar, <i>to approve.</i> | III. Constreñir, <i>to constrain.</i> |
| I. Arrendar, <i>to rent on lease.</i> | II. Contar, <i>to count.</i> |
| IV. Arrepentirse, <i>to repent.</i> | IV. Controvertir, <i>to controvert.</i> |
| I. Ascender, <i>to mount.</i> | IV. Convertir, <i>to convert.</i> |
| I. Asentar, <i>to sit down.</i> | II. Costar, <i>to cost.</i> |
| I. Aserrar, <i>to saw.</i> | VI. Dar, <i>to give.</i> [a thing. |
| I. Asertar, <i>to aim.</i> | I. Decantar, <i>to begin the use of</i> |
| VI. Asir, <i>to seize.</i> | VI. Decir, <i>to say.</i> |
| II. Asolar, <i>to ravage.</i> | I. Defender, <i>to defend.</i> |
| I. Atender, <i>to apply.</i> [down. | IV. Deferir, <i>to defer.</i> |
| I. Aterrar (= derribar), <i>to throw</i> | II. Degollar, <i>to behead.</i> |
| I. Atestar (= llenar), <i>to fill.</i> | I. Denegar, <i>to deny.</i> |
| I. Atravesar, <i>to cross.</i> | II. Denostar, <i>to abuse.</i> |
| I. Aventar, <i>to ventilate.</i> | I. Derrengar, <i>to lame in the hip.</i> |
| II. Avergonzar, <i>to shame.</i> | III. Derretir, <i>to melt.</i> |
| VI. Bendecir, <i>to bless.</i> | I. Desacertar, <i>to mistake.</i> |
| VI. Caber, <i>to hold, to be contained.</i> | I. Desalentar, <i>to discourage.</i> |
| VI. Caer, <i>to fall.</i> | I. Desapretar, <i>to unloose.</i> |
| I. Calentar, <i>to warm.</i> | I. Desasosegar, <i>to disquiet.</i> |
| I. Cegar, <i>to blind.</i> | I. Desatentar, <i>to trouble.</i> |
| III. Cefñir, <i>to gird.</i> | I. Descender, <i>to descend.</i> |

- II. Descollar, *to surpass in height.*
 I. Desconcertar, *to disturb.*
 I. Desempedrar, *to unpave.*
 I. Desencerrar, *to put in liberty.*
 I. Desenterrar, *to disinter.*
 II. Desfogar, *to vent fire.*
 I. Deshellar, *to thaw.*
 I. Desherrar, *to unshoe (a horse).*
 III. Desleir, *to dissolve.*
 I. Desmembrar, *to dismember.*
 II. Desollar, *to slay.*
 * II. Desovar, *to spawn.*
 I. Despedrar, *to clear of stones.*
 I. Despernar, *to cut the legs.*
 I. Despertar, *to awake.*
 I. Desplegar, *to unfold.*
 I. Desterrar, *to exile.* [shame.
 II. Desvergonzarse, *to lose all*
 I. Diezmar, *to tithe.*
 IV. Diferir, *to differ.*
 IV. Digerir, *to digest.*
 IV. Discernir, *to discern.*
 II. Discordar, *to disagree.*
 II. Disolver, *to dissolve.*
 IV. Divertir, *to divert.*
 II. Doler, *to hurt.*
 VI. Dormir, *to sleep.*
 III. Elegir, *to choose.*
 I. Empedrar, *to pave.*
 I. Empezar, *to begin.*
 II. Emporcar, *to dirty.*
 I. Encender, *to kindle, to light.*
 I. Encerrar, *to shut up.*
 I. Encomendar, *to recommend.*
 II. Encontrar, *to meet.* [ment.
 II. Encordar, *to string an instru-*
 I. Encubertar, *to cover.*
 III. Engreir, *to adorn, to elate.*
 II. Engrosar, *to enlarge.*
 I. Enmendar, *to correct.*
 II. Ensalmorar, *to pickle.*
 I. Ensangrentar, *to make bloody.*
 I. Entender, *to hear.*
 I. Enterrar, *to bury.*
 VI. Errar, *to fail.*
 I. Escarmentar, *to correct.*
 II. Escocer, *to cook.*
 VI. Estar, *to be.*
 I. Estregar, *to rub.*
 III. Estreñir, *to clasp.*
 II. Forzar, *to force.*
 I. Fregar, *to wash, to scrub.*
 III. Freir, *to fry.*
 III. Gemir, *to complain.*
 I. Gobernar, *to govern.*
 VI. Haber, *to have.*
 VI. Hacer, *to make, to do.*
 I. Heder, *to stink.*
 I. Helar, *to freeze.*
 I. Hender, *to cleave.*
 III. Hefir, *to knead with one's fists.*
 IV. Herir, *to wound.*
 I. Herrar, *to shoe (a horse).*
 IV. Hervir, *to boil.*
 II. Holgar, *to rest.*
 II. Hollar, *to tread down.*
 I. Incensar, *to perfume with incense.*
 IV. Inferir, *to infer.*
 I. Infernar, *to damn.*
 IV. Ingerir, *to graft.*
 IV. Inquirir, *to inquire.*
 I. Invernar, *to winter.*
 IV. Invertir, *to upset.*
 VI. Ir, *to go.*
 VI. Jugar, *to play.*
 II. Llover, *to rain.*
 V. Lucir, *to shine.*
 I. Manifestar, *to manifest.*
 III. Medir, *to measure.*
 I. Mentar, *to mention.*
 IV. Mentir, *to lie.*
 I. Merendar, *to lunch.*
 II. Moler, *to grind.*
 II. Morder, *to bite.*
 VI. Morir, *to die.*
 II. Mostrar, *to show.*
 II. Mover, *to move.*

- I. Negar, *to deny*.
 I. Nevar, *to snow*.
 VI. Oir, *to hear*.
 II. Oler, *to smell*.
 III. Pedir, *to ask*.
 I. Pensar, *to think*.
 I. Perder, *to lose*.
 I. Perniquebrar, *to break the legs*.
 IV. Pervertir, *to pervert*.
 I. Plegar, *to bend*.
 II. Poblar, *to people*.
 VI. Poder, *to be able*.
 VI. Poner, *to put*.
 IV. Preferir, *to prefer*.
 II. Probar, *to prove*.
 IV. Proferir, *to utter*.
 V. Pudrir, *to rot*.
 I. Quebrar, *to break*.
 VI. Querer, *to will, to love*.
 I. Recomendar, *to recommend*.
 II. Recordar, *to remind*.
 II. Recostar, *to lay on one side*.
 IV. Referir, *to refer*.
 I. Regar, *to water*.
 III. Regir, *to govern*.
 II. Regoldar, *to belch*.
 III. Reir, *to laugh*.
 I. Remendar, *to patch*.
 III. Rendir, *to return*.
 I. Renegar, *to forswear*.
 III. Reñir, *to quarrel*.
 II. Renovar, *to renew*.
 III. Repetir, *to repeat*.
 I. Requebrar, *to cajole*.
 IV. Requerir, *to request*.
 II. Resollar, *to blow*.
 II. Resolver, *to resolve*.
 I. Retemblar, *to quake*.
 I. Retentar, *to threaten with a relapse*.
 I. Reventar, *to burst*.
 II. Rodar, *to roll*.
 II. Rogar, *to pray, to beg*.
 VI. Saber, *to know*.
 VI. Salir, *to go out*.
 VI. Satisfacer, *to satisfy*.
 I. Segar, *to mow*.
 III. Seguir, *to follow*.
 I. Sembrar, *to sow*.
 I. Sentarse, *to sit down*.
 IV. Sentir, *to feel*.
 VI. Ser, *to be*.
 I. Serrar, *to saw*.
 III. Servir, *to serve*.
 III. Solar, *to pave*.
 II. Soldar, *to solder*.
 II. Soler, *to be accustomed*.
 II. Soltar, *to untie*.
 II. Sonar, *to sound, to ring*.
 I. Soñar, *to dream*.
 I. Sosegar, *to rest*.
 I. Soterrar, *to bury*.
 I. Subarrendar, *to underlet*.
 I. Tañer, *to play on a stringed instrument*.
 I. Temblar, *to tremble*.
 I. Tender, *to stretch*.
 VI. Tener, *to have, to possess*.
 III. Tefiir, *to dye*.
 I. Tentar, *to tempt*.
 II. Torcer, *to wring*.
 II. Tostar, *to toast*.
 VI. Traer, *to bring*.
 I. Trascender, *to penetrate*.
 II. Trascordarse de, *to forget*.
 I. Trasegar, *to transpose, to decant*.
 II. Trocar, *to exchange*.
 II. Tronar, *to thunder*.
 I. Tropezar, *to stumble*.
 VI. Valer, *to be worth*.
 VI. Venir, *to come*.
 I. Verter, *to pour out*.
 III. Vestir, *to dress*.
 II. Volar, *to fly*.
 II. Volcar, *to upset*.
 II. Volver, *to return*.

IRREGULAR VERBS THAT DO NOT APPEAR IN THE FOREGOING LIST

It is not desirable to extend this list to too great a length; in consequence the following have not been included in it:—

1st.—Verbs ending in *acer*, *ecer*, *ocer*, which are conjugated like *conocer*, to know.

2nd.—Verbs ending in *ucir*, which are conjugated like *lucir*, to shine.

3rd.—Verbs ending in *ducir*, which are conjugated like *conducir*, to lead.

4th.—Verbs ending in *gir*, which are conjugated like *regir*, to govern.

5th.—All compound verbs, or those derived from the primitive verb contained in the foregoing list.

ADDITIONAL NOTES ON THE SPANISH VERBS

We have already conjugated affirmatively the auxiliaries and the three regular active verbs belonging to the three different conjugations. But the pupils must conjugate aloud, writing every verb in four different ways, viz.: (1) affirmatively; (2) negatively; (3) interrogatively; (4) interrogatively and negatively.

I. Negative Form of the Auxiliary *Haber*, to have

INFINITIVE PRESENT	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
No haber, <i>not to have</i> .	No habiendo, <i>not having</i> .
INFINITIVE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
No haber habido, <i>not to have had</i> .	No habido, <i>not had</i> .

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Yo no he, *I have not*.¹
 Tu no has, &c., *thou hast not, &c.*

PRETERITE DEFINITE

Yo no hube, &c., *I had not, &c.*

PRETERITE ANTERIOR

Yo no hube habido, &c., *I had not had, &c.*

SIMPLE FUTURE

Yo no habré, &c., *I shall not have, &c.*

CONDITIONAL PRESENT

Yo no habría, &c., *I should not have, &c.*

IMPERFECT

Yo no habia, *I had not*.
 Tú no habias, &c., *thou hadst not, &c.*

PRETERITE INDEFINITE

Yo no he habido, &c., *I have not had, &c.*

PLUPERFECT

Yo no habia habido, &c., *I had not had, &c.*

COMPOUND FUTURE

Yo no habré habido, &c., *I shall not have had, &c.*

CONDITIONAL PAST

Yo no habría habido, &c., *I should not have had, &c.*

IMPERATIVE

We do not give the conjugation of this mood; the first and third persons are no longer in use, any more than the second person singular, which is only used in the phrase, *he aquí*, here, &c.²

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

Yo no haya, &c., *that I may not have, &c.*

PRETERITE INDEFINITE

Yo no haya habido, &c., *that I may not have had, &c.*

IMPERFECT

Yo no hubiera, habría, hubiese, &c., *that I might not have, &c.*

PLUPERFECT

Yo no hubiera, habría, hubiese habido, &c., *that I might not have had, &c.*

¹ The pronouns are often suppressed in the conjugation of Spanish verbs, and it is as correct to say: *no he, no has, no ha, no hemos, no habeis, no han*, as *yo no he, &c.* But as they are expressed whenever another pronoun is employed, or whenever their use is required to render the discourse clear or rapid, pupils will do right to practise joining them to the verb, so as to know their proper place in the conjugation.

² As we have already said, the auxiliary *haber* having no imperative, the subjunctive is used instead in the negative form, with the inversion of the pronoun.

INTERROGATIVE FORM

The interrogative form is only distinguished from the affirmative form by the inversion of the pronoun, which is placed after the verb. The pronoun is generally omitted in Spanish, but, as there are some cases in which it is expressed, it is necessary to be familiar with this form of conjugation.

¿He yo? ¿tengo yo? <i>have I?</i>	¿Soy yo? ¿estoy yo? <i>am I?</i>
¿Has tú? ¿tienes tú? <i>hast thou?</i>	¿Eras tú? ¿estabas tú? <i>wast thou?</i>
¿Había él? ¿tenía él? <i>had he?</i>	¿Fué él? ¿estuvo él? <i>was he?</i>
¿Hubo él? ¿tuvo él? <i>had he?</i>	
¿Ha habido, tenido ella? <i>has she had?</i>	¿Ha sido, estado ella? <i>has she been?</i>
¿Hubimos habido, tenido nosotros? <i>had we had?</i>	¿Hubimos sido, estado nosotros? <i>had we been?</i>
¿Habíais habido, tenido vosotros? <i>had you had?</i>	¿Habíais sido, estado vosotros? <i>had you been?</i>
¿Habrán ellos? ¿tendrán ellos? <i>will they have?</i>	¿Serán ellos? ¿estarán ellos? <i>will they be?</i>
¿Habrán habido, tenido ellas? <i>will they (fem.) have had?</i>	¿Habrán sido, estado ellas? <i>will they have been?</i>
¿Habría, tendría el vecino? <i>would the neighbour have?</i>	¿Sería (estaría) la mujer? <i>would the woman be?</i>
¿Habrían habido, tenido sus hermanos de Vd.? <i>would your brothers have had?</i>	¿Habrían sido, estado sus hermanas de Vd.? <i>would your sisters have been?</i>

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORM

¿No he yo? ¿No tengo yo? <i>have I not?</i>	¿No soy yo? ¿no estoy yo? <i>am I not?</i>
¿No habías tú? ¿no tenías tú? <i>hadst thou not?</i>	¿No eras tú? ¿no estabas tú? <i>wert thou not?</i>
¿No hubo él? ¿no tuvo él? <i>had he not?</i>	¿No fué él? ¿no estuvo él? <i>was he not?</i>
¿No ha habido, tenido ella? <i>has she not had?</i>	¿No ha sido, estado ella? <i>has she not been?</i>
¿No hubimos habido, tenido nosotros? <i>had we not had?</i>	¿No hubimos sido, estado nosotros? <i>had we not been?</i>
¿No habíais habido, tenido vosotros? <i>had you not had?</i>	¿No habíais sido, estado vosotros? <i>had you not been?</i>
¿No habrán ellos? <i>will they not have?</i>	¿No serán ellos? ¿no estarán ellos? <i>will they not be?</i>
¿No habrán habido, tenido ellas? <i>will they not have had?</i>	¿No habrán sido, estado ellas? <i>will they (fem.) not have been?</i>

¿No habría el vecino? *would the neighbour not have?*

¿No habrían habido, tenido sus hermanos de Vd.? *would your brothers not have had?*

¿No sería, estaría la mujer? *would not the woman be?*

¿No habrían sido, estado sus hermanas de Vd.? *would not your sisters have been?*

II. Negative Form of an Active Verb

INFINITIVE PRESENT

No amar, *not to love.*

INFINITIVE PAST

No haber amado, *not to have loved.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

No amando, *not loving.*

PAST PARTICIPLE

No amado, *not loved.*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I do not love, &c.

Yo no amo.

Tú no amas.

Él or ella no ama.

Nosotros no amamos.

Vosotros no amais.

Ellos or ellas no aman.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I loved not, &c.

Yo no anié.

Tú no amaste.

Él no amó, &c.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR

I had not loved, &c.

Yo no hube amado, &c.

SIMPLE FUTURE

I shall not love, &c.

Yo no amaré.

Tú no amarás, &c.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT

I should not love, &c.

Yo no amaría.

Tú no amarías, &c.

IMPERFECT

I did not love, &c.

Yo no amaba.

Tú no amabas.

Él or ella no amaba.

Nosotros no amábamos.

Vosotros no amabais.

Ellos or ellas no amaban.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE

I have not loved, &c.

Yo no he amado.

Tú no has amado.

Él no ha amado, &c.

PLUPERFECT

I had not loved, &c.

Yo no había amado, &c.

COMPOUND FUTURE

I shall not have loved, &c.

Yo no habré amado.

Tú no habrás amado, &c.

CONDITIONAL PAST

I should not have loved, &c.

Yo no habría amado.

Tú no habría amado.

IMPERATIVE

Let me not love. No ame yo.
Love not thou, &c. No ames tú, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

That I may not love, &c.
 No ame, &c.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE

That I may not have loved, &c.
 Yo no haya amado, &c.

IMPERFECT

That I might not love, &c.
 Yo no amara, amaría, amase, &c.

PLUPERFECT

That I might not have loved, &c.
 Yo no hubiera, habría, hubiese
 amado, &c.

III. Model of the Conjugation of a Passive Verb

There is in Spanish no model of the passive conjugation, and grammarians generally omit it altogether. The simple tenses are employed, though very seldom, by some authors, and the compound tenses are never used. In conversation the Spaniards always avoid the passive form, and use the reflexive instead. Thus, they say: *La sabiduría se alaba por todos* (Learning is praised by everybody), instead of saying (free translation), *la sabiduría es alabada de or por todos*. To give the pupil a model for his exercises we shall furnish him with the literal translation in Spanish of the passive form in English, recommending him at the same time to place in the exercises, opposite the tense he conjugates, the corresponding tense, taken from the reflexive form or form with *se*.¹

¹ In conjugating each of the tenses the pupil may proceed according to the following model:—INDICATIVE PRESENT: *Me alaban, ven, oyen*, they praise, perceive, hear me; *le or la alaban, ven, oyen*, they praise, perceive, hear him or her; or (in reflexive form) *se alaba, ve, oye*; *nos alaban, ven, oyen*, they praise, perceive, hear us; *os alaban, ven, oyen*, they praise, perceive, hear you; *les or las alaban, ven, oyen*, they praise, perceive, hear them, or (in reflexive form) *se alaban, ven, oyen*. IMPERFECT: *Me alababan, veían, oían*, they praised me, &c. PRETERITE DEFINITE:

INFINITIVE PRESENT

Ser alabado, visto, oído, *to be praised, perceived, heard.*

INFINITIVE PAST

Haber sido alabado, visto, oído, *to have been praised, perceived, heard.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Siendo alabado, visto, oído, *being praised, perceived, heard.*

PAST PARTICIPLE

Sido alabado, visto, oído, *been praised, perceived, heard.*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I am praised, perceived, heard, &c.

Yo soy alabado, visto, oído, &c.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I was praised, perceived, heard, &c.

Yo fui alabado, visto, oído, &c.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR

I had been praised, perceived, heard, &c.

Yo hube sido alabado, visto, oído, &c.

FUTURE

I shall be praised, perceived, heard, &c.

Yo seré alabado, visto, oído, &c.

IMPERFECT

I was praised, perceived, heard, &c.

Yo era alabado, visto, oído, &c.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE

I have been praised, perceived, heard, &c.

Yo he sido alabado, visto, oído, &c.

PLUPERFECT

I had been praised, perceived, heard, &c.

Yo había sido alabado, visto, oído, &c.

COMPOUND FUTURE

I shall have been praised, perceived, heard, &c.

Yo habré sido alabado, visto, oído, &c.

Me alabaron, vieron, oyeron, they praised me, &c. PRETERITE INDEFINITE: *Me han alabado, visto, oído*, they have praised me, &c. PRETERITE ANTERIOR: *Me hubieron alabado, visto, oído*, they had praised me, &c. PLUPERFECT: *Me habían alabado, visto, oído*, they had praised me, &c. FUTURE: *Me alabarán, verán, oirán*, they will praise me, &c. COMPOUND FUTURE: *Me habrán alabado, visto, oído*, they will have praised me, &c. CONDITIONAL PRESENT: *Me alabarian, verían, oirían*, they would praise me, &c. CONDITIONAL PAST: *Me hubieran alabado, visto, oído*, they would have praised me, &c. IMPERATIVE: *Aldbenme, venme, oyenme*, let them praise me, &c. SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT: *Aldbenme, venme, oyenme*, that they may praise me, &c. IMPERFECT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE: *Alabáranme, viéranme, oyéranme*, that I might be praised, &c. PRETERITE INDEFINITE: *Hayanme alabado, visto, oído*, that they may have praised me, &c. PLUPERFECT: *Hubieranme alabado, visto, oído*, that they might have praised me, &c.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT

*I should be praised, perceived,
heard, &c.*

Yo seria alabado, visto, oído, &c.

CONDITIONAL PAST

*I should have been praised, per-
ceived, heard, &c.*

Yo hubiera sido alabado, visto,
oído, &c.

IMPERATIVE

Sea yo alabado, visto, oído, *let me be praised, &c.*

Sé alabado, visto, oído, *be thou praised, &c.*

Sea alabado visto, oído, *let him be praised, &c.*

Seamos alabados, vistos, oídos, *let us be praised, &c.*

Sed alabados, vistos, oídos, *be ye praised, &c.*

Sean alabados, vistos, oídos, *let them be praised, &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

*That I may be praised, per-
ceived, heard, &c.*

Que yo sea, esté alabado, visto,
oído, &c.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE

*That I may have been praised,
perceived, heard, &c.*

Que yo haya sido, estado alabado,
visto, oído, &c.

IMPERFECT

*That I might be praised, per-
ceived, heard, &c.*

Que yo fuera alabado, visto, oído,
&c.

PLUPERFECT

*That I might have been praised,
perceived, heard, &c.*

Que yo hubiera sido alabado,
visto, oído, &c.

IV. Model of the Conjugation of a Neuter Verb

NOTE.—Neuter verbs are conjugated like the active; they form their compound tenses with the auxiliary haber, and their past participles are invariable.

INFINITIVE PRESENT

Llegar, *to arrive.*

INFINITIVE PAST

Haber llegado (and not *ser lle-
gado*), *to have arrived.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Llegando, *arriving.*

PAST PARTICIPLE

Llegado, *arrived.*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT
<i>I arrive, &c.</i>
Yo llego, &c.
PRETERITE DEFINITE
<i>I arrived, &c.</i>
Yo llegué, &c.
PRETERITE ANTERIOR
<i>I had arrived, &c.</i>
Yo hube llegado, &c.
FUTURE PRESENT
<i>I shall arrive, &c.</i>
Yo llegaré, &c.
CONDITIONAL PRESENT
<i>I should arrive, &c.</i>
Yo llegaría, &c.

IMPERFECT
<i>I arrived, &c.</i>
Yo llegaba, &c.
PRETERITE INDEFINITE
<i>I have arrived, &c.</i>
Yo he llegado, &c.
PLUPERFECT
<i>I had arrived, &c.</i>
Yo había llegado, &c.
FUTURE PAST
<i>I shall have arrived, &c.</i>
Yo habré llegado, &c.
CONDITIONAL PAST
<i>I should have arrived, &c.</i>
Yo habría llegado, &c.

IMPERATIVE

Llegue yo, *let me arrive.*
 Llegas tú, *arrive thou.*
 Llegue él, *let him arrive.*

Lleguemos nosotros, *let us arrive.*
 Llegad vosotros, *arrive ye.*
 Lleguen ellos, *let them arrive.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT
<i>That I may arrive, &c.</i>
Yo llegue, &c.
PRETERITE INDEFINITE
<i>That I may have arrived, &c.</i>
Yo haya llegado, &c.
FUTURE
<i>I shall arrive, &c.</i>
Yo hubiere llegado, &c.

IMPERFECT
<i>That I might arrive, &c.</i>
Yo llegare, llegaria, llegase, &c.
PLUPERFECT
<i>That I might have arrived, &c.</i>
Yo hubiese llegado, &c.

V. Model of the Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb

NOTE.—Reflexive verbs are conjugated, like the neuter verbs, with **haber** as auxiliary; and in all their tenses with two pronouns of the same person. Observe, however, that the first pronoun is generally suppressed.

INFINITIVE PRESENT

Lisonjearse, *to flatter oneself.*

INFINITIVE PAST

Haberse lisonjeado, *to have flattered oneself.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Lisonjéandose, *flattering oneself.*

PAST PARTICIPLE

Habiéndose lisonjeado, *flattered oneself.*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I flatter myself, &c.

Yo me lisonjee.

Tú te lisonjeas.

Él se lisonjea.

Nosotros nos lisonjeamos.

Vosotros os lisonjeais.

Ellos se lisonjean.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I flattered myself, &c.

Yo me lisonjee.

Tú te lisonjeaste.

Él se lisonjeó.

Nosotros nos lisonjeámos.

Vosotros os lisonjeásteis.

Ellos se lisonjeáron.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR

I had flattered myself, &c.

Yo me hube lisonjeado.

Tú te hubiste lisonjeado.

Él se hubo lisonjeado.

Nosotros nos hubimos lisonjeado.

Vosotros os hubisteis lisonjeado.

Ellos se hubieron lisonjeado.

IMPERFECT

I flattered myself, &c.

Yo me lisonjeaba.

Tú te lisonjeabas.

Él se lisonjeaba.

Nosotros nos lisonjeábamos.

Vosotros os lisonjeabais.

Ellos se lisonjeaban.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE

I have flattered myself, &c.

Yo me he lisonjeado.

Tu te has lisonjeado.

El se ha lisonjeado.

Nosotros nos habíamos lisonjeado.

Vosotros os habéis lisonjeado.

Ellos se han lisonjeado.

PLUPERFECT

I had flattered myself, &c.

Yo me había lisonjeado.

Tú te habías lisonjeado.

Él se había lisonjeado.

Nosotros nos habíamos lisonjeado.

Vosotros os habíais lisonjeado.

Ellos se habían lisonjeado.

FUTURE

I shall flatter myself, &c.

Yo me lisonjearé.
 Tú te lisonjearás.
 Él se lisonjeará.
 Nosotros nos lisonjearémos.
 Vosotros os lisonjearéis.
 Ellos se lisonjearán.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT

I should flatter myself, &c.

Yo me lisonjearía.
 Tú te lisonjearías.
 Él se lisonjearía.
 Nosotros nos lisonjearíamos.
 Vosotros os lisonjearíais.
 Ellos se lisonjearían.

COMPOUND FUTURE

I shall have flattered myself, &c.

Yo me habré lisonjeado.
 Tú te habrás lisonjeado.
 Él se habrá lisonjeado.
 Nosotros nos habrémos lisonjeado.
 Vosotros os habréis lisonjeado.
 Ellos se habrán lisonjeado.

CONDITIONAL PAST

I should have flattered myself, &c.

Yo me habría lisonjeado.
 Tú te habrías lisonjeado.
 Él se habría lisonjeado. [jeado.
 Nosotros nos habríamos lison-
 Vosotros os habríais lisonjeado.
 Ellos se habrían lisonjeado.

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR

Let me flatter myself, &c.

Lisonjéeme.
 Lisonjéate.
 Lisonjéese.

PLURAL

Let us flatter ourselves, &c.

Lisonjeémonos.
 Lisonjeaos.
 Lisonjeense.

The *s* of the first person plural, and the *d* of the second, are always suppressed in the imperative of reflexive verbs. Thus we say: *Amémonos, amaos*, let us love one another, love one another; and not *amemos nos, amad os*.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

That I may flatter myself, &c.

Yo me lisonjee.
 Tú te lisonjées.
 Él se lisonjee.
 Nosotros nos lisonjeémos.
 Vosotros os lisonjeéis.
 Ellos se lisonjéen.

IMPERFECT

That I might flatter myself, &c.

Yo me lisonjeara, lisonjearia, lisonjearase.
 Tú te lisonjearas, lisonjearias, lisonjearases. [jearase.
 Él se lisonjeara, lisonjearia, lison-
 Nosotros nos lisonjeáremos, lison-
 jearíamos, lisonjeásemos.
 Vosotros os lisonjearais, lison-
 jearíais, lisonjearaseis.
 Ellos se lisonjearan, lisonjearian, lisonjearasen.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE

That I may have flattered myself, &c.

Yo me haya lisonjeado.

Tú te hayas lisonjeado.

Él se haya lisonjeado.

Nosotros nos hayamos lisonjeado.

Vosotros os hayais lisonjeado.

Ellos se hayan lisonjeado.

FUTURE

I shall flatter myself, &c.

Yo me lisonjeare.

Tú te lisonjeares.

Él se lisonjeare.

Nosotros nos lisonjaremos.

Vosotros os lisonjeareis.

Ellos os lisonjearán.

PLUPERFECT

That I might have flattered myself, &c.

Yo me hubiera, habría, hubiese lisonjeado.

Tú te hubieras, habrías, hubieses lisonjeado.

Él se hubiera, habría, hubiese lisonjeado.

Nosotros nos hubiéramos, habríamos, hubiésemos lisonjeado.

Vosotros os hubierais, hubierais, hubieseis lisonjeado.

Ellos se hubieren, habrían, hubiesen lisonjeado.

COMPOUND FUTURE

I shall have flattered myself, &c.

Yo me hubiere lisonjeado.

Tú te hubieres lisonjeado.

Él se hubiere lisonjeado.

Nosotros nos hubiéremos lisonjeado.

Vosotros os hubiereis lisonjeado.

Ellos se hubieren lisonjeado.

VI. Model of the Conjugation of an Impersonal Verb

Impersonal verbs are only used in the infinitive, and in the other tenses only in the third person singular.

INFINITIVE PRESENT

Lloviznar, *to drizzle.*

INFINITIVE PAST

Haber lloviznado, *to have drizzled.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Lloviznando, *drizzling.*

PAST PARTICIPLE

Lloviznado, *drizzled.*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Llovizna, *it drizzles.*

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Llovizó, *it drizzled.*

IMPERFECT

Lloviznaba, *it drizzled.*

PRETERITE INDEFINITE

Ha lloviznado, *it has drizzled.*

PRETERITE ANTERIOR

Hubo lloviznado, *it has drizzled.*

FUTURE SIMPLE

Lloviznar , *it will drizzle.*

PLUPERFECT

Hab a lloviznado, *it has drizzled.*

COMPOUND FUTURE

Habr a lloviznado, *it will have drizzled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

Llovizne, *that it may drizzle.*

PRETERITE DEFINITE

Haya lloviznado, *that it may have drizzled.*

FUTURE SIMPLE

Lloviznare, *it will drizzle.*

IMPERFECT

Lloviznara, lloviznar a, lloviznase, *that it might drizzle.*

PLUPERFECT

Hubiera, hab a, hubiese lloviznado, *that it might have drizzled.*

COMPOUND FUTURE

Hubiere lloviznado, *it will have drizzled.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS

acaecer, } *to happen.*
 acontec , }
 alborear, *to dawn.*
 amanecer, *to begin to be daylight.*
 anoecer, *to begin to be night.*
 constar, *to be clear or evident.*
 convenir, *to suit.*
 escarchar, *to chill, to freeze.*
 granizar, *to hail.*
 helar, *to freeze.*

importar, *to import.*
 llover, *to rain.*
 nevar, *to snow.*
 parecer, *to seem.*
 relampaguear, *to lighten.*
 ser menester, *to be necessary.*
 suceder, *to happen.*
 tronar, *to thunder.*
 ventar, *to be windy.*
 ventiscar, *to be windy and snowy.*

The third persons of these verbs are:

acaecer,	acaec�a,	acaeci�, &c.
acontece,	acontec�a,	actonteci�, &c.
alborea,	alboreaba,	albore�, &c.

NOTE.—All these verbs may be employed in a figurative sense, and then they have all their persons; but when used in their proper sense, they only have the third person singular.

Amanecer and *anoecer* are impersonal only when they mean the rising and setting of the sun. They are

also conjugated with the three persons in all the tenses, and mean then, *to arrive, to be in a place, in a state, at the rising or the setting of the sun.*

*I arrived at Madrid at sunrise,
and at Toledo at sunset.
Thou wentest to bed well, and
didst rise ill.*

Yo amanecí en Madrid, y ano-
checeí en Toledo.
Tú anoheciste bueno, y amaneciste malo.

VII. Irregular Verbs and their Conjugation

There are in Spanish several sorts of Irregular verbs in each of the three conjugations; the irregularity being confined to certain moods, tenses, and persons that vary. We shall give a model of each of these verbs, followed by a list of the verbs which have the same irregularity.

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATION.—A remark, which facilitates extremely the study of the Irregular verbs, is that in general:

1st.—When the present of the indicative is irregular, the imperative and present of the subjunctive are also irregular.

2nd.—When the preterite definite is irregular, the two forms of the imperfect of the subjunctive in *ra* and *se*, and the future of the subjunctive, are also irregular.

3rd.—When the future is irregular, the conditional is also irregular, viz.: the form *ria* of the imperfect of the subjunctive.

FIRST CONJUGATION—IRREGULAR VERBS IN AR

Acertar, to succeed in, hit the mark, guess, find the way.

The irregularity of this verb consists in its taking an *i* before the *e*, which is part of its root, in the following persons and tenses:

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I succeed, &c.
acierto.
aciertas.
acierta.

We succeed, &c.
acertamos.
acertáis.
aciertan.

IMPERATIVE

Let me succeed, &c.

acierte yo.
 acierta tú.
 acierte él.

Let us succeed, &c.

acertemos nosotros.
 acertad vosotros.
 acierten ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

That I may succeed, &c.

acierte.
 aciertes.
 acierte.

That we may succeed, &c.

acertemos.
 acertéis.
 acierten.

The following verbs take an *i* before the *e* in the root, and are conjugated like **acertar**:—

acrecentar, *to increase*.
 adestrar, *to make handy*.
 alentar, *to encourage*.
 apacentar, *to tend cattle*.
 apretar, *to press, to distress*.
 arrendar, *to rent*.
 asentar, *to sit down*.
 aserrar, *to saw*.
 aterrar, *to destroy, pull down*
 (*derribar*).
 atestar, *to fill*.
 atravesar, *to cross*.
 aventar, *to blow*.
 calentar, *to warm*.
 cegar, *to blind*.
 cerrar, *to shut*.
 comenzar, *to begin*.
 concertar, *to concert*.
 confesar, *to confess, own*.
 decentar, *to begin using a thing*.
 denegar, *to deny*.
 derrengar, *to ill-use*.
 desacertar, *to mistake, to err*.
 desalentar, *to discourage*.
 desapretar, *to unloose*.
 desasosegar, *to disquiet, disturb*.
 desatentar, *to trouble*.

desconcertar, *to disturb, to derange*.
 desempedrar, *to unpave*.
 desencerrar, *to set at liberty*.
 desenterrar, *to disinter*.
 deshelar, *to thaw*.
 desherrar, *to unshoe (a horse)*.
 desmembrar, *to dismember*.
 despedrar, *to clear a place of stones*.
 despernar, *to cut the legs*.
 despertar, *to awake*.
 desplegar, *to unfold*.
 desterrar, *to exile, to banish*.
 dezmar, *to pay tithe (diezmar)*.
 empedrar, *to pave*.
 empezar, *to begin*.
 encerrar, *to shut up*.
 encomendar, *to recommend*.
 encubertar, *to cover*.
 enmendar, *to correct*.
 enterrar, *to bury*.
 errar, *to err*.
 escarmentar, *to correct*.
 estragar, *to rub*.
 fregar, *to wash*.
 gobernar, *to govern*.
 helar, *to freeze*.
 herrar, *to shoe (a horse)*.

incensar, to perfume with incense.
 infernar, to damn.
 invernar, to winter.
 manifestar, to manifest.
 mentar, to mention.
 merendar, to lunch.
 negar, to deny.
 nevar, to snow.
 pensar, to think.
 perniquebrar, to break the legs.
 plegar, to bend.
 quebrar, to break.
 recomendar, to recommend.
 regar, to water.
 remendar, to patch.
 renegar, to forswear.

requerbrar, to cajole.
 retemblar, to have fits of trembling.
 retentar, to threaten with a relapse.
 reventar, to burst.
 segar, to cut with a scythe.
 sembrar, to sow.
 sentarse, to sit down.
 serrar, to saw.
 sosegar, to rest.
 soterrar, to bury in the ground.
 subarrendar, to sub-let.
 temblar, to tremble.
 tentar, to tempt.
 trasegar, to decant.
 tropezar, to stumble.

Almorzar, to breakfast

This verb changes the letter *o* in the root into *ue*, in the same tenses and persons as the preceding verb.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I breakfast, &c.

almuerzo.
 almuerzas.
 almuerza.

We breakfast, &c.

almorzamos.
 almorzais.
 almuerzan.

IMPERATIVE

Let me breakfast, &c.

almuerce yo.
 almuerza tú.
 almuerce él.

Let us breakfast, &c.

almorcemos nosotros.
 almorzad vosotros.
 almuercen ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

That I may breakfast, &c.

almuerce.
 almuerces.
 almuerce.

That we may breakfast, &c.

almorcemos.
 almorceis.
 almuercen.

The following verbs have the same irregularity, and are conjugated like **almorzar**:—

acordar, ¹ <i>to suit.</i>	forzar, <i>to force.</i>
acostar, <i>to lay down.</i>	holgar, <i>to rest.</i>
agorar, <i>to presage.</i>	hollar, <i>to crowd.</i>
amolar, <i>to sharpen.</i>	mostrar, <i>to show.</i>
apostar, ² <i>to wager.</i>	poblar, <i>to people.</i>
aprobar, <i>to approve.</i>	probar, <i>to prove.</i>
asolar, <i>to ravage.</i>	recordar, <i>to remember.</i>
avergonzar, <i>to make ashamed.</i>	recostar, <i>to lay on one side only.</i>
colar, <i>to strain through.</i>	regoldar, <i>to belch.</i>
colgar, <i>to suspend.</i>	renovar, <i>to renew.</i>
concordar, <i>to grant.</i>	resollar, <i>to blow.</i>
consolar, <i>to console.</i>	rodar, <i>to roll.</i>
contar, <i>to count.</i>	rogar, <i>to pray.</i>
degollar, <i>to behead.</i>	solar, <i>to floor a room.</i>
denostar, <i>to abuse.</i>	soldar, <i>to solder.</i>
descollar, <i>to surpass in height.</i>	soltar, <i>to untie.</i>
desollar, <i>to flay.</i>	sonar, <i>to ring.</i>
discordar, <i>to disagree.</i>	soñar, <i>to dream.</i>
emporcar, <i>to dirty.</i>	tostar, <i>to roast.</i>
encontrar, <i>to meet.</i>	trocar, <i>to exchange.</i>
encordar, <i>to string a musical instrument.</i>	tronar, <i>to thunder.</i>
engrosar, <i>to enlarge.</i>	volar, <i>to fly.</i>
ensalmozar, <i>to salt.</i>	volcar, <i>to upset.</i>

The compounds of the preceding verbs follow the same conjugation; as, *comprobar*, to verify; *desconsolar*, to afflict; *descontar*, to discount; *reprobar*, to blame, &c.

Andar, to walk

This verb is irregular in the preterite definite of the indicative, the first and third imperfect of the subjunctive, and the future of the subjunctive. The verb *estar*, to be, has the same irregularities, and is moreover irregular in the first person of the indicative present: *estoy*, I am. We have given the complete conjugation of this verb.

¹ When it means to tune an instrument, it is regular: *Acordo, acordas, acorda.*

² When it means to post, it is regular: *Aposto, apostas, apostata.*

INDICATIVE

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I walked, &c.
anduve.
anduviste.
anduvo.

We walked, &c.
anduvimos.
anduvisteis.
anduvieron.

SUBJUNCTIVE

IMPERFECT

I might walk, &c.
anduviera and anduviese.
anduvieras and anduvieses.
anduviera and anduviese.

We might walk, &c.
anduviéramos and anduviésemos.
anduvierais and anduviescis.
anduvieran and anduviesen.¹

FUTURE

I shall walk, &c.
anduviere.
anduvieres.
anduviere.

We shall walk, &c.
anduviéremos.
anduviereis.
anduvieren.

Dar, to give

Besides the irregularity of the three tenses of a similar formation, the preterite definite, the imperfect, and future of the subjunctive, this verb has this peculiarity, that the first person of the indicative present is irregular.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I give, &c.
doy.
das.
da.

We give, &c.
damos.
dais.
dan.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I gave, &c.
di.
diste.
dió.

We gave, &c.
dimos.
disteis.
dieron.

¹ The second form, that which supplies the place of the conditional, is regular: *Andaria, andarias, andaria, andariamós, andariats, andarian.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

IMPERFECT

I might give, &c.
 diera and diese.
 dieras and dieses.
 diera and diese.

We might give, &c.
 diéramos and diésemos.
 dierais and dieseis.
 dieran and diesen.

FUTURE

I shall give, &c.
 diere.
 dieres.
 diere.

We shall give, &c.
 diéremos.
 diereis.
 dieren.

Error, to err

This verb, though quite regular as to its termination, must nevertheless be ranked amongst the irregular verbs, owing to a peculiarity belonging to it alone.

In the three persons singular, and in the third of the plural of the indicative present, of the imperative, and subjunctive present, it takes a *y* before the *e* in the root.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I err, &c.
 yerro.
 yerras.
 yerra.

We err, &c.
 erramos.
 errais.
 yerran.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I may err, &c.
 yerre.
 yerres.
 yerre.

We may err, &c.
 erremos.
 erreis.
 yerren.

IMPERATIVE

Let me err, &c.
 yerre yo.
 yerra tu.
 yerre él.

Let us err, &c.
 erremos nosotros.
 errad vosotros.
 yerren ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may err, &c.

yerre.

yerres.

yerre.

We may err, &c.

erremos.

erreis.

yerren.

Jugar, to play

This verb, regular as to its termination, adds an e after the u in the root, in the same tenses and persons as the preceding.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I play, &c.

juego.

juegas.

juega.

We play, &c.

jugamos.

jugais.

juegan.

IMPERATIVE

Let me play, &c.

juegue yo.

juega tú.

juegue él.

Let us play, &c.

juguemos nosotros.

jugad vosotros.

jueguen ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may play, &c.

juegue.

juegues.

juegue.

We may play, &c.

juguemos.

juguéis.

jueguen.

The u added to the termination must not be considered as an irregularity. It is added for this reason: the g, which is hard before the vowels a, o, u, becomes quite guttural before e and i. It is therefore only to preserve to the g its proper sound that a u is added in the verb.

SECOND CONJUGATION—IRREGULAR VERBS IN ER

All verbs ending in *acer*, *ecer*, and *ocer*—as, *nacer*, to be born; *empobrecer*, to impoverish; *conocer*, to know, &c.

—add a **z** before the **c** of the root, in the first person singular of the indicative present, in all the persons of the subjunctive present, as well as in the imperative, except in the two second persons.

Conocer, to know

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I know, &c.

conozco.

conoces.

conoce.

We know, &c.

conocemos.

conoceis.

conocen.

IMPERATIVE

Let me know, &c.

conozcà yo.

conoce tú.

conozca él.

Let us know, &c.

conocemos nosotros.

conoced vosotros.

conozcan.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may know, &c.

conozca.

conozcas.

conozca.

We may know, &c.

conozcamos.

conozcais.

conozcan.

Hacer, to do, and its compounds are exceptions to this rule, as their irregularities extend to the whole of the tenses belonging to the three deviations which we mentioned at the beginning.

Hacer, to do

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I do, &c.

hago.

haces.

hace.

We do, &c.

hacemos.

hacéis.

hacen.

FUTURE

I shall do, &c.

haré.

harás.

hará.

We shall do, &c.

haremos.

haréis.

harán.

IMPERATIVE

Let me do, &c.

haga yo.

haz tú.

haga él.

Let us do, &c.

hagamos nosotros.

haced vosotros.

hagan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may do, &c.

haga.

hagas.

haga.

We may do, &c.

hagamos.

hagáis.

hagan.

IMPERFECT

I should or might do, &c.

hiciera, haría, hiciere.

hicieras, harías, hicieres.

hiciera, haría, hiciere.

We should or might do, &c.

hiciéramos, haríamos, hiciésemos.

hicierais, hariais, hicieseis.

hicieran, harían, hiciesen.

FUTURE

I shall do, &c.

hiciere.

hicieres.

hiciere.

We shall do, &c.

hiciéremos.

hicieréis.

hicieren.

The compounds of the verb *hacer*, to do, have the same irregularities, as was just stated; such are, *deshacer*, to undo; *rehacer*, to remake; *contrahacer*, to counterfeit. *Satisfacer*, to satisfy, derived from the Latin verb *satisfacere*, from the adverb *satis*, enough, and the verb *facere*, to do, is conjugated like the simple verb *hacer*. The only difference is in the second person singular of the imperative—*satisfaz*, satisfy; and in the first person singular of the preterite definite—*satisfice*, I satisfied.

Cocer and *escocer*, to cook, *recocer*, to cook again, differ

from the other verbs in **ocer**. They change the **o** of the root into **ue**, and instead of placing **z** before the **c**, followed by one of the vowels **a** or **o**, as in *conocer*, to know, *conozco*, I know, they take **z** instead of **c**. Thus one says *cuezo*, *cueza*, instead of *cuezco*, *cuezca*.¹

Absolver, to absolve

This verb, and the following, change the radical **o** into **ue**, in the same tenses and persons as the verb *almorzar*:—

cocker, to cook.
disolver, to dissolve.
doler, to hurt.
llover, to rain.
moler, to grind.
morder, to bite.
mover, to move.

oler, to smell.
poder, to be able.
resolver, to resolve.
soler, to be accustomed.
torcer, to wring.
volver, to return, to come back.

The compounds are conjugated in like manner; such are, *condolerse*, to sympathize; *demoler*, to demolish; *promover*, to promote, &c. All verbs ending in **olver** have another irregularity besides. The past participles end in **uelto**; as, *volver*, past participle *vuelto*; *absolver*, past participle *absuelto*; *disolver*, past participle *disuelto*, &c.

Ascender, to ascend

This verb adds an **i** before the **e** of the root, in the same tenses and persons as the verb *acertar*, as well as the following verbs:—

atender, to apply oneself.
cerner, to sift.
defender, to defend.
descender, to descend.
encender, to light.
entender, to understand.

heder, to stink.
hender, to split.
perder, to lose.
tender, to stretch.
verter, to pour.

¹ This change being properly speaking no irregularity, but simply the means of preserving the pronunciation of the root, it follows that owing to their real irregularity these verbs belong to the following class, changing the radical **o** into **ue**.

And their compounds; as, *condescender*, to condescend; *contender*, to dispute; *desatender*, not to pay attention.

Caber, to hold (to be contained)

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I hold, &c.
quepo.
cabe.
cabe.

We hold, &c.
cabemos.
cabeis.
cabén.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I held, &c.
cupe.
cupiste.
cupo.

We held, &c.
cupimos.
cupisteis.
cupieron.

FUTURE

I shall hold, &c.
cabré.
cabrás.
cabrá.

We shall hold, &c.
cabrémos.
cabréis.
cabrán.

IMPERATIVE

Let me hold, &c.
quepa yo.
cabe tú.
quepa él.

Let us hold, &c.
quepamos nosotros.
cabad vosotros.
quepan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may hold, &c.
quepa.
quepas.
quepa.

We may hold, &c.
quepamos.
quepais.
quepan.

IMPERFECT

I should or might hold, &c.
cupiera, cabría, cupiese.
cupieras, cabrías, cupieses.
cupiera, cabría, cupiese.

We should or might hold, &c.
cupiéramos, cabríamos, cupiésemos.
cupierais, cabrías, cupieses.
cupieran, cabrían, cupiesen.

VERBS

FUTURE

I shall hold, &c.

cupiere.

cupieres.

cupiere.

We shall hold, &c.

cupiéremos.

cupiereis.

cupieren.

OBSERVATION.—The verb *to hold* is expressed by *caber* only in the sense of *being contained*. Ex.:

*Caben ocho mil personas en el circo
de Paris.*

Eight thousand persons can be
contained in the circus of Paris.

Caer, to fall, drop

This verb and its compounds—*decaer*, to decay; *recaer*, to fall again—are irregular in the first person singular of the indicative present, in the first and third persons singular and first and third persons plural of the imperative, as well as in all the persons of the subjunctive present. Ex.:

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I fall, &c.

caigo.

caes.

cae.

We fall, &c.

caemos.

caeis.

caen.

IMPERATIVE

Let me fall, &c.

caiga yo.

cae tú.

caiga él.

Let us fall, &c.

caigamos nosotros.

caed vosotros.

caigan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may fall, &c.

caiga.

caigas.

caiga.

We may fall, &c.

caigamos.

caigáis.

caigan.

Poner, to put

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I put, &c.

pongo.

pones.

pone.

We may put, &c.

ponemos.

poneis.

ponen.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I put, &c.

pusé.

pusiste.

puso.

We put, &c.

pusimos.

pusisteis.

pusieron.

FUTURE

I shall put, &c.

pondré.

pondrás.

pondrá.

We shall put, &c.

pondrémos.

pondréis.

pondrán.

IMPERATIVE

Let me put, &c.

ponga yo.

pon tú.

ponga él.

Let me put, &c.

pongamos.

poned vosotros.

pongan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may put, &c.

ponga.

pongas.

ponga.

We may put, &c.

pongamos.

pongáis.

pongan.

IMPERFECT

I might or should put, &c.

pusiera, pondría, pusiese.

pusieras, pondrías, pusieses.

pusiera, pondría, pusiese.

We might or should put, &c.

pusiéramos, pondríamos, pusiésemos.

pusierais, pondrías, pusieses.

pusieran, pondrían, pusiesen.

FUTURE

I shall put, &c.

pusiere.

pusieres.

pusiere.

We shall put, &c.

pusiéremos.

pusieréis.

pusieren.

The compounds of this verb follow the same irregularities; as, *anteponer*, to prefer; *componer*, to arrange, to mend; *deponer*, to depose, &c.

Querer, to will, or to love

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I will or I love, &c.

quiero.
quieres.
quiere.

We will or we love, &c.

queremos.
quereis.
quieren.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I would or I loved, &c.

quise.
quisite.
quiso.

We would or we loved, &c.

quisimos.
quisisteis.
quisieron.

FUTURE

I shall will or love, &c.

querré.
querrás.
querrá.

We shall will or love, &c.

querrémos.
querréis.
querrán.

IMPERATIVE

Let me will or love, &c.

quiera yo.
quiere tú.
quiera él.

Let us will or love, &c.

queramos nosotros.
quered vosotros.
quieran ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may will or love, &c.

quiera.
quieras.
quiera.

We may will or love, &c.

queramos.
querais.
quieran.

IMPERFECT

I might or would will or love, &c.

quisiera, querría, quisiese.

quisieras, querrías, quisieses.
quisiera, querría, quisiese.

We might or would will or love, &c.

quisiéramos, querríamos, quisiesémos.

quisierais, querriais, quisieseis.
quisieran, querrían, quisiesen.

FUTURE

I shall will or love, &c.

quisiere.
quisieres.
quisiere.

We shall will or love, &c.

quisiéremos.
quisiereis.
quisieren.

Saber, to know

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I know, &c.

sé.
sabes.
sabe.

We know, &c.

sabemos.
sabeis.
saben.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I knew, &c.

supe.
supiste.
supo.

We knew, &c.

supimos.
supisteis.
supieron.

FUTURE

I shall know, &c.

sabré.
sabrás.
sabrá.

We shall know, &c.

sabrémós.
sabréis.
sabrán.

IMPERATIVE

Let me know, &c.

sepa yo.
sabe tú.
sepa él.

Let us know, &c.

sepamos nosotros.
sabad vosotros.
sepan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may know, &c.

sepa.
sepas.
sepa.

We may know, &c.

sepamos.
sepais.
sepan.

IMPERFECT

I might or should know, &c.

supiera, sabría, supiese.
supieras, sabrias, supieses.
supiera, sabría, supiese.

We might or should know, &c.

supiéramos, sabríamos, supiesemos.
supierais, sabrais, supieseis.
supieran, sabrían, supiesen.

FUTURE

I shall know, &c.

supiere.

supieres.

supiere.

We shall know, &c.

supiéremos.

supiereis.

supieren.

Tañer, to play on a stringed instrument

The only irregularity of this verb consists in its losing the *i*, belonging to all the regular verbs of this conjugation, in the third persons singular and plural of the preterite definite, in the terminations *ra* and *se* of the imperfect of the subjunctive, and in the future of the subjunctive: *taño, tañeron, tañera, tañese, tañere*, instead of *tañió, tañieron, &c.* The gerund is formed in the same manner: *tañendo*, and not *tañiendo*.

Tener, to have, to hold, or to possess

We have given the complete conjugation of this verb. We have only therefore to mention the irregularities of its compounds; such as, *contener*, to contain; *detenir*, to stop; *entretener*, to entertain, &c., which are conjugated exactly like *tener*.

Traer, to bring

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I bring, &c.

traigo.

traes.

trae.

We bring, &c.

traemos.

traeis.

traen.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I brought, &c.

traje.

trajiste.

trajo.

We brought, &c.

trajimos.

trajisteis.

trajeron.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may bring, &c.

traiga.

traigas.

traiga.

We may bring, &c.

traigamos.

traigáis.

traigan.

IMPERFECT

I might or should bring, &c.

trajera, trajese.

trajeras, trajeses.

trajera, trajese.

We might or should bring, &c.

trajéramos, trajésemos.

trajerais, trajeseis.

trajeran, trajesen.

FUTURE

I shall bring, &c.

trajere.

trajeres.

trajere.

We shall bring, &c.

trajéremos.

trajereis.

trajeren.

All the compounds of this verb follow the same irregularities; such are, *abstraer*, to abstract; *atraer*, to attract; *contraer*, to contract.

Valer, to be worth

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I am worth, &c.

valgo.

vales.

vale.

We are worth, &c.

valemos.

valeis.

valen.

FUTURE

I shall be worth, &c.

valdré.

valdrás.

valdrá.

We shall be worth, &c.

valdrémos.

valdréis.

valdrán.

IMPERATIVE

Let me be worth, &c.

valga yo.

val tú.

valga él.

Let us be worth, &c.

valgamos nosotros.

valed vosotros.

valgan ellos.

VERBS

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may be worth, &c.

valga.
valgas.
valga.

We may be worth, &c.

valgamos.
valgáis.
valgan.

IMPERFECT

I should or might be worth, &c.

valdría.
valdrías.
valdría.

We should or might be worth, &c.

valdríamos.
valdríais.
valdrían.

The same irregularity is observed in the compounds of this verb: *equivaler*, to be equal to; *prevalerse*, to avail oneself.

THIRD CONJUGATION—IRREGULAR VERBS IN IR.

Asir, to seize

This verb is irregular in the following tenses and persons:—

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I seize, &c.

asgo.
ases.
ase.

We seize, &c.

asimos.
asis.
asen.

IMPERATIVE

Let me seize, &c.

asga yo.
as tú.
asga él.

Let us seize, &c.

asgamos nosotros.
asid vosotros.
asgan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may seize, &c.

asga.
asgas.
asga.

We may seize, &c.

asgamos.
asgais.
asgan.

These tenses and persons of the verb *asir* are now very little used.

Decir, to say

This verb has the following irregularities:—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE OR GERUND

Diciendo, saying

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I say, &c.
digo.
dices.
dice.

We say, &c.
decimos.
decis.
dicen.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I said, &c.
dije.
dijiste.
dijo.

We said, &c.
dijimos.
dijisteis.
dijeron.

FUTURE

I shall say, &c.
diré.
dirás.
dirá.

We shall say, &c.
diremos.
diréis.
dirán.

IMPERATIVE

Let me say, &c.
diga yo.
dí tú.
diga él.

Let us say, &c.
digamos nosotros.
decid vosotros.
digan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may say, &c.
diga.
digas.
diga.

We may say, &c.
digamos.
digáis.
digan.

IMPERFECT

I should or might say, &c.

dijera, diría, dijese.
 dijeras, dirías, dijeses.
 dijera, diría, dijese.

We should or might say, &c.

dijéramos, diríamos, dijesemos.
 dijerais, diríais, dijeseis.
 dijeran, dirían, dijesen.

FUTURE

I shall say, &c.

dijere.
 dijeres.
 dijere.

We shall say, &c.

dijéremos.
 dijereis.
 dijeren.

Bendecir, to bless, a compound of *decir*, is conjugated like the simple verb, except, however, in the second person singular of the imperative—it becomes *bendice* and not *bendi*; in the future, when it is *bendeciré*, and not *bendiré*; and, lastly, in the second form of the imperfect of the subjunctive, employed for the conditional, it is there *bendeciria*, and not *bendiria*.

The same observation holds good with the verbs *desdecir*, to gainsay; *predecir*, to predict; *contradecir*, to contradict; and *maldecir*, to curse.

VERBS IN *Ucir*

Verbs ending in *ucir*, as *lucir*, to shine, *conducir*, to conduct, &c., have the same irregularity as those in *ecer*, *ocer*, *acer*. Ex.: *Conocer* becomes *conozco*, *conozca*, &c., and *lucir* becomes *luzco*, *luzca*; *conducir*, *conduzco*, *conduzca*, &c. But, in this class of verb, those ending in *ducir* form a second one, distinguished by changing the *c* of the root into *j* before the termination of the preterite definite, and the two forms of the imperfect of the subjunctive.

In order to separate clearly the two divisions of verbs belonging to this class, we shall give the verb *lucir*, of which the irregularity is applicable to the whole class, and for the verb *conducir* its specific irregularity only.

Lucir, to shine

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I shine, &c.

luzco.

luces.

luce.

We shine, &c.

lucimos.

lucis.

lucen.

IMPERATIVE

Let me shine, &c.

luzca yo.

luce tú.

luzca él.

Let us shine, &c.

luzcamos nosotros.

lucid vosotros.

luzcan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may shine, &c.

luzca.

luzcas.

luzca.

We may shine, &c.

luzcamos.

luzcais.

luzcan.

Conducir, to conduct

INDICATIVE

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I conducted, &c.

conduje.

condujiste.

condujo.

We conducted, &c.

condujimos.

condujisteis.

condujeron.

SUBJUNCTIVE

IMPERFECT

I should or might conduct, &c.

condujera, condujese.

condujeras, condujeses.

condujera, condujese.

We should or might conduct, &c.

condujáramos, condujesemos.

condujerais, condujeseis.

condujeran, condujesen.

FUTURE

I shall conduct, &c.

condujere.

condujeres.

condujere.

We shall conduct, &c.

condujéremos.

condujereis.

condujeren.

Dormir, to sleep

This verb changes the radical *o* sometimes into *ue*, and sometimes into *u*, in the following tenses:—

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I sleep, &c.
duermo.
duermes.
duerme.

We sleep, &c.
dormimos.
dormis.
duermen.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I slept, &c.
dormí.
dormiste.
dormió.

We slept, &c.
dormimos.
dormisteis.
durmieron.

IMPERATIVE

Let me sleep, &c.
duerma yo.
duerme tú.
duerma él.

Let us sleep, &c.
durmanos nosotros.
dormid vosotros.
duerman ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may sleep, &c.
duerma.
duermas.
duerma.

We may sleep, &c.
durmanos.
dormais.
duerman.

IMPERFECT

I should or might sleep, &c.
durmiera, durmiese.
durmieras, durmieses.
durmiera, durmiese.

We should or might sleep, &c.
durmiéramos, durmiésemos.
durmierais, durmieseis.
durmieran, durmiesen.

FUTURE

I shall sleep, &c.
durmiere.
durmieres.
durmiere.

We shall sleep, &c.
durmiéremos.
durmieréis.
durmieren.

The verb *morir*, to die, is conjugated like the preceding; the only difference being that in the past participle *dormir* becomes *dormido*, and *morir*, *muerto*.

Ir, to go

This verb is one of the most irregular in the Spanish language, for in certain tenses it completely changes its root, and the irregularities extend nearly to the whole conjugation.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE OR GERUND

Yendo, going

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I go, &c.
voy.
vas.
va.

We go, &c.
vamos.
vais.
van.

IMPERFECT

I went, &c.
iba.
ibas.
iba.

We went, &c.
ibamos.
ibais.
iban.

PRETERITES

I went, I have, I had gone, &c.

fui, he ido, hube ido.
fuiste, has ido, hubiste ido.
fué, ha ido, hubo ido.

We went, we have, we had gone, &c.

fuimos, hemos ido, hubimos ido.
fuisteis, habeis ido, hubisteis ido.
fueron, han ido, hubieron ido.

FUTURE

I shall go, &c.
iré.
irás.
irá.

We shall go, &c.
irémos.
iréis.
irán.

IMPERATIVE

Let me go, &c.
vaya yo.
ve tú.
vaya él.

Let us go, &c.
vamos nosotros.
id vosotros.
vayan ellos.

VERBS

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may go, &c.

vaya.

vayas.

vaya.

We may go, &c.

vayamos.

vayais.

vayan.

IMPERFECT

I should or might go, &c.

fuera, iría, fuese.

fueras, irías, fueses.

fuera, iría, fuese.

We should or might go, &c.

fuéramos, iríamos, fuéremos.

fuerais, iríais, fueseis.

fuéran, irían, fuesen.

FUTURE

I shall go, &c.

fuere.

fueres.

fuere.

We shall go, &c.

fuéremos.

fuereis.

fueren.

Oír, to hear

The irregularity of this verb consists in the addition of a g after the i in the following tenses and persons:—

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I hear, &c.

oigo.

oyes.

oye.

We hear, &c.

oímos.

ois.

oyen.

IMPERATIVE

Let me hear, &c.

oiga yo.

oye tú.

oiga él.

Let us hear, &c.

oigamos nosotros.

oid vosotros.

oigan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may hear, &c.

oiga.

oigas.

oiga.

We may hear, &c.

oigamos.

oigais.

oigan.

This verb also alters *i* into *y* before the vowels *e* and *o*, as verbs ending in *eer*; thus the preterite definite is *oi*, *oiste*, *oyo*, *oimos*, *oisteis*, *oyeron*; the imperfect of the subjunctive, *oyera*, *oyese*; the future of the subjunctive, *oyere*. All its compounds, such as *entreoír*, to hear confusedly; *desoír*, to refuse to hear, not to listen, &c., are conjugated like it.

Pedir, to ask

This verb changes the *e* of the root into *i* in the following tenses:—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE OR GERUND

Pidiendo, asking

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I ask, &c.

pido.

pides.

pide.

We ask, &c.

pedimos.

pedis.

piden.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I asked, &c.

pedí.

pediste.

pidió.

We asked, &c.

pedímos.

pedísteis.

pidieron.

IMPERATIVE

Let me ask, &c.

pida yo.

pide tú.

pida él.

Let us ask, &c.

pidamos nosotros.

pidid vosotros.

pidan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may ask, &c.

pida.

pidas.

pida.

We may ask, &c.

pidamos.

pidais.

pidan.

IMPERFECT

I should or might ask, &c.

pidiera, pidiese.
pidieras, pidieses.
pidiera, pidiese.

We should or might ask, &c.

pidiéramos, pidiésemos.
pidierais, pidieseis.
pidieran, pidiesen.

FUTURE

I shall ask, &c.

pidiere.
pidieres.
pidiere.

We shall ask, &c.

pidiéremos.
pidiereis.
pidieren.

The following verbs have the same irregularity:—

*ceñir, to gird.**colegir, to collect, to conclude.**competir, to compete with, to rival.**concebir, to conceive.**constreñir, to constrain.**derretir, to melt.**desleir, to dissolve.**elegir, to choose.**engreir, to adorn.**estreñir, to strain, to bind.**frire, to fry.**gemir, to complain.**heñir, to knead with one's fists.**medir, to measure.**regir, to govern.**reir, to laugh.**rendir, to yield.**reñir, to quarrel.**seguir, to follow.**servir, to serve.**teñir, to dye.**vestir, to dress.*

So also their compounds; such as, *conseguir*, to obtain; *desceñir*, to ungird; *expedir*, to dispatch, &c.

OBSERVATION.—The verbs *ceñir*, to gird, *constreñir*, to constrain, &c., as well as all those ending in *ñir* and *llir*, lose the *i* of the last syllable in the third person singular and plural of the preterite definite, in the terminations *era* and *ese* of the imperfect subjunctive, and in the future subjunctive.

Pudrir, to rot

Good writers, and even persons in general, employ *o* and *u* indifferently in the first syllable of this verb; some say *podrir*, others *pudrir*, and this same variety is found in its conjugation. In consequence of this diversity of opinion, the SPANISH ACADEMY has adopted the use of *u* instead of *o* in all the tenses, saving in the infinitive, which

it allows to be written both ways, and in the past participle, *podrido*, when it rarely admits the *u*. This decision has a double advantage: it makes the conjugation of the verb nearly regular, which it was not before, and prevents its being confused in certain tenses with *poder*, to be able.

Salir, to go out

The verb *salir* has two sorts of irregularity. 1st, It adds a *g* after the *l* in the root, in the same tenses and persons as the verb *oir*. 2nd, It exchanges *i* for *d* in the future of the indicative, *yo saldré*, I shall go out; and in the second form of the imperfect of the subjunctive, which answers to the conditional, *yo saldría*, I should go out. It loses besides the final *e* in the second person singular of the imperative.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I go out, &c.

salgo.
sales.
sale.

We go out, &c.

salimos.
salis.
salen.

FUTURE

I shall go out, &c.

saldré.
saldrás.
saldrá.

We shall go out, &c.

saldrémos.
saldréis.
saldrán.

IMPERATIVE

Let me go out, &c.

salga yo.
sal tú.
salga él.

Let us go out, &c.

salgamos nosotros.
salid vosotros.
salgan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may go out, &c.

salga.
salgas.
salga.

We may go out, &c.

salgamos.
salgais.
salgan.

VERBS

IMPERFECT

I should go out, &c.

saldría.
saldrias.
saldría.

We should go out, &c.

saldríamos.
saldríaís.
saldrían.

The compound verb, *sobresalir*, to surpass, is conjugated in the same manner.

Sentir, to feel, to regret

This verb adds an *i* before the *e* in the root for some persons, and in others it changes the *e* into *i*.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE OR GERUND

Sintiendo, feeling

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I feel, &c.

siento.
sientes.
siente.

We feel, &c.

sentimos.
sentís.
sienten.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I felt, &c.

sentí.
sentiste.
sintió.

We felt, &c.

sentimos.
sentisteis.
sintieron.

IMPERATIVE

Let me feel, &c.

sienta yo.
siente tú.
sienta él.

Let us feel, &c.

sintamos nosotros.
sentid vosotros.
sientan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I may feel, &c.

sienta.
sientas.
sienta.

We may feel, &c.

sintamos.
sintais.
sientan.

IMPERFECT

I should or might feel, &c.

sintiera, sintiese.
 sintieras, sintieses.
 sintiera, sintiese.

We should or might feel, &c.

sintiéramos, sintiésemos.
 sintierais, sintieseis.
 sintieran, sintiesen.

FUTURE

I shall feel, &c.

sintiere.
 sintieres.
 sintiere.

We shall feel, &c.

sintiéremos.
 sintiereis.
 sintieren.

The following verbs have the same irregularity as the verb *sentir*:—

adherir, to adhere.
 advertir, to take heed.
 arrepentirse, to repent.
 conferir, to confer.
 convertir, to convert.
 deferir, to defer.
 diferir, to differ.
 digerir, to digest.

herir, to wound.
 hervir, to boil.
 ingerir, to graft.
 invertir, to upset.
 mentir, to tell lies.
 referir, to refer.
 requerir, to intimate.

The compounds of these verbs, such as *consentir*, to consent; *resentirse*, to fail, to express displeasure; *zaherir*, to reproach, blame, or censure; *desmentir*, to give the lie, &c., have also the same conjugation.

Discernir, to discern, only follows the irregularity of *sentir* in the indicative present and in the imperative; thus we say *discierno*, &c.; in the other tenses it is regular.

Adquirir, to acquire, and *inquirir*, to inquire, to seek, are conjugated like *sentir*, though they have no e in the root, &c. Thus we say in the indicative present, in the imperative, and the subjunctive present: *adquiero, adquiriera, adquiera, &c.*; *adquiera, adquirieras, &c.*

Venir, to come

This verb is irregular in the following tenses and persons:—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE OR GERUND

Viniendo, coming

INDICATIVE**PRESENT**

I come, &c.
vengo.
vienes.
viene.

We come, &c.
venimos.
venis.
vienen.

PRETERITE DEFINITE

I came, &c.
vine.
viniste.
vino.

We came, &c.
vinimos.
vinisteis.
vinieron.

FUTURE

I shall come, &c.
vendré.
vendrás.
vendrá.

We shall come, &c.
vendrémos.
vendréis.
vendrán.

IMPERATIVE

Let me come, &c.
venga yo.
ven tú.
venga él.

Let us come, &c.
vengamos nosotros.
venid vosotros.
vengan ellos.

SUBJUNCTIVE**PRESENT**

I may come, &c.
venga.
vengas.
venga.

We may come, &c.
vengamos.
vengais.
vengan.

IMPERFECT

I should or might come, &c.
viniera, vendría, viniese.

vinieras, vendrías, vinieses.
viniera, vendría, viniese.

We should or might come, &c.
viniéramos, vendríamos, viniésemos.
vinierais, vendrías, vinieseis.
vinieran, vendrían, viniesen.

FUTURE

I shall come, &c.
viniere.
vinieres.
viniere.

We shall come, &c.
viniéremos.
viniereis.
vinieren.

The same irregularity is observed in its compounds: *avenir*, to conciliate; *convenir*, to agree; *desavenir*, to disagree; *intervenir*, to interfere; *prevenir*, to prevent; *provenir*, to arise; *reconvenir*, to agree anew; *revenirse*, to get sour; *sobrevenir*, to happen; *subvenir*, to supply.

ADVERBS

An Adverb is a part of speech which, being joined to verbs, serves to modify their signification; as, *Habla concisamente* (He speaks concisely).

Adverbs are also joined to an adjective, or to a substantive used adjectively, or even to another adverb, in order to express some circumstance, degree, quality, or manner connected with its signification; as, *El juez es muy severo* (The judge is very severe), *El es muy niño* (He is very childish), *Lo digo muy seriamente* (I say it very seriously), *más despacio* (more slowly), &c.

Adverbs formed from adjectives, or from other adverbs, by the addition of a word or syllable, are called compound; and those adverbs from which others are formed are termed simple: thus the adverbs *fácilmente*, easily, *felizmente*, happily, are compounds of the adjectives *fácil*, easy, *feliz*,

happy; and from the simple adverb *más*, more, is formed the compound *además*, besides, moreover, &c.

Adverbs are divided according to their meaning into several classes. Their chief divisions are into adverbs of *place*, *time*, *manner* or *order*, *quantity*, *comparison*, *affirmation*, *negation*, and *doubt*. The following are the principal of those which belong to each of the foregoing classes:

ADVERBS OF PLACE

acá, hither.
ahí, there.
allí, thither.
allá, yonder.
adonde, whither.
aquí, here.
arriba, up, above.
abajo, below.
á parte, aside.
donde, where.
dentro, within.
delante, before.
detrás, behind.
de lejos, at a distance.
debajo, under.
por debajo, underneath.

al principio, at the beginning.
al medio, in the middle.
adelante, forward.
á mano derecha, on the right hand.
á mano izquierda, on the left hand.
cerca, near.
encima, above.
fuera, without (out).
hacia arriba, above.
hacia abajo, below.
hasta, hasta que, until.
léjos, far.
al lado de, by the side of.
junto, next, adjoining.
enfrente, facing.

ADVERBS OF TIME

antes, before.
ahora, now.
ayer, yesterday.
ante ayer, the day before yesterday.
ayer noche, } last night.
anoche, }
al amanecer, at daybreak.
al anochecer, at nightfall.
al instante, instantly.
alguna vez, sometimes.
amenudo, often.
cuando, when.
después, after.
de día, by day.
de noche, by night.
de repente, immediately.

de prisa, in a hurry.
dos veces, twice.
hoy, hoy día, to-day, this day.
jamás, never.
luego, at once, directly.
mañana, to-morrow.
mañana por la mañana, to-morrow morning.
muchas veces, often.
nunca, never.
siempre, always, ever.
por, para siempre, for ever.
tarde, late.
temprano, early, soon.
una vez, once.
ya, already.

ADVERBS OF MANNER OR ORDER

así, so, thus.	á caballo, on horseback.
así, así, so, so.	á la par, in twos, in couples.
asimismo, in the same manner.	bien, well.
alto, loudly, aloud.	bajo, lowly.
apriesa, hastily.	como, how.
á una, together.	claro, clear, clearly.
al contrario, on the contrary.	despues, afterwards, since.
á solas, tête-à-tête.	de vergüenza, for shame.
á la vista, in sight.	de buena gana, willingly, with
á la Española, in the Spanish	good will.
fashion.	de mala gana, unwillingly.
á la Francesa, in the French	de intento, } on purpose.
fashion.	de proposito, }
á pié, on foot.	despacio, slowly.
de veras, truly.	en coche, in a coach.
de burla, } for fun, in fun.	fuertemente, strongly.
de chanza, }	mal, ill, badly.
de nuevo, again.	muy bien, very well.
de balde, gratis.	muy mal, very ill.
en primer lugar, in the first place.	poco á poco, by degrees, slowly.
en seguida, for the future, in	pronto, ready, readily.
continuation.	presto, quickly.
en vista, in sight.	primero, first.
	quedo, quedito, softly.
	recio, strongly.

ADVERBS OF QUANTITY

á lo mas, at most.	demasiado, too much.
á lo ménos, at least.	harto, sufficiently.
algo, something.	mucho, much.
apenas, scarcely, hardly.	mas, more.
basta, } enough, sufficient.	nada mas, nothing more.
bastante, }	no tanto, not so much.
cuanto, how much.	poco, little.
por cuanto, for how much.	un poco, a little.
casi, almost.	tanto, so much.
cuando mas, at the utmost.	

ADVERBS OF COMPARISON

al par, equal to.	muy, very.
casi, almost.	peor, worse.
más, more.	tanto-como, so, so much as.
ménos, less.	tan-como, as, as much as.
mejor, better.	

ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION

aun, even.
ciertamente, certainly.
es verdad, it is true.
es mucha verdad, it is most true.
es cierto, it is certain.
es muy cierto, it is very certain.
en verdad, in truth.

está muy bien, it is quite right.
no hay duda, there is no doubt.
sí, yes.
seguramente, surely.
sin duda, undoubtedly, without doubt.
ya se sabe, it is well known.

ADVERBS OF NEGATION

de ninguna manera, } in no way.
de ningún modo, } by no means.
eso si que nó, I should think not indeed.
nó, no.
no es verdad, it is not true.

no es así, it is not so.
nada de eso, not at all, nothing of the kind.
por ningún título, on no account.
tampoco, neither, just as little.

OF ADVERBS ENDING IN **MENTE**

Adverbs terminating in **mente** for the most part denote *manner*, though they sometimes denote *affirmation*, *order*, *time*, &c. Ex.:

Habla elegantemente.
Me recibió cortesmente.
Se cansará ciertamente.
Anteriormente era así.

He speaks elegantly.
 He received me courteously.
 He will certainly tire himself.
 Formerly it was so.

This class of adverbs is generally formed from adjectives, by adding **mente** to the feminine termination of adjectives that have two terminations, and to the common termination of those that have but one; as from *sabio*, wise, is formed *sabiamente*, wisely; from *caro*, dear, *caramente*, dearly; from *fácil*, easy, *fácilmente*, easily.

Most of the English adverbs ending *ly* terminate in **mente** in Spanish. The greater number of these adverbs may be expressed with the preposition **con** and a substantive: instead of *fácilmente*, we may say *con facilidad*; instead of *sabiamente*, *con sabiduría*; and so forth.

When several adverbs formed from adjectives follow

each other in succession, the termination *mente* is retained only with the last. Ex.:

Ciceron habló *sabia y elocuente-mente*.

Cicero spoke wisely and eloquently.

César escribió *clara, concisa, y elegantemente*.

Cæsar wrote clearly, concisely, and elegantly.

—GRAMMAR OF THE SPANISH ROYAL ACADEMY.

As adverbs that end in *mente* sometimes denote *manner*, at others *order*, *time*, &c., similarly many other adverbs belong to more than one class; for instance, *luego* and *despues* are adverbs of *time* when we say, *Luego vendré* (I will soon come), *Iré despues* (I will go afterwards); but they are adverbs of *place* and *order* in the following phrase: *El padre iba primero, despues la madre, y luego los hijos* (The father went first, then the mother, and next the children).

Adverbs are subject to degrees of comparison like adjectives, and have the same irregularities as those adjectives have from which they are derived; thus from *velozmente*, swiftly, are formed *más*, or *ménos velozmente*, more or less swiftly; *muy velozmente*, or *velocísimamente*, very swiftly; from *amablemente*, amiably; *más amablemente*, more amiably; *muy amablemente*, or *amabilísimamente*, very, or most amiably; from *bien* or *mejor*, better; *muy bien*, or *óptimamente*, very well, &c. (See Degrees of Comparison, paragraphs 16 to 28, page 82.)

When *sí* and *no* are employed as objective cases to a verb, they are preceded by the conjunction *que*; but when preceded by an article, the conjunction is dispensed with. Ex.:

Yo digo *que sí*; él dice *que no*.
No le dí *ni un sí*, *ni un no*.

I say *yes*; he says *no*.
I made him *no* reply whatsoever.

Adverbs are sometimes used in the place of adjectives, and vice versa. When used as adjectives they are made

to agree with the noun to which they refer, but not otherwise. Ex.:

Esta **agua** es muy **clara**.
Hable Vd. más **claro**.

This water is very clear.
Speak more clearly.

The following are some words of this double signification, viz.: *bajo*, low, lowly; *alto*, high, highly; *recio*, strong, strongly; *mal*, bad, badly.

There are also some adverbs that are occasionally employed as nouns; in such cases they must be treated as nouns. Ex.:

Es necesario precaver el **mal**.

It is necessary to guard against the evil.

Que se contente **cada cual**.

Let everyone be contented.

Con su **poco** ó su **mucho**.

With the little or the much that he has.

Exercise on the Adverbs

VOCABULARY

el **orador**, the orator.
el **verano**, the summer.
el **embajador**, the ambassador.
el **actor**, the actor.
el **deseo**, the desire.
el **gozo**, the pleasure.
el **lugar**, the place.
la **razon**, the reason.
tener razon, to be right.
el **consejo**, the advice.
la **voluntad**, the will.
la **honradez**, the honesty.
la **obra**, the work.
el **inventor**, the inventor.
la **bota**, the boot.

próximo, -a, near, next.
propio, -a, proper.
capaz, capable.
digno, -a, worthy.
ancho, -a, broad, large.
estrecho, -a, narrow.
constante, constant.
generoso, -a, generous.
raro, -a, rare, seldom.
perdonar, to pardon.
levantarse, to get up.
ver (irr.), to see.
llenar, to fill.
sigar (subj. pres. of *seguir*), to follow.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

This author writes well. The orator has spoken distinctly, concisely, and elegantly. He has sent me too much money. You write too little, sir; if you wrote more, you would write more elegantly and more distinctly. This

actor speaks too low. Do speak loud, sir! I rose (have risen) very early to-day. He has certainly done it. The lawyer spoke very learnedly, but not distinctly enough. My coat is better made than yours; it fits me very well (*me cae muy bien*). I gave (have given) money enough (*bastante*) to my son. Why have you followed more your own will than (*que no*) the wise advice of your uncle? The ambassadors were all very richly dressed. I always learn my lesson, and I have always learned it well. He spoke of a work which he had never seen before. Nobody (*nadie*) is always happy in this world. The King has generously pardoned his enemies. Which man has always spoken well? We (have) arrived to-day very early. (The) rich people are seldom happy.

READING EXERCISE

Este hombre habla muy elocuentemente. El habla mejor que el otro orador. Vd. me ha dado demasiado dinero. Yo no tengo bastante. En verano me levanto cada día temprano. El actor no habla bastante alto. ¡Hable Vd. bajo! El autor ha escrito clara, concisa y elegantemente. El deseo de ver la ciudad y principalmente el palacio del rey Eduardo me llenó de gozo. Los lugares próximos á una gran ciudad venden bien sus frutos. La razón quiere que el hombre siga más los prudentes consejos *que no* (*than*) su propia voluntad. El rey dió órdenes para vestir ricamente á los oficiales. La honradez se conserva tratando siempre derechamente con los hombres. Cervantes hizo ver (*showed, proved; lit. made see*) que otra pluma no era capaz de continuar dignamente su obra, que la de su inventor. Este vestido me incomoda mucho; no es bastante ancho. Mis botas son demasiado estrechas; no me vienen bien. Cuando uno quiere hablar de una obra es menester haberla visto primero.

PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions are of two kinds—namely, such as only have meaning in composition with other words; as, *in-mortal*, *abs-tracto*, *su-poner*, &c. (immortal, abstract, to suppose, &c.); and such as have meaning both by themselves and in composition with other words, as the following:

á, to, at.
ante, before.
bajo, under.
con, with.
contra, against.
de, of, from.
desde, since, from.
en, in.
entre, between.

hacia, towards.
hasta, till, as far as, even.
para, for, for the purpose of, in order to.
por, by, for, through.
según, according to, or as.
sin, without.
sobre, upon.
tras, behind.

EMPLOYMENT OF PREPOSITIONS

As prepositions in Spanish have frequently other meanings than those attached to them in English in the foregoing list, it will be necessary to treat on the various significations and use of each separately.

A.—This preposition generally indicates the *end*, *object*, or *tendency* of the action, and besides its general signification of *to* and *at*, is employed before certain adverbs and adverbial expressions; as, *Vamos á pasear* (Let us go and take a walk); *Me volví á casa* (I returned home); *Andar á pié, á caballo* (To go on foot, on horseback); *Vestirse á la moda* (To dress in the fashion); *Á consecuencia de eso* (In consequence of that); *Á la verdad* (In truth). It signifies *conformity*; as, *Á ley de Castilla* (In conformity with the law of Castile); *Á fé de caballero* (On the word of a gentleman). *Instrumentality*; as, *Se hace á martillo* (It is done by the hammer). It is frequently seen between two numbers of the same value, and denotes *order*; as, *Dos á dos* (Two by two). It marks the *distance* between two

objects; as, *A tiro de pistola* (Within pistol shot); *A veinte pasos de aquí* (At twenty paces hence). It indicates the *time* when, and the *place* where, a thing happens; as, *A la tarde* (In the afternoon); *Nos sentámos á la mesa* (We seated ourselves at table). *Motive*; as, *A causa de su venida* (On account of his coming).

Ante means *before*, or *in the presence of*; as, *Compareció ante el juez* (He appeared before the judge); *Pasó ante mí* (He passed before me). It denotes *preference*; as, *Nuestro deber es ante todo* (Our duty is before everything). In the composition of other words it denotes *priority of time and place*; as, *Anteayer* (The day before yesterday); *antecámara* (antechamber).

Bajo denotes *subordination, inferiority* of position, and *dependence*; as, *Bajo tal gobierno* (Under such a government); *La puerta está bajo la ventana* (The door is under the window); *Estoy bajo sus órdenes* (I am under his orders). **Bajo** also signifies *under some restriction*; as, *Que se guarde de venir bajo pretexto alguno* (Let him be careful not to come under any pretext whatever). The antiquated preposition *so*, which has nearly the same signification as *bajo*, is now scarcely used except before the words *capa*, cloak; *color*, colour; *pena*, pain, or penalty; *pretexto*, pretext; and a few others; as, *So capa de santo* (Under the cloak of sanctity); *So pena de muerte* (Under pain of death).

Con denotes *conjunction*; as, *Está casado con la Marquesa* (He is married to the Marchioness); *Vino conmigo* (He came with me). When preceded by *para* it signifies *towards*; as, *Es muy cortes para con todos* (He is very courteous towards, or to, everybody). It denotes *manner*; as, *Habla con gracia* (She speaks gracefully). *Means or instrumentality*; as, *Le hirió con una espada* (He wounded him with a sword). United to an infinitive it gives the latter the value of a substantive; as, *Con enseñar se aprende* (By teaching one learns). In composition it denotes *union*; as, *concurrência*, an assemblage; *con-*

federación, a confederation. (See Government of Verbs, page 221.)

Contra, in its most general signification, is *against*; as, *Habla contra mí* (He speaks against me); *Es contra la ley* (It is against the law); *La casa está contra el oriente* (The house faces the east). In composition it implies an opposite meaning to the word to which it is prefixed; as, *contradecir*, to contradict; *contraórden*, a countermand.

De, besides its most general significations of *belonging to*, and *separation from*, has several other meanings. It is employed after adjectives that express the *moral* or *physical characteristics* of objects; as, *duro de corazon* (hard-hearted); *largo de piernas* (long-legged). It precedes nouns denoting the *employments*, or *offices* of persons; as, *Va de encargado de negocios* (He goes as chargé d'affaires); *Trabaja de platero* (He works as silversmith). When, however, the verb *ser* precedes such nouns, the *de* is omitted; as, *Es encargado de negocios*; *Es platero*. It is placed before nouns designating the manner or style of dress; as, *Estaba vestido de militar*; *de luto*; *de gala* (He was dressed as a military man; in mourning; in full dress). It indicates the *passive* voice instead of *por*; as, *Amado de sus amigos, y odiado de sus enemigos* (Beloved by his friends, and hated by his enemies). It is employed before nouns in a *partitive* sense; *Probé del jerez* (I tasted some of the sherry); *Envieme Vd. de aquellos* (Send me some of those). It denotes the *materials* of which things are made, and the *use* for which things are designed; as, *casa de piedra*, a stone house; *caja de oro*, a gold box; *papel de escribir*, writing-paper; *caballo de coche*, coach horse. It indicates different *divisions of time*; as, *de día*, by day; *de noche*, by night. It sometimes denotes *cause*; as, *Lo hizo de miedo* (He did it through fear). *Manner*; as, *Lo hizo de buena gana* (He did it with a good will). It is used with epithets; as, *El pícaro del muchacho* (The rogue of a boy). Also after certain interjections expressive of *complaint*; as, *¡Infeliz de mí!* (Ah, poor me!); *¡Desdi-*

chada de ella! (Unhappy her!). (See Government of Verbs, page 221.)

Desde denotes the *beginning* of time and place; as, *Desde la creación* (From the creation); *Desde Madrid á Londres* (From Madrid to London); *Desde entonces acá* (From that time to this).

En has various meanings besides its general one of *in* and *within*, such as *into*, *as*, *to*; as, *La hija de Tántalo se convirtió en estatua* (Tantalus' daughter was converted into a statue); *De puerta en puerta* (From door to door); *Sírvase admitir esta sortija en señal de amistad* (Be pleased to accept of this ring as a token of friendship). **En** united to *cuanto* signifies *with regard to*; as, *En cuanto á mí* (With regard to myself); *En cuanto á lo que Vd. dijo* (As to, or with regard to, what you said). (See also Government of Verbs, page 221.)

Entre.—The general meaning of this preposition is *between*; as, *Entre los dos* (Between the two); *Entre el padre y el hijo* (Between the father and son). It likewise signifies *amongst*; as, *Entre todos* (Amongst all).

Hacia, in its general signification, is *towards*; as, *Voy hacia casa* (I am going towards home). It forms an adverbial expression when preceded by *de*; as, *Venia de hacia allí* (He came from that direction).

Hasta signifies *till*, *until*, *even*, *to*, *as many as*, *as far as*, and denotes the *end* of time, place, or action; as, *Hasta Lunes* (Till, or until, Monday); *Hasta el año próximo* (Till next year); *Tenia hasta mil* (He had as many as a thousand); *Voy hasta Segovia* (I am going as far as Segovia); *No volveré hasta Mayo* (I shall not return till May); *Hasta la vista* (Until we meet again). **Hasta** in the sense of *till*, or *until*, is followed by *que* before a verb, except in the infinitive mood; but in the sense of *even* the *que* is not used; as, *Hasta que vengan* (Until they come); *Hasta ellos mismos lo saben* (Even themselves know it). **Hasta** sometimes governs infinitives, giving to the action a future, or conditional signification; as,

Probaré hasta conseguir (I shall try till I succeed); *No descansaré hasta merecerlo* (I shall not rest till I deserve it); *Pelearé hasta vencer, ó morir* (I will fight till I conquer, or die).

Para and **por**.—Each of these two prepositions has its peculiar meanings, and their application will be pointed out in the following observations:—**Para** denotes the *end* or *purpose* of an action, and is equivalent to *in order to*, or *for the purpose of*; as, *Estudio para aprender* (I study in order to learn, or for the purpose of learning). It denotes the *use*, *intention*, *benefit*, and *injury* of a thing; as, *La tinta es para escribir* (Ink is to write with); *Esto es para Vd.* (This is for you); *El perjuicio es para él* (The evil is for him). It expresses *capacity* or *incapacity*; as, *Es hombre para mucho* (He is able to do much); *No es hombre para nada* (He is fit for nothing). It points out the place *whither* a thing is *directed*; as, *Va para Madrid* (He is going towards Madrid). It sometimes specifies a particular *time*; as, *Estarémos de vuelta para las Pascuas* (We shall be on our return by the holidays). **Para que** means *what for* and *in order that*; as, *¿Para qué es bueno esto?* (What is this good for?); *Para que no fuese allí* (In order that he might not go there). (See Government of Verbs, page 225, paragraph 7.)

Por denotes *motiöe*, *cause*, or *reason*, also the *means* by which a thing is done; as, *Lo hizo por malicia* (He did it through malice); *Agrada por su cortesía* (He pleases by his courteous manner); *Lo alcanzó por su erudición* (He obtained it by his learning). It denotes *instrumentality*; as, *El libro fué escrito por él, é impreso por su hermano* (The book was written by him, and printed by his brother). It signifies *for the sake of*; as, *Hágalo Vd. por caridad* (Do it for charity's sake). It sometimes means *in the place of*; as, *Obro por él* (I act for him). It denotes *distribution*; as, *Tanto por docena, por ciento* (So much per dozen, per cent). Between two nouns or infinitives it denotes *preference*; as, *Casa por casa, mejor quiero esta que*

aquella (Of the two houses, I prefer this); *Vivir por vivir, prefiero vivir en mi país* (If it be for the sake of living only, I prefer to live in my own country). It sometimes indicates *time*; as, *Salí por una hora* (I went out for an hour); *Por el mes de Mayo* (About the month of May). It is employed in matters of *buying, selling, exchanging, &c.*; *Vendió su caballo por dos mil reales* (He sold his horse for two thousand reals); ¿*Por cuánto le había comprado?* (How much did he buy it for?); *Cámbieme Vd. este baston por aquel* (Change me this stick for that). It sometimes has a *distributive* meaning; as, *A un duro por docena, por libra, &c.* (At one dollar a dozen, a pound, &c.); *Uno por uno; letra por letra* (One by one; letter by letter). When it precedes a verb in the subjunctive mood it is equivalent to *however*, or *although*; as, *Por grande que sea* (However large it may be). It is generally used where *through* and *by* are in English; as, *Pasé por Toledo* (I passed through Toledo); *Por descuido* (Through inattention); *Por envidia* (Through envy); *Pasó por mi ventana* (He passed by my window); *Lo hice por yerro* (I did it by mistake). And in most instances it is equivalent to *for*, except when the latter means *for the purpose of* (which requires *para*); as, *Vengo por Vd.* (I come for you); *Murió por la patria* (He died for his country); *Le tomé por médico* (I took him for a doctor). (See Government of Verbs, page 225, paragraph 7.)

Según denotes *conformity*; as, *Según mi parecer* (According to my opinion); *Lo cuento según me lo han contado* (I relate it as it was related to me); *Según eso vamos bien* (If that be the case we are well off).

Sin denotes *privation* or *want*; as, *Estoy todavía sin comer* (I have not dined yet); *Voy sin Vd.* (I am going without you). It also signifies *besides*; as, *Llevaba joyas de diamantes, sin otras alhajas de oro* (She wore diamonds, besides other jewels of gold). There is, however, an ellipsis in the Spanish phrase, to express which fully we should say, *sin contar*, or *sin mencionar otras alhajas, &c.*

Sobre denotes *superiority*, both as regards locality and dignity; as, *El sombrero está sobre la mesa* (The hat is upon the table); *La caridad es sobre todas las virtudes* (Charity is above all virtues). It indicates the *subject* on which a work treats, or on which we are speaking; as, *Tratado sobre la matemática* (A treatise on mathematics); *Habló sobre la educación* (He spoke on education). It sometimes is used in place of *hacia*, or *cerca*; as, *Llegué sobre el anochecer* (I arrived towards nightfall); *Costó sobre mil duros* (It cost about a thousand dollars).

Tras denotes *order* of things; as, *Tras el padre vino el hijo* (After the father came the son); *Tras la adversidad viene la fortuna* (Fortune succeeds adversity).

Besides the foregoing prepositions, there are many adverbs and adverbial expressions employed as substitutes for prepositions, and when so employed they are generally followed by *á* or *de*. The Spanish language admits of great variety of these expressions; a few of those which are in constant use are here given as specimens.

The following require *á* after them:—

Á lo largo del río.	Along the river.
Al lado de mí.	Next to me.
Acerca de eso.	Concerning that.
Ántes del amanecer.	Before daybreak.
Cerca de la ciudad.	Near the city.
Debajo de la ventana.	Under the window.
Delante de mi vista.	Before my sight.
Dentro del sombrero.	Within the hat.
Detras de la casa.	Behind the house.
Encima del techo.	Upon the roof.
Enfrente de la iglesia.	Opposite the church.
Fuera de la ciudad.	Outside (without) the city.
Léjos de mi país.	Far from my country.
Por encima del puente.	Over, or across the bridge.

—GRAMMAR OF THE SPANISH ROYAL ACADEMY.

The same word may sometimes be a preposition, and at others an adverb, according to the sense in which it is taken; for instance, *desde* is a preposition in *Desde*

Cádiz á Sevilla (From Cádiz to Seville); and an adverb in *Desde ayer* (Since yesterday).

There are a vast number of verbs in English that have certain prepositions affixed to them, and these become, as it were, inseparable from the verbs; but the prepositions so used seldom require to be separately translated in Spanish, the meaning of the verb and preposition together being given by a verb alone, corresponding with the meaning contained in both: for example, to go down, *bajar*; to come in, *entrar*; to go out, *salir*; to go up, *subir*; to draw out, *sacar*; to set out, *partir*; to fall down, *caer*; to pull down, *derribar*; and many more.

Prepositions in Spanish always precede the word which they govern, wherever their situation be in English. Ex.:

¿ *Á* quién escribió Vd.?

Whom did you write to?

Este es el libro de que hablaba.

This is the book of *which* I spoke.

¿ *Para* qué lo hizo?

What did he do it for?

CONJUNCTIONS

SPECIAL MEANINGS OF CERTAIN ENGLISH CONJUNCTIONS, WITH THEIR CORRESPONDING TRANSLATIONS IN SPANISH.

There are several conjunctions in English that are frequently used as substitutes for other words; these conjunctions are generally rendered in Spanish by the words which they stand in the place of, as follows:—

As, meaning *when*, is translated *cuando*; as, We saw them *as* we were going in (*Los vimos cuando entrábamos*).

But, meaning *if it were not*, is translated *si no*; as, *But* for me, they would have killed him (*Si no fuera por mí, le habrían matado*). I would go, *but* that I think it useless (*Yo iría, si no creyera que fuese inútil*).

But, meaning *only*, is translated *solo*, or *no más que*; as, I have *but* two to finish (*Solo me quedan dos para acabar*). I went *but* once (*No fui más que una vez*).

But, meaning *except*, is translated *sinó*, or *mas que*, after a negative and after an interrogative pronoun; and *ménos*, when not preceded by a negative; as, He speaks *nothing but* nonsense (No habla *sinó*, or *mas que tonterías*). Who would think so *but* you? (*Quién creyera tal sinó Vd.*?) Everybody knows it *but* he (*Todos lo saben ménos él*).

Whether, meaning *if*, is translated *si*; as, Say *whether* you will come or not (*Diga Vd. si quiere venir ó no*).

Whether, meaning *be it that*, is translated *que*; as, *Whether* he come or not (*Que venga ó que no venga*).

Whether, meaning *that*, is also translated *que*; as, I doubt *whether* she knows it (*Dudo que lo sepa*).

However, employed before an adjective (and therefore rather an adverb than a conjunction), is translated in the following manner; as, *However attentive* they are, and *however kind* they may be (*Por atentos y bondadosos que sean*; or, *no obstante lo atentos que son, y por bondadosos que sean*).

Why and *because* are translated *porque*; as, I do not know *why* (*No sé porque*). *Because* I could not (*Porque no pude*).

For, meaning *because*, is translated *porque*; as, You must take care of yourself, *for* if you do not, you will be ill (*Es menester que se cuide Vd., porque si no, se enfermará*).

Whereas, meaning *it being so that*, is translated *siendo así que*; as, *Whereas certain individuals* appeared before me, &c. (*Siendo así que parecieron ante mí ciertos individuos*).

Whereas, meaning *on the contrary*, is translated *de lo contrario*; as, You must obey the orders; *whereas*, if you transgress them, you will suffer the consequences (*Es menester que obedezca Vd. á las órdenes; de lo contrario, si las traspasare, sufrirá las consecuencias*).

Either and *or* are both translated *ó*; as, *Either* I am right, *or* he is (*Ó yo tengo razón, ó el la tiene*).

Neither and *nor* are both translated *ni*; as, *Neither*

promise *nor* act without thinking (Ni *prometas*, ni *obres sin* pensar).

Exercise on Conjunctions

VOCABULARY

el oro, the gold.
 la plata, the silver.
 la traducción, the translation.
 la obra, the work.
 el remedio, the remedy.
 al revés, on the wrong side.
 el alma, the soul.
 el cuerpo, the body.
 la dignidad, the dignity.
 la verdad, the truth.
 el vigor, the vigour.
 el apetito, the appetite.
 la razón, the reason.
 la conciencia, the conscience.
 el comercio, the commerce.
 el poder, the power.
 la importancia, the importance.
 la nación, the nation.
 la riqueza, the wealth.
 la influencia, the influence.
 la prosperidad, the prosperity.
 el estado, the state.
 el peligro, the danger.
 la moralidad, the morality.
 el ejercicio, the practice, the exercise.
 la virtud, the virtue.
 el moral, the mulberry tree.
 la moral, the moral.
 la luz, the light.

hablar, to speak.
 porqué, why.
 llover, to rain.
 suponer, to suppose.
 someter, to submit.
 quedar, to remain.
 querer, to like.
 mirar, to look, to view.
 barato, cheap.
 atender, to attend.
 obrar, to act.
 señalar, to point out.
 procurar, to endeavour.
 enseñar, to teach.
 parecer, to appear.
 dudar, to doubt.
 amenguar, to diminish.
 ancho, wide.
 corto, short.
 bastante, enough.
 nada, nothing.
 puro, pure.
 lleno, full.
 desordenado, morbid.
 precioso, precious.
 rehusar, to refuse.
 industrioso, industrious.
 probable, probable.
 claro, clear.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

Gold and silver are precious metals. Neither he nor she (*ni el ni ella*) can refuse. She is virtuous (*virtuosa*) and industrious. The translations or works of which you

speak. Why did you not come? Because it was raining. Since there is no remedy, I suppose that I must submit. I did so because I could not help it (*remediar*). However that may be, he never remains but when he likes; but that matters (*importar*) not. You may either take this or that. He never views things but on the wrong side. It is not only better but cheaper. You must attend, notwithstanding (*no obstante, aunque*) all that (*cuanto*) you have said. I will go, provided (*con la condición*) you come with me. Since we are men, let us act as such. What is to be done then? He cannot, nor can you either; neither can I. I cannot point out to thee thy soul, which is neither visible, nor is it corporeal; but I shall endeavour to make thy very body teach thee the dignity of thy soul. However probable it may appear, I doubt whether it be true. Whether he know it or not. It is wide enough, but too short. Morality consists in the practice of virtue; thus, if we would be moral, we must be virtuous. As the vigour of a morbid appetite increases, and as it makes itself (*se va haciendo*) master of man, so does the use of his reason, and its clear and limpid light, decrease and diminish. Nothing but innocence can give a pure conscience. Commerce is the true regulator of the power and importance of nations, whether it be considered (*se le considere*) in relation to their wealth (*las riquezas de estas*) or with respect to their political influence. Prosperity is a state full (*lleno*) of danger; so that we should content ourselves with the middle (*mediocre*) state.

THE COMMON CONJUNCTIONS

Conjunctions either join words and sentences together or put them in opposition. According to their form they are divided, like prepositions, into single and compound conjunctions. These again are sub-divided, according to the logical relation of the clauses they join together, into nine classes, viz.: Class I, Copulative; Class II, Dis-

junctive; Class III, Adversative; Class IV, Comparative; Class V, Illative; Class VI, Continuative; Class VII, Conditional; Class VIII, Causal; Class IX, Final.

The following is a list of the most common conjunctions in alphabetical order:—

á causa de, because, on account of (when introducing a clause, and equal to because).

ademas de, besides, moreover.

á fin de que, in order that, with the intent.

ahora pues, well now, at present.

al contrario, on the contrary, contrariwise.

al punto que, as soon as.

á más de (que), besides, moreover.

á ménos de (que), unless, if not.

á no ser, if not, unless, except, but for.

á no ser así, if not so, otherwise, or else.

á no ser que, unless, if not, provided that not.

ántes, ántes bien, rather.

ántes de (que), before, prior to.

á pesar de que, notwithstanding.

así como, as, just as (like).

así mismo, just so, likewise.

así pues, so then, therefore.

así que, so that, as well as, as soon as.

aún, yet, still, even.

aún cuando, even if, even though.

aunque, although, though, albeit, even if.

aunque sea, be it ever so.

bajo condición (de) que, on condition that.

bien que, though, although.

casi, almost, nearly.

caso que (commercial), in case that, if.

como, as, like, how, if, because, since.

como...así, as...so.

como quiera que sea or que sea como quiera, be it as it may.

como si, as if.

como tambien, as also.

con condición de (que), on condition (that).

conforme á, according as, how.

conque, so, therefore, consequently.

con que, whereby.

con tal que, on condition, provided that.

con todo eso, nevertheless, for all that.

- cuando**, when, as soon as, if.
cuanto...tanto, the...the.
dado caso que, provided, in case that.
de consiguiente, accordingly, consequently.
del mismo modo, in the same manner.
de manera que, de modo que, so that, so as to.
desde que, since.
después de (que), after.
de suerte que, so that, so as to.
é (é or y), and.
en atención á (que), considering that.
en cambio, instead, on the other hand.
en caso de (que), in case that, if.
en consecuencia, consequently.
en efecto, indeed, in effect.
en fin, in conclusion, finally, at last.
en suma, in a word, in short, briefly.
en tanto, entre tanto, meanwhile, in the meantime.
en tanto grado que, in such a manner, in such a degree that.
en tanto que, while, whilst, as long as.
en virtud de (que), by virtue of (when introducing a clause).
excepto (que), except, save.
finalmente, finally.
fuera de (que), besides.
hasta, in fact, even.
hasta que, till, until.
luego, so, then, therefore, further.
luego que, as soon as.
mas, but.
mas que, even if, even though.
mayormente si or **mayormente cuando**, especially if, especially when.
miéntas (que), as long as, while, whilst.
miéntas tanto, in the meantime, meanwhile.
mucho ménos, much less, so much the less.
ni, neither, nor.
ni aún, not even.
ni...ni, neither...nor.
ni siquiera, not even.
ni tampoco, not even.
no más que, only, but.
no más que por, no más que para, only for.
no obstante, nevertheless, notwithstanding.
no...sino, only, but.

no sólo...sino también, not only...but also.
no...ya, no more, no longer.
ó = ú, or.
ó...ó, either...or.
ó si no, otherwise, or else.
para que, that, in order that, so as to.
para que no, that not, in order that not, lest.
pero, but, however, still.
pero sí, but indeed.
por causa de, because.
por consiguiente, consequently.
por donde, whereby.
por el contrario, on the contrary.
por eso, for the reason, therefore.
por lo mismo, for this very reason.
por lo tanto, for this reason, on this ground, therefore.
por...que, however, be...ever so.
porque, as, because, for, that.
porque no, that not.
por si acaso, in case that, if by chance.
por último, lastly, finally.
pues, since, as, for, now, therefore, consequently, hence.
pues que, as, because, since, for.
puesto que, as, since, allowing, provided that.
que, that, as, than, for, if, whether.
que si, if, whether, as to whether.
salvo, save, except.
sea...ó, whether...or.
sea que, be it that.
según (que), according as, according to what (how).
sí, yes.
si, if, whether.
si es que, that is if.
sin embargo, notwithstanding, nevertheless.
si no, if not, unless, otherwise, or else.
sino, but, only, besides, except.
sino cuando, except when, unless.
sin que, without (that).
siquiera, at least, even though.
sólo que, sólo si que, only that, solely that.
supuesto que, as, since, allowing, supposing, provided that.
tal como, such as.
también, also, too, likewise, as well as.
tampoco, neither, nor, not even.

tan luego que, as soon as.

tanto como, as much (long) as, as well as, both...and.

todavía, still, yet, nevertheless.

visto que, considering that.

y (= *é*), and.

y si no, and if not, or else.

ya no, or **no...ya**, no more, no longer.

ya...ya, sometimes...sometimes, now...now, at one time...at other times.

ya que, as, since, that.

INTERJECTIONS

An Interjection is a part of speech which expresses some emotion of the speaker, and is therefore an ejaculation or exclamation. Interjections are numerous and easily distinguishable, ordinary ones being the following:—

When adjectives are employed as interjections, the preposition **de** is put between them and the noun or pronoun following; as, *¡Desdichada de mí!* (Unhappy me!) *¡Infeliz de mi hijo!* (Oh my unhappy son!)

The interjection **ay**, in the sense of *woe*, or *alas*, is followed in a like manner by **de** before nouns or pronouns referring to persons; as, *¡Ay de tí!* (Woe is thee!) *¡Ay de ellos!* (Alas for them!) *¡Ay de mi hijo!* (Alas, my poor son!)

There are a variety of other terms and expressions that may be used as interjections; such as, *¡Qué lástima!* (What a pity!) *¡Dios mío!* (My God!) *¡Bien!* (Well!) *¡Hola, poco á poco!* (Hallo, gently!) *¡Qué vergüenza!* (For shame!) *¡Cuidado!* (Take care!) *¡Otra, otra!* (Encore!) *¡Quita!* (Pshaw!) *¡Hurra!* (Hurrah!) *¡Viva!* (Huzza!)

Ete, behold, is used with personal pronouns in the objective case; as, *¡Eteme aquí!* (Behold me here!) *¡Etelos allí que vienen!* (Behold! or lo! they are coming!)

LIST OF INTERJECTIONS

¡ Á Dios, or adiós!	Goodbye. Adieu.
¡ Adelante!	Go ahead. Pass on. Onward. Go on. Come in.
¡ Adelante con los faroles!	Come along (lit. ahead with the lantern).
¡ Ah, pobrecito!	Ah, poor creature.
¡ Ah, qué desgracia!	Ah, what a misfortune.
¡ Alto ahí!	Halt. Stop there.
¡ Anda, vete corriendo!	Go. Run. Make haste.
¡ Ánimo, hijo mío, ánimo!	Cheer up, my boy.
¡ Arré, el asta, el asta! (<i>the horn</i>).	Gee up (to make horses go).
¡ Ave María purísima!	(Expression of amazement or grief.)
¿ A ver ¿está el amo de Vd. visible?	I say, is your master in?
¡ Ay! ¡ ay de mí!	Alas, alas, poor me.
¡ Ay! ¡ qué gusto!	Oh, what a delight.
¡ Ba, no será tanto!	Go on, it won't be so bad.
¡ Ba, qué vergüenza!	Fie, what a shame. Fie for shame.
¡ Bendito sea Dios!	God be praised.
¡ Bien, bien, así me gusta!	Good, this is how I like it.
¡ Canario, qué buena hembra!	I say, what a fine woman.
¡ Carai, or Cáscaras!	Zounds.
¡ Caramba, esto sí que es caro!	Fancy that, or good gracious, this is expensive.
¡ Cáspita!	Good gracious. Fancy that.
¡ Chito, silencio! ¡ que pasa la ronda!	Hush, silence, the patrol is passing.
¡ Cielos, Virgen Santísima, qué oigo!	Heavens, what do I hear.
¡ Cómo! ¡ tal hubiera dicho!	What, that he should have this.
¡ Cuernos (<i>horns</i>) qué chica!	I say, what a pretty girl.
¡ Cuidado con la cabeza!	Mind your head.
¡ Desdichada de mí!	Oh, poor me.
¡ Despacio! gritó el capitán del buque.	Gently, cried the ship's captain.
¡ Diablo! ¡ Diantre!	The devil. The deuce.
¡ Dios mío! ¡ qué hago yo!	My God, what shall I do.
¡ Ea, ánimo!	Now then, cheer up, courage.
¡ Ea, hasta la vista! ¡ Ea, hasta luego!	Well then, or now then, Good-bye, till we meet again.

¡ Eh, ole! ¡ Salero! ¡ Alza, Alza!	Bravo. Keep it going. (Animation of a dance.)
¡ Fuera! ¡ Fuera!	Out with him. Outside.
¡ Gracias á Dios que . . .!	Thank God that . . .
¡ Hé, ahí! or, ¡ hé aquí!	Behold. Look here. Here (it) is.
¡ Hé, hola, buen amigo!	Halloa, good friend.
¡ Hola, Gil Blas!	Halloa, Gil Blas.
¡ Hombre!	You see, my friend, or, you don't mean it.
¡ Mal haya quien tal diga!	Woe unto him who says so.
¡ Manos á la obra!	Start away.
¡ Míra lo que estás haciendo!	Look what you are doing.
¡ O qué desgracia!	Oh, what a misfortune.
¡ Oh qué placer!	Oh, what a pleasure.
¡ Ojalá estuviésemos en casa!	Would to God we were at home.
¡ Ojo al Cristo, que es de plata!	Keep your eye on it (on the crucifix), it is of silver—Spanish saying.
¡ Poco á poco!	Slowly. Gently.
¡ Por Dios! ¡ no diga Vd. tal!	For God's sake, don't say so.
¡ Pues bien!	Well then. Now then.
¡ Qué diantre or diablo!	What the devil, the deuce.
¡ Que Dios haya!	God rest his soul.
¡ Quedo, quedito!	Silence. Slowly. Gently.
¡ Qué lástima (que)!	What a pity.
¡ Quién sabe!	Who knows.
¡ So! or ¡ ho!	Whoa (to stop horses, &c.).
¡ Sopla!	Oh, strange (expression of surprise).
¡ Sús, sús, caballeros de Castilla! (El Cid).	(El Cid), up, up, knights of Castile.
¡ Toma!	There. There now.
¡ Válgame Dios, señor!	God help me.
¡ Vamos, ya está mejor esto!	That's it, now it is better.
¡ Vamos, vamos!	Go on. Come on. Well.
¡ Vaya pues, hasta otro día!	Well then, till next time.
¡ Vaya! si la conozco.	Ah! don't I know her.
¡ Venga pues!	Come along with it.
¡ Virgen Santísima!	Holy Virgin.
¡ Viva la independencia!	Long live independence.
¡ Zape!	Sh (to drive away a cat or dog).

CONVERSATION

I am quite agreeable to it.

We can make you some allowance.

I have altered my mind.

It will amount to the same.

We have not yet had an answer.

There is every appearance.

I think you will approve of this proposal.

He will now have arrived.

We depend on your giving special attention to this.

This was certainly the right course.

We would gladly entrust the matter to you.

We can gain nothing by this.

I can learn nothing positive respecting him.

They must have been in league together.

This question is of minor importance.

Do all in your power to gain your point.

I do not wish to induce you to give up your opinion.

Sooner or later, this will be changed.

Estoy perfectamente conforme con ello.

Podemos acordarle alguna rebaja.

He mudado de parecer.

Ascenderán á eso mismo.

No hemos tenido todavía una contestación.

Hay toda apariencia.

Creo que Vd. aprobará esta proposición.

Habrá llegado ya.

Confiamos en que prestará su esmerada atención á esto.

Este era ciertamente el buen camino.

Confiaríamos á Vd. gustosos todo el asunto.

No podemos ganar nada por ello.

No puedo saber nada de positivo referente á él.

Ellos han debido de estar de acuerdo.

Esta cuestion es de poca entidad.

Haga todo lo que le sea posible para lograr sus miras.

No quisiera inducirle á cambiar de opinion.

Tarde ó temprano esto se cambiará.

APPENDICES

I. IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS

I. DEPENDING ON THE USE OF A NOUN, VIZ.:

She does everything gracefully.
 These are very beautiful pictures.
 Cheer up, soldiers, the day is
 ours.

To sleep very late.
 To be on the brink of ruin.
 To cast a mist before one's eyes.
 To fret and fume.

To share the plunder.
 To meet with one's match.

Tiene gracia en cuanto ella hace.
 He ahí cuadros de gran belleza.
 Valor, soldados, la victoria es
 nuestra.

Dormir la mañana.
 Faltarle *un nada* para arruinarse.
 Deslumbrar, cegar.
 Echar *fuego* por los ojos, dejarse
 llevar de la cólera, echar *chispas*.
 Partir la *capa*.
 Encontrar á su maestro. Dar con
 la *horma* de su *sapato*.

II. DEPENDING ON THE USE OF A PRONOUN, VIZ.:

What day of the month is it?
 All blessings come from God.

Is that your opinion? Do not
 question it.

Are those your servants?—Yes,
 they are.

Madam, are you the mother of
 that child?—Yes, I am.

Ladies, are you the strangers that
 have been announced to me?—
 Yes, we are.

Ladies, are you pleased with that
 music?—Yes, we are.

Cobbler, stick to your last.

Madam, are you ill?—Yes, I am.

Madam, how long have you been
 married?—A year.

Is it long since you arrived?—A
 fortnight.

¿Á cuantos *estamos* del mes?
 Todos los bienes *nos* llegan de
 Dios.

¿Es esa su *opinión* de Vd.? No
 dude Vd. que no *sea*.

¿Son esos *sus criados* de Vd.?—
 Sí, *esos* son.

Señora, ¿es Vd. *la madre* de este
 niño?—Sí, *lo* soy.

Señoras, ¿son Vds. *las forasteras*
 de que me han avisado?—Sí,
nosotros somos.

Señoras, ¿les gusta á Vds. esta
 música?—Sí, *nos* gusta.

Zapatero á su *horma*.

Señora, ¿está Vd. mala?—Sí, lo
 estoy.

Señora, ¿cuánto hace que está Vd.
 casada?—Hace un año que lo
 estoy.

¿Hace mucho tiempo que llegó
 Vd.?—Hace una quincena que
 llegué.

That woman has the art of shedding tears, even when she is least afflicted.

That woman proposed herself as a model for her children.

He (or she) has not succeeded in that stratagem.

Esta mujer posee el arte de llorar, cuando ménos afligida se halla.

Esta mujer se ha propuesto por modelo á sus hijos.

Esta astucia no le ha valido.

III. DEPENDING ON THE USE OF A VERB, VIZ.:

To be free and open.

To be full of business.

To take fire presently.

The dry weather *we had* in the spring has destroyed all the fruit.

To put to the vote.

Life is at stake.

My honour is concerned in it.

That is understood.

To act deliberately.

To go full speed.

To pass one's time merrily.

To be worth seeing.

To be about to happen.

To be reduced to beggary.

To write with acrimony.

The sun is in my eyes.

To know not which way to turn.

To give full power.

That speaks for itself.

To give largely.

To forgive somebody.

To meet another like ourselves.

Not to be under any obligations.

To interrupt one who speaks.

Hablar claro, decir lo que se siente.

Estar abrumado (lleno) de negocios.

Tomar las cosas con calor.

La sequedad que ha hecho en la primavera ha perdido las frutas.

Ir á votación.

Va la vida en ello.

Está interesado mi honor en ello.

Eso se supone.

Ir paso á paso.

Ir á rienda suelta.

Darse buena vida.

Estar de ver.

Estar á la puerta.

Estar por puertas.

Escribir con sangre.

Me da el sol en los ojos.

No saber que camino tomar.

Dar carta blanca.

Eso habla de por sí.

Dar á manos llenas.

Hacer gracia á alguno.

Encontrar Sancho con su rocín.

No deber una sed de agua.

Cortarle la palabra á alguno, interrumpirle.

Poner un ejército en planta.

Este vino sube á los cascos.

Hacerse el sordo.

To raise an army.

The wine flies up to the head.

To give a deaf ear.

II. SPANISH PROVERBS

There are in Spanish a great many proverbs or proverbial forms of expression, of which the following are most in use:—

A desperate disease must have a desperate cure.

A good name is better than riches.

† Where there is a will there is a way.

There is many a slip 'twixt the cup and the lip.

It is not the cowl makes the friar.
All is not lost that is delayed.

A rolling stone gathers no moss.

Barking dogs seldom bite.

Crosses are ladders leading to heaven.

To kill two birds with one stone.
Strike the iron while it is hot.

Every man is the maker of his own fortune.

God feeds the birds, but he does not put the food into their mouths.

Hunger is the best sauce.

Be like the sandal tree, which perfumes the axe that lays it low; return good for evil.

Still water runs deep.

Better late than never.

All's well that ends well.

Ill-gotten goods never prosper.

Grasp all, lose all.

Á grandes males, grandes remedios.

Cria fama y échate á dormir (Earn fame and go to bed).

Donde hay gana hay maña.

De la mano á la boca se pierde la sopa.

El hábito no hace monge.

No hay plazo que no se cumpla, ni deuda que no se pague.

Piedra movediza nunca moho cobija.

{ Perro que ladra no muerde.

{ Perro ladrador nunca buen mordedor.

Las cruces son escaleras que conducen al cielo.

Matar dos pájaros de una pedrada.

Á hierro caliente machacar de repente.

Cada uno es artífice de su ventura.

Dios da que comer á las aves, pero no se lo pone en el pico.

Á buen hambre no hay pan duro.

Sea como el sándalo que perfuma el hacha que le hiere.

Del agua mansa me libre Dios, que de la brava me guardaré yo.

Más vale tarde que nunca.

El fin corona la obra.

Bienes mal adquiridos á nadie han enriquecido.

Quien mucho abarca poco aprieta.

Opportunity makes the thief.
No pleasure without pain.
Out of sight, out of mind.
One swallow does not make a summer.

It is an ill wind that blows nobody good.

There is a vast difference between saying and doing.

A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.

He who lends to a friend makes an enemy of him.

Birds of a feather flock together.
Tell this to the marines.

It is good to fish in troubled waters.

Rome was not built in a day.
No song, no supper.

All is not gold that glitters.
Misfortunes never come alone.
One holdfast is better than two
I'll give thee.

La ocasión hace el ladrón.
No hay atajo sin trabajo.
Ahora que te veo me acuerdo.
Una golondrina no hace verano.

No hay mal que por bien no venga.

Del dicho al hecho hay gran trecho.

Más vale pájaro en mano que buitres volando.

Quien presta al amigo cobra un enemigo.

Cada oveja con su pareja.
A otro perro con ese hueso.

A río revuelto ganancia de pescadores.

Zamora no se ganó en una hora.
Por dinero baila el perro, y por pan sí se lo dan.

No es todo oro lo que reluce.
Bien vengas mal si vienes solo.
Más vale un toma que dos te daré.

III. SUBSTANTIVES HAVING DIFFERENT MEANINGS AS THEY ARE USED WITH THE MASCULINE OR FEMININE ARTICLE.

MASCULINE

el **aroma**, the aroma, perfume.
el **atalaya**, the warder of the tower.
el **ayuda**, the assistant, helpmate.
el **barba**, the old man (one who acts a part on the stage).
el **bestia**, the idiot, fool, or brute.
el **cabecilla**, the leader of rebels, ringleader.
el **calavera**, the madcap, hare-brained fellow.
el **canal**, the canal, channel.
el **capital**, capital (money).
el **cólera**, the cholera morbus.

FEMININE

la **aroma**, the acacia flower.
la **atalaya**, the watch-tower.
la **ayuda**, help, aid, assistance.
la **barba**, the beard.
la **bestia**, the beast.
la **cabecilla**, the little head.
la **calavera**, the skull.
la **canal**, the gutter.
la **capital**, the metropolis or capital.
la **cólera**, rage.

MASCULINE

- el **cometa**, the comet.
 el **consonante**, rhyme.
 el **corneta**, the cornet player.
 el **corriente**, the current month.
 el **corte**, the edge of a knife, cut.
 el **creciente**, the crescent (arms).

 el **cura**, the parson, parish priest.
 el **descendiente**, the descendant.

 el **doble**, the fold, crease, wrinkle.
 el **fantasma**, the phantom.
 el **frente**, the front.
 el **gallina**, the coward, chicken-hearted fellow.
 el **guarda**, the watchman, warder, keeper.
 el **guardia**, soldier belonging to the guards.
 el **haz**, the bundle, fagot, sheaf.

 el **justicia**, the judge, Justice.
 el **lengua**, the interpreter.
 el **levita**, the Levite.
 el and la **máscara**, the masked person.
 el **moral**, the mulberry tree.
 el **órden**, order, regulation, regularity.
 el **parte**, the report.
 el **pendiente**, the ear-ring.
 el **recluta**, the recruit.
 el **secante**, varnish.

 el **trompeta**, the trumpeter.
 el **vista**, the custom-house officer.

 el **vocal**, the voter.

FEMININE

- la **cometa**, the paper kite.
 la **consonante**, the consonant.
 la **corneta**, the cornet, horn.
 la **corriente**, the current.
 la **corte**, the court (of a prince).
 la **creciente**, the flood tide, waxing (crescent) moon.
 la **cura**, the cure.
 la **descendiente**, the slope, declivity.
 la **doble**, duplicity, falsehood.
 la **fantasma**, the scarecrow.
 la **frente**, the forehead.
 la **gallina**, the hen.

 la **guarda**, the watch, female warder.
 la **guardia**, the guard, body of soldiers, guard room.
 la **haz**, the face, front, surface, right side of cloth, obverse of coins.
 la **justicia**, justice.
 la **lengua**, the tongue, language.
 la **levita**, the frockcoat.
 la **máscara**, the masked person.
 la **moral**, the moral.
 la **órden**, { the order, i.e. command.
 { the Order (decoration, or religious fraternity).
 la **parte**, the part.
 la **pendiente**, the slope.
 la **recluta**, recruiting.
 la **secante**, the segment, secant (geometry).
 la **trompeta**, the trumpet.
 la **vista**, the sight, view, sense of seeing.
 la **vocal**, the vowel.

CONVERSATION

Whither do you wish to go?	¿Adonde quiere Vd. ir?
Why do you ask?	¿Porqué lo pregunta Vd.?
Very well, but I must go instantly.	En hora buena, pero es menester que vaya inmediatamente.
Here is wishing you a good journey.	Vaya, á su buen viage.
Many thanks.	Muchas gracias.
When do you set out?	¿Cuando parte Vd.?
Are you an early riser?	¿Es Vd. muy madrugador?
No, sir, I am not.	No, señor, no lo soy.
All confidence is destroyed.	Ha desaparecido toda la confianza.
I must open your eyes to the fact.	Es preciso que le abra los ojos.
At last, I had to give it up.	Por fin, tuve que desistir.
I must first make sure of it.	Tengo que asegurarme de esto primero.
There is no ostensible reason for your refusal.	No hay motivo plausible para su negativa de Vd.
You greatly overrate my services.	Vd. hace demasiado aprecio de mis servicios.
I do not allow him to pry into my affairs.	No le permito que se meta en mis negocios.
This may not find favour in your eyes.	Talvez esto no será del agrado de Vd.
I will not impose this burden on you.	Yo no impondré á Vd. esta carga.
It is remarkable that you did not notice it.	Es notable que Vd. no lo haya reparado.
Who gave you the right?	¿De donde tiene Vd. semejante derecho?
My endeavours were badly rewarded.	Se me han pagado mal mis diligencias.

IV. LIST OF THE ABBREVIATIONS MOST COMMONLY USED IN SPANISH

A ^s .	arrobas.	25 pounds weight.
A.A.	autores.	authors.
A.C.	Año Cristiano.	Christian year.
Adm ^{or} .	administrador.	administrator.
Ag ^{to} .	Agosto.	August.
Am ^o .	amigo.	friend.
Ant ^o .	Antonio.	Anthony.

Ap ^{ca} .	apostólico.	apostolic.
Art ^o .	artículo.	article.
Arzbp ^o .	arzobispo.	archbishop.
B.	beato.	blessed.
b. or v.	vuelta.	turn over.
Bmo. Pe.	beatísimo Padre.	most blessed Father.
Br.	Bachiller.	bachelor of arts.
B. L. M.	beso las manos.	kiss the hands.
B. L. P.	beso los pies.	kiss the feet.
Cám ^{ra} .	cámara.	chamber.
Cap.	capítulo.	chapter.
Cap ⁿ .	capitan.	captain.
Capp ⁿ .	capellan.	chaplain.
C. M. B.	cuyas manos beso.	whose hands I kiss.
Col.	columna.	column.
Comis ^o .	comisario.	commissary.
Comp ^a .	compañía.	company.
Conso.	consejo.	council.
Corr ^{te} .	corriente.	current.
C. P. B.	cuyos pies beso.	whose feet I kiss.
Da.	doña.	Mrs.
Da.	don.	Mr.
Dr.	doctor.	doctor.
D. D.	doctores.	doctors.
Dho.	dicho.	ditto or said.
Diz ^{re} .	Diciembre.	December.
Dom ^o .	Domingo.	Sunday.
Drō.	derecho.	right or duty.
Ecco.	eclesiástico.	ecclesiastic.
En ^o .	Enero.	January.
Ex ^{cia} .	excelencia.	excellency.
Ex ^{mo} .	excelentísimo.	most excellent.
Febo.	Febrero.	February.
Fha.	fecha.	dated.
Folo.	folio.	folio.
Fr.	fray.	Brothers of religious orders.
Fran ^{co} .	Francisco.	Francis.
Frnz.	Fernandez.	a Spanish surname.
G ^{de} . or gue.	garde.	preserve.
Gen ^l .	general.	general.
Gra.	gracia.	grace.
Ille.	ilustre.	illustrious.
Ill ^{mo} .	ilustrísimo.	most illustrious.
Inq ^{or} .	inquisidor.	inquisitor.

Jhs.	Jesus.	Jesus.
Jno., Jn.	Juan.	John.
Jph.	Joseph.	Joseph.
Lib.	libro.	book.
Liba.	libras.	pounds.
Lin.	línea.	line.
Liza.	licenciado.	licentiate.
Me.	madre.	mother.
Mor.	mayor.	eldest.
Mr.	Señor.	monsieur.
Ms. As.	muchos años.	many years.
Magd.	magestad.	majesty.
Manl.	Manuel.	Emanuel.
Maymo.	mayordomo.	steward.
Migl.	Miguel.	Michael.
Mfíro.	Ministro.	Minister.
M. P. S.	muy poderoso señor.	most powerful lord.
Mrd.	merced.	grace.
Mrñ.	Martin.	Martin.
Mrñz.	Martinez.	a Spanish surname.
Mro.	maestro.	master.
Mrs.	maravedis.	maravedis.
MS.	manuscrito.	manuscript.
MSS.	manuscritos.	manuscripts.
Novre.	Noviembre.	November.
Nro.	nuestro.	our.
N. S.	nuestro Señor.	our Lord.
N. Sra.	nuestra Señora.	our Lady.
Obpo.	obispo.	bishop.
Octre.	Octubre.	October.
Ona.	onzas.	ounces.
Orñ.	órden.	order.
Pa.	para.	for.
Pe.	padre.	father.
Po.	Pedro.	Peter.
Pr.	por.	for or by.
Pta.	plata.	silver or plate.
Pte.	parte.	part.
Pto.	puerto.	port.
Pág.	página.	page.
Pbco.	público.	public.
P. D.	posdata.	postscript, P. S.
Präl.	principal.	principal.
Prör.	procurador.	solicitor or proctor.

Prov.	provisor.	vicar-general.
Q ^{do} .	cuando.	when.
Q ^e .	que.	that.
Q ⁿ .	quien.	who.
Q. B. S. M.	quien besa sus manos.	{ who kisses your hands (used at the end of letters).
Q. D. G.	que Dios guarde.	whom God preserve.
Q. S. M. B.	quien sus manos besa.	{ who kisses your hands (used at the end of letters).
Qto.	cuanto.	how much.
R ^{bi} .	recibí.	I received.
R ^{do} .	reverendo.	reverend.
R ^l . R ^{lea} .	real, reales.	royal.
Rev ^{mo} .	reverendísimo.	most reverend.
Rs.	reales.	reals.
S.	san <i>or</i> santo.	saint.
S ^{mo} .	serenísimo.	most serene.
S ⁿ .	san <i>or</i> santo.	saint.
Sr. <i>or</i> Sor.	señor.	sir.
S ^{ria} .	secretaria.	secretaryship or office.
S ^{rio} .	secretario.	secretary.
S ^{to} .	san <i>or</i> santo.	saint.
Seb ⁿ .	Sebastian.	Sebastian.
Secret ^a .	secretaria.	secretaryship or office.
Secret ^o .	secretario.	secretary.
Secret ^{ria} .	secretaria.	secretaryship or office.
Secret ^{rio} .	secretario.	secretary.
Serv ^o .	servicio.	service.
Serv ^{or} .	servidor.	servant.
Setre.	Setiembre.	September.
Sig ^{te} .	siguiente.	following.
S. M.	su majestad.	his or her majesty.
S. S ^d .	su santidad.	his holiness.
SS ^{mo} Pe.	santísimo padre.	most holy father.
S. S. S.	su seguro servidor.	your faithful servant.
Sup ^{ca} .	súplica.	entreaty or petition.
Sup ^{te} .	superintendente.	superintendent.
Sup ^{te} .	suplicante.	petitioner.
Tent ^e .	teniente.	lieutenant.
Tom.	tomo.	volume.
Tpo.	tiempo.	time.
V., Ve., Ven ^e	venerable.	venerable.
V ⁿ .	vellon.	bullion.
V. A.	vuestra alteza.	your highness.

V.Bd.	vuestra beatitud.	your blessedness.
Vd., Vm.	vuesamerced <i>or</i> usted.	{ a title similar to "worship" in English, used com- monly as sir.
Vds., Vms.	ustedes.	{ your worships (the plural of the foregoing).
V.E.	vuecelencia.	your excellency.
V.G.	verbigracia.	for example.
Vol.	volúmen.	volume.
V.P.	vuestra paternidad.	your paternity.
Vro.	vuestro.	your.
V.S.	vueseñoria <i>or</i> usia.	your lordship.
V.S.	vuestra santidad.	your holiness.
V.S.J.	vueseñoria ilustrísima.	your grace.
V.S.S.	vueseñorias.	your lordships.
Xmo.	diezmo.	tithe.
Xtiano.	Cristiano.	Christian.
Xto.	Cristo.	Christ.
Xtobal.	Cristóbal.	Christopher.

V. FAMILIAR AND COMPLIMENTARY PHRASES

The first salutation among Spaniards is ordinarily, *Tenga Vd. muy buenos días* (Good day to you), which expression is used from the earliest part of the morning till two or three hours after midday; from which time till dark, *Buenas tardes* (Good afternoon), is employed; and from candle-light until the following morning, *Buenas noches* (Good night), both on entering a room and on taking leave. Observe that these expressions are always used in Spanish in the plural number.

In greeting a lady, the first expression most frequently made use of is, *Á los piés de Vd., Señora*, which means literally, "Madam, at your feet". The lady's reply to this is generally, *Beso á Vd. la mano, Caballero*; literally, "I kiss your hand, Sir". Both these expressions imply a polite respect for the persons to whom they are addressed.

In enquiring after the health of a person spoken to, the expressions mostly used are: *Cómo lo pasa Vd.?* or *cómo*

está Vd. Caballero, or Señora? (How do you do?); and the reply would be, *Medianamente bien, or perfectamente bien, para servir á Vd.* (Middling well, or perfectly well, at your service); or, *Así, así, or tal cual; y Vd. cómo lo pasa?* (So, so; and how do you do?); *Sin novedad á la disposición de Vd.* This expression, *sin novedad*, one of the most polite and most frequently employed, has no equivalent in English. Literally translated it is *without novelty*—that is, *without any alteration or change*—and means that the health of the person enquired after continues very well. Gentlemen in greeting each other frequently employ, as respectful salutations, the following expressions: *Servidor de Vd. Caballero* (Your servant, Sir); *Á la orden de Vd.* (Your most obedient); *Beso á Vd. la mano* (I kiss your hand). A more familiar salutation in passing each other is, *Agur, agur* (Goodbye); or, *Vaya Vd. con Dios* (Adieu, or God be with you).

The usual phrase in introducing one person to another is, *Señor Monteverde, tengo el honor de presentarle al Señor Garcia* (Mr. Monteverde, I have the honour of introducing Mr. Garcia to you); to which the reply is generally, *Caballero, celebro la ocasión de conocer á Vd.* (Sir, I am happy to have the opportunity of making your acquaintance); or, *Reconózcame Vd. por un servidor suyo* (I am much at your service).

The most usual expressions for *asking or requesting* are: *Tenga Vd. la bondad de darme* (Have the goodness to give me); *Hágame Vd. el favor de decirme* (Do me the favour to tell me); *Sírvase Vd., or tenga Vd. la complacencia de* (Have the kindness to); *Quiére Vd. tener la bondad, or la complacencia de?* (Will you have the kindness to?). And for returning thanks: *Mil gracias, or muchísimas gracias* (Many thanks); *Se lo agradezco á Vd. infinito* (I am very much obliged to you); *Le devuelvo infinitas gracias* (I return you many thanks); *Se lo agradecería de veras* (I would feel truly thankful to you).

To describe the state of the weather, the verb **hacer**,

with a noun, is employed in Spanish, instead of the impersonal verb *to be*, with an adjective, used in English; as, *Hace frío* (It is cold); *Hacia calor* (It was warm); *Hará buen tiempo pronto* (It will soon be fine weather); *Si acaso hiciere mal tiempo* (In case the weather should be bad); *Hace un tiempo variable* (The weather is unsettled).

To express that one feels *cold, warm, afraid, ashamed, hungry, thirsty*, &c., instead of the verb *to be*, used in English with an adjective, the verb *tener* must be employed in Spanish with a noun; as, *Tengo frío* (I am cold); *Tenia calor* (I was warm); *Tienen miedo* (They are afraid); *Tiene vergüenza* (He or she is ashamed); *No tengo hambre* (I am not hungry). The same verb is also employed in Spanish to denote a person's age; as, *Qué edad tiene?* (What age, or how old, is he?); *Tiene veinte años* (He is twenty years old).

VI. EPISTOLARY CORRESPONDENCE

The peculiarities of the Spanish epistolary style consist principally in the manner of beginning and ending a letter; for instance, in addressing persons of different classes of society, except those of title, the letter begins with: *Muy Señor mio*, or *Muy Señor nuestro*, which expressions are equivalent in their import to *Sir*, or *Dear Sir*. The first would be used by one gentleman addressing another; the second by a firm or several persons addressing one person; *Muy Señores míos*, by one person addressing more than one; and *Muy Señores nuestros*, by more than one person addressing several others, each corresponding with *Gentlemen*, or *Dear Sirs*.

In addressing ladies, *Señora* would be substituted for *Señor*, *mia* for *mio*, and *nuestra* for *nuestro*. These expressions are most generally abbreviated thus: *Muy Sr. mio*; *Muy Sr. nrō*; *Muy Srēs. míos*; *Muy Srēs. nrōs*; *Muy Srā. mia*; *Muy Srās. mias*; *Muy Srā. nrā*; *Muy Srās. nrās*.

In the body of the letter, *su ap^{ble}*. (su apreciable), or *su est^{da}*. (su estimada), or *su favor^{da}*. (su favorecida)—*carta* (letter) being understood—are equivalent to *your favour*, or *your esteemed letter*.

With reference to the date of a letter, *Yours of the 2nd inst.*, *4th ulto.*, *8th of May*, &c., are translated, *Las de Vd. del 2 cort^e*. or *corr.* (corriente), *4 del pp^{do}*. (próximo pasado), *8 de Mayo*, &c.

At the conclusion of a letter, the following forms, or others equivalent, with one or other of the sets of initials appended to them, are generally employed, viz.:

Nos repetimos á la disposición
de Vd., C.M.B. (*cuyas manos
besamos*).

Monteverde Hermanos.

Manden Vds. cuanto gusten á
S.S.S. (*sus seguros servidores*).
Q.S.M.B. (*que sus manos besan*).

B. Palmer y Cia.

Siendo cuanto se me ocurre de-
cirle por hoy, mándeme sin
reserva; interin B.L.M. de Vd.
(*beso las manos de Vd.*).

José E. Locsin.

Se repite á las órdenes de Vd. su
atto. y *sgo.* Serv. (*atento y se-
guro servidor*) y B.S.M. (*besa
sus manos*). J. V. Legaspi.

We reiterate our services to you,
whose hands we kiss.

Monteverde Brothers.

Command at pleasure your faith-
ful servants, *who kiss your
hands*.

B. Palmer & Co.

This being all that occurs to me
to say at present, I beg you will
command me freely; meanwhile
I kiss your hands.

Joseph E. Locsin.

Your humble and faithful servant
again places himself at your
orders, *and kisses your hands*.

J. V. Legaspi.

In a more friendly style, a letter may begin with: *Muy Sr. y amigo mio* (My dear Sir and friend); *Ap^{ble}. Sr. mio* (My valued Sir); *Muy ap^{ble}. Sr^a*. (My dear Lady); concluding with: *Mande Vd. con toda franqueza á su invariable amigo y S.S.* (Command with freedom your unalterable friend and faithful servant); *Es cuanto se le ofrece á su af^{mo}. amigo y S.S.* (This is all that occurs to your affectionate friend and faithful servant); *Dios guarde su vida los m^s. a^s*. (*muchos años*) *que desea su muy reconocido amigo y servidor* (May God preserve you many years: your grateful

friend and servant). In a very familiar style, a letter is begun in the following manner: *Mi ap^{ble} amigo* (My esteemed friend); *Mi muy querido*, or *estimado amigo* (My very dear friend); *Querido Francisco* (Dear Francis); concluding, *Quedándome todo tuyo afmo.* (Remaining affectionately yours); *De tu constante amigo que te aprecia* (From your constant friend, who esteems you); *Soy como siempre su agradecido é inalterable amigo que devéras le estima* (I am your ever grateful and unalterable friend, who truly appreciates you).

VII. COMMERCIAL TERMS

INVOICING, INSURANCE, FINANCIAL, AND LEGAL TERMS. ETC.

Abandonment (marine insurance).	Abandono.
Above-named.	Susodicho.
Acceptance, absolute.	Aceptación pura ó simple.
Acceptance, of a bill, &c.	Aceptación de una letra de cambio.
Acceptance, partial.	Aceptación parcial.
Acceptance, returned for non-	Devuelta por falta de aceptación.
Acceptance, to cancel an.	Anular una aceptación.
Acceptance, to present for.	Presentar á la aceptación.
Acceptance, to refuse an.	Negarse á la aceptación.
Acceptance in blank.	Aceptación á descubierta.
Acceptance under protest and act of honour.	Aceptación por intervención.
Accommodation bill.	Pagaré, ó letra de acomodación.
Account.	Cuenta.
Account, as per — rendered.	Según cuenta pasada.
Account, cash.	Cuenta de caja.
Account, correct.	Cuenta cabal ó exacta.
Account, final.	Finiquito.
Account, fixtures.	Cuenta de muebles fijos.
Account, on — and risk of . . .	Por cuenta y riesgo de. . .
Account, on — of whom it may concern.	Por cuenta de quien corresponda.
Account, on joint.	Por cuenta y mitad, de cuenta en participación.
Account, open.	Cuenta abierta.
Account, outstanding.	Cuenta pendiente.

- Account, overdrawn.
- Account, profit and loss.
- Account, rent.
- Account, statement of.
- Account, to close an.
- Account, to make out an.
- Account, to remain for — of . . .
- Account, to render an.
- Account, to settle an.

- Account, wages.
- Account-current.
- Account of charges.
- Account sales.
- Account (Stock Exchange).
- Accountant.
- Accountant in bankruptcy.
- Accounting day.
- Active bonds.

- Active partner.
- Acts of God.
- Actuary (of life assurance company).
- *Ad valorem*.
- Adjustment, marine insurance.
- Admeasurement, of tonnage.
- Advance.
- Advance, in blank, uncovered.
- Advance, on warrants.
- Advance in price.
- Advance notes.

- Advice, letter of.
- Affidavit.
- Agenda.
- Agent.
- Agio.
- Allocation of shares.
- Allotment.

- Allowance.
- Allowance for damages.
- Annuity, deferred.
- Annuity, life, contingent.
- Antedate, to.
- Cuenta en descubierto.
- Cuenta de ganancias y pérdidas.
- Cuenta de alquileres.
- Estado, ó resúmen, de cuentas.
- Cerrar una cuenta.
- Estender, hacer una cuenta.
- Quedar por cuenta de. . . .
- Pasar, ó rendir, una cuenta.
- Saldar, liquidar, arreglar una cuenta.
- Cuenta de salarios.
- Cuenta corriente.
- Cuenta de gastos.
- Cuenta de venta.
- Liquidación.
- Tenedor de libros, contador.
- Síndico de quiebras.
- Día de ajuste, ó arreglo de cuentas.
- Cédulas, Acciones, Seguridades, Títulos al portador.
- Socio.
- Actos de Dios (in Bills of Lading).
- Actuario de una compañía de seguros de vida.
- Derecho ad valorem, por avalúo.
- Ajuste, arreglo.
- Cabida, dimensión.
- Anticipo, adelanto.
- Anticipo en descubierto.
- Anticipo sobre títulos.
- Subida de precio.
- Vales de adelantos. (Seamen's wages, &c.)
- Carta de aviso.
- Declaración jurada.
- Minutas, agenda de escritorio.
- Agente, comisionista.
- Agio, agiotaje, cambio.
- Repartimiento de acciones.
- Asignación, distribución, repartición.
- Abono, concesión, descuento, rebaja.
- Indemnización por averías.
- Renta diferida.
- Renta vitalicia, renta anual.
- Ante-fechar.

Appendix.	Apéndice, el.
Appraiser.	Tasador, avaluador, aforador, apreciador.
Arbitration.	Arbitración.
Arbitration, court of.	Tribunal de Árbitros.
Arrears.	Atrasos.
Arrivals, of goods, &c.	Arribos.
As per B/L herewith	Según conocimiento adjunto.
Assay.	Ensayo, aquilitación, exámen analítico.
Assay master.	Fiel contraste. Contraste principal.
Assess, to — at.	Avaluar en.
Assets.	Activo.
Assets and debts.	Activo y pasivo, estado de los bienes.
Assortment.	Surtido.
Attachment.	Embargo.
Attending, watching cargo.	Vigilar la carga de un buque.
Attorney.	Procurador.
Attorney, general.	Apoderado.
Attorney, power of.	Poder; procuración.
Auction.	Remate, almoneda, subasta, venta pública.
Auctioneer.	Vendutero, pregonero.
Auctioneer's fees.	Derechos, ó gastos de remate.
Audience room.	Sala de audiencia.
Audit, to.	Revisar, revisar cuentas, comprobar cuentas.
Auditor.	Revisor de cuentas, contador.
Average, exempt or free from.	Libre de avería.
Average, general or gross.	Avería común ó gruesa.
Average, particular or simple.	Avería simple, particular.
Average, standard.	Muestra, término medio, promedio.
Average adjuster.	Arreglador, ó repartidor, de averías.
Average bond.	Vale de averías.
Average deposit.	Depósito por averías.
Average duties.	Derechos de avería.
Average (of insurance).	Avería.
Average price.	Precio medio.
Average produce.	Producto medio.
Average proportion.	Proporción media.
Average quality.	Calidad mediana.
Average statement.	Estado de averías.
Average weight.	Peso aproximado, termino medio del peso.
Back, of a cheque, bill, &c.	Dorso.

Back, the back of documents.

Backed note, permit to mate to
accept certain cargo.

Bail.

Bailiff.

Balance sheet.

Bale.

Bale, pressed.

Bale, to.

Bale of 24 reams.

Bale of paper.

Ballast.

Bank, branch.

Bank, deposit.

Bank, joint-stock.

Bank, savings.

Bank bill.

Bank book.

Bank note.

Bank of issue.

Bank paper.

Bank post (paper).

Bank rate.

Bank returns.

Bankers' cheques.

Bankers' Clearing House.

Bankrupt.

Bankrupt, discharged.

Bankrupt, to declare anyone.

Bankrupt, undischarged.

Bankruptcy.

Bankruptcy, fraudulent.

Bankrupt's certificate.

Bankrupt's estate.

Bargain.

Bargain, a close.

Bargain, to make, to strike a.

Bargaining.

Barge.

Barge, coal.

Barratry.

Barrel,

El respaldo, ó la vuelta, de un
documento.

Guia.

Fianza, fiador.

Aguacil del juzgado.

Balancete ó balance.

Bala, paca, bulto, fardo.

Paca prensada.

Embalar, empaquetar.

Balote de papel.

Bala de papel, contiene diez
resmas.

Lastre.

Sucursal de un banco.

Banco de depósitos.

Sociedad Bancaria Anónima.

Caja de ahorros.

Letra de cambio.

Libreta de banco.

Billete de banco.

Banco de emisión.

Valores de banco.

Papel de cartas de 583 X 425 mil.

Tipo bancario.

Estado del banco.

Taleros bancarios.

Contador de Liquidaciones Ban-
carias.

Quebrado, fallido.

Un rehabilitado en quiebra.

Declarar á uno en estado de
quiebra.

Un quebrado.

Bancarota, quiebra.

Bancarota, ó quiebra, fraudulenta.

Espera, concordato, arreglo.

Activo de un quebrado.

Contrato, ajuste, compra, pacto,
ganga, chiripa.

Una venta difícil.

Cerrar un contrato.

Compra, regateo.

Falúa, gabarra, alijador.

Barca carbonera.

Baratería (marine insurance).

Barril, barrica, pipa, bota, tonel,

Barrel, beer.	Barril de cerveza de 36 galones, equiv. á 136 litros 224 m/m.
Barrel bulk, shipping.	Porte de un buque en barriles de á 5 piés cúb ú 8 por tonelada.
Barrows.	Angarillas.
Barter.	Trueque, cambio, permuta, tráfico.
Barterer.	Baratista, baratero.
Bear, a (i.e. one who operates to depreciate the price of stock).	Un bajista.
Berth (a situation).	Colocación, empleo.
Berth, of a ship at anchor.	Borneadero.
Berth, to be on.	Estar á la carga.
Bid, to.	Pujar, postura, en pública subasta.
Bidder.	Postor.
Bidder, the highest.	El mejor postor.
Bill, accommodation.	Pagaré de acomodación, de diferencia.
Bill, clean (marine).	Patente limpia.
Bill, dishonoured.	Letra no aceptada, ó no pagada, á su vencimiento.
Bill, due.	Letra vencida.
Bill, endorsed.	Letra endosada.
Bill, exchequer.	Libranza de la tesorería.
Bill, payable at sight.	Letra á la vista.
Bill, payable on demand.	Letra á presentación.
Bill, payable to order.	Letra á la orden.
Bill, short-dated.	Letra á plazo corto.
Bill, to draw a — on . . .	Girar un letra contra . . .
Bill, to endorse a.	Endosar un letra.
Bill, to renew a.	Renovar un letra.
Bill broker.	Agiotista, corredor de cambio.
Bill-head.	Encabezamiento de factura.
Bill of exchange.	Letra de cambio.
Bill of exchange returned.	Letra protestada.
Bill of fare.	Lista de platos, cubiertos.
Bill of health.	Patente de sanidad.
Bill of lading.	Conocimiento.
Bill of parcels.	Factura.
Bill of sale.	Documento de venta.
Bill stamp.	Timbre de letras, de pagarés.
Bills in hand.	Letras en cartera.
Bills payable.	Letras á pagar.
Bills payable to bearer.	Letras al portador.
Bills receivable.	Letras á cobrar.
Board, free on. f.o.b.	Entregado á bordo libre de gastos. f.á.b.
Board of Admiralty.	Consejo de almirantazgo.

Board of health.	Junta de sanidad.
Board of Trade.	Junta de comercio.
Board of trustees.	Junta directiva.
Board of underwriters.	Consejo de aseguradores.
<i>Bona-fide</i> (in good faith).	De buena fé.
Bond, government.	Bono del tesoro.
Bond, in.	Poner en deposito de aduana, cap- tivo de derechos.
Bond creditor.	Acreeedor por una obligación, bono ó título.
Bond-holder.	Tenedor de obligaciones.
Bond paper.	Papel para imprimir títulos de renta.
Bonds, customs.	Cédula de aduana.
Bonds, scrip.	Cédulas.
Book, bank.	Libreta de banco.
Book, cash.	Libro de caja.
Book, cheque.	Libro de cheques, libro talonario.
Book, copying.	Copiador de cartas.
Book, day.	Diario.
Book, invoice.	Libro de facturas.
Book, letter.	Copiador.
Book, log.	Cuaderno de bitácora.
Book, memorandum.	Libro de memorias.
Book, pocket.	Cartera, portamonedas.
Book, to enter in a.	Asentar en los libros.
Book, waste.	Borrador.
Book account.	Libro de cuentas corrientes.
Book debts.	Débitos.
Book folder (textiles).	Plegador, doblar en libreta.
Book in boards.	Libro encartonado.
Book of entries.	Libro de asientos.
Bookkeeper.	Tenedor de libros.
Bookkeeping.	Teneduría de libros.
Bookkeeping by double entry.	Teneduría de libros por partida doble.
Bookkeeping by single entry.	Teneduría de libros por partida simple.
Bottomry Bond.	Préstamo á la gruesa, sobre el casco y quilla.
Bound for . . .	Con destino á . . .
Bound homeward.	En viaje de vuelta.
Bound out and home.	En viaje de ida y vuelta.
Bounties.	Bonificaciones.
Box.	Caja, cajita, cajón, cofre.
Box, balaam.	Cesto para papeles inútiles.
Box, ballot.	Urna electoral.

Box, hat.	Sombrerera.
Box, letter.	Caja de correspondencia.
Box, post office.	Apartado de correos.
Box the compass, to	Cuartear.
Brand.	Marca de fábrica.
Breadth.	Ancho, anchura.
Breakage.	Fractura, rotura.
Breakage, free of.	Libre de rotura.
Brief, of a lawyer.	Memorial.
Brief, of court summons.	Citación.
Broker.	Corredor.
Broker, bill.	Corredor de letras.
Broker, custom house.	Corredor de aduanas.
Broker, exchange.	Corredor de cambios, agiotista.
Broker, insurance.	Corredor de seguros.
Broker, licensed.	Corredor de número.
Broker, pawn.	Prestamista sobre prendas, prendero.
Broker, real estate.	Corredor de bienes raíces.
Broker, ship.	Corredor de buques.
Broker, stock.	Corredor de acciones.
Broker, street (curbstone).	Corredor intruso.
Broker, sugar.	Corredor de azúcar.
Budget.	Presupuesto.
Bulk, in.	A granel.
Bulk, of the ship.	Desplazamiento ó capacidad de un buque, carga.
Bulk, to sell by the.	Vender por bulto, caja, paca, &c.
Bullion.	Oro ó plata en pasta, barras, &c.
Bundle.	Atado, lio.
Burden.	Capacidad, tonelage, carga, peso.
Burden of a ship.	Arqueo de un buque, arrufo, medida.
Bushel, imperial.	Medida de áridos, el imperial bushel inglés equivale á 36,34706 litros, el americano á 35 litros.
Bushel, measure.	Fanega.
Cable, a.	Cable, cablegrama.
Cable, telo-dynamic.	Cable telo-dinámico.
Cable, to.	Telegrafiar.
Calendering, of cloths.	Cilindrar.
Call, a port of.	Un puerto de escala.
Call, on shares.	Citación, pagar por prestaciones.
Call (Stock Exchange), i.e. the right to buy at fixed price.	Derecho de compra, bolsa.
Calling at . . .	Con escalas en . . .
Cancel, to.	Cancelar, anular, inutilizar.

Carat.	Quilate, grado de pureza del oro.
Card, show.	Targeta muestraria.
Cargo.	Carga.
Carting.	Acarreo, conducción.
Case, dressing.	Neceser, tocador.
Case, glass.	Vidriera, mostruario.
Case, iron-banded.	Caja con fajas, ó arcos de hierro.
Case, packing.	Caja de embalar, envase.
Case, paper.	Papelera.
Case, skeleton.	Caja jaula.
Case, tin-lined.	Caja forrada de hoja de lata.
Cash.	Caja, numerario.
Cash, make up the.	Hacer el balance de caja.
Cash, petty.	Gastos menores de caja.
Cash, ready.	Pagos al contado.
Cash, short of.	Escaso de fondos, apurado.
Cash credit.	Crédito en efectivo, en metálico.
Cash on hand.	Efectivo en caja.
Cash payment.	Pago al contado.
Cashier.	Cajero.
Casting vote.	Voto decisivo, de decisión.
Cellarage.	Bodegas.
Chamber of Commerce.	Cámara de Comercio.
Charter, to.	Fletar un buque.
Charter party.	Contrata de fletamento.
Cheque.	Cheque.
Cheque-book.	Talonnario de cheques.
Chief.	Jefe, principal, superior.
Chief workman.	Capataz.
Cipher.	Cifrado, numeración.
Cipher key.	Clave de cifras.
Clean bill of health.	Patente de sanidad limpia.
Clear a vessel, to.	Despachar un buque.
Clear goods for shipment, to.	Despachar mercancías para su embarque.
Clearance, customs.	Despacho de aduana.
Clerk.	Dependiente, empleado.
Clerkship.	Plaza de dependiente.
Clipper ship.	Barco velero.
Closing prices.	Precios finales (de cerrar ó de última hora).
Coaster, coasting ship.	Buque costero, cabotero.
Coasting trade.	Cabotage.
Commission.	Comisión.
Commission agents.	Agentes en comisión.
Commission merchant.	Comisionista.
Committee of inspection.	Comité de averiguación.

Company, banking.	Compañía de banco, casa bancaria.
Company, chartered.	Sociedad incorporada.
Company, fire insurance.	Compañía de seguros contra incendios.
Company, insurance.	Compañía de seguros.
Company, joint-stock.	Sociedad por acciones.
Company, life insurance.	Compañía de seguros sobre la vida.
Company, limited.	Compañía anónima, ó en comandita.
Company, marine insurance.	Compañía de seguros marítimo.
Company, trading, mercantile, commercial.	Sociedad mercantil.
Condition, in good.	Bien acondicionado (a ; os, as).
Consignee.	Consignatario.
Consignment.	Consignación.
Consignment, to the — of.	A la consignación de . . .
Consignment note.	Notas de consignación.
Consolidated annuities.	Rentas consolidadas.
Consols.	Consolidados, deuda consolidada.
Consul.	Cónsul.
Consular dues, fees.	Derechos cónsulares, consulaje.
Consular invoices.	Facturas cónsulares.
Consulate.	Consulado.
Consul general.	Cónsul general.
Consul, vice.	Vice cónsul.
Consumable goods.	Géneros, ó efectos, de consumo.
Consumer.	Comprador, consumidor.
Consumption.	Consumo.
Contango (Stock Exchange).	Reporte.
Contra account.	Contra cuenta.
Contract note.	Nota de contrato.
Contract note (broker's).	Nota de corretaje.
Conveyance to docks.	Conducción á los diques.
Cooperage.	Tonelería.
Copy, true.	Copia fiel.
Copyright.	Derechos de autor, título de propiedad literaria.
Cordage.	Cordaze, cordelería, jarcia, cabullería de labor.
Cost, freight, and insurance. c.f.i., c.i.f.	Coste, flete y seguro. c.f.s.
Counting.	Cálculo, cuenta, cómputo, enumeración.
Counting house.	Despacho, escritorio, oficina de negocios.
Crate.	Huacal, cestón, banasto, cuébano.
Credit, blank.	Crédito en blanco.

Credit, doubtful.	Crédito dudoso.
Credit, good, well-established.	Reputación, crédito seguro.
Credit, letter of.	Carta de crédito.
Credit, on long.	A plazo largo.
Credit, on short.	A plazo corto.
Credit, opened.	Letra abierta.
Credit, pass to the — of . . .	Pasar al crédito de . . .
Credit, public.	Crédito público.
Credit, to buy, to sell on —.	Comprar, vender al fiado, al crédito.
Credit, to give.	Abrir crédito.
Credit note.	Nota de crédito.
Credited.	Acreditado, abonado en cuenta, pasado al haber.
Creditor.	Acreeedor.
Creditor, bond.	Acreeedor por una obligación, bono ó título.
Creditor, compound with one's —.	Arreglarse con los acreedores.
Creditor, to call together one's —'s.	Convocar á los acreedores.
Currency.	Moneda legal.
Custom, free of.	Libre de derechos.
Custom-house bond.	Fianza de aduana.
Custom-house broker.	Corredor de aduanas.
Custom-house dues, inwards.	Derechos de entrada ó importación.
Custom-house dues, outwards.	Derechos de salida ó exportación.
Custom-house duties.	Derechos de aduana.
Custom-house entry.	Entrada de aduana.
Custom-house lines.	Línea aduanera.
Custom-house regulations.	Reglamento de aduanas.
Custom-house warehouse.	Almacenes de depósito de la aduana.
Customer.	Parroquiano, cliente.
Customs and excise duties.	Derechos de aduana y impuestos de consumo.
Customs declaration.	Declaración de aduana.
Customs tariff.	Arancel aduanero.
Damage, -d.	Avería, averiado.
Damage, to pay.	Pagar daños y perjuicios.
Damage, to sustain.	Averiarse.
Day book.	Diario.
Days of grace.	Días de gracia, de cortesía.
Dead weight.	Peso muerto, peso inerte, carga pesada.
Debentures.	Obligaciones hipotecarias.
Debt.	Deuda.
Deck, shipped on.	Embarcado sobre cubierta.
Deck, shipped under.	Embarcado bajo cubierta, en la bodega.

Declare, to — goods.	Manifiestar mercancías.
Deed.	Acta, título.
Defendant (law).	Demandado (civil), acusado (criminal).
Deferred annuity.	Renta diferida.
Deferred bonds.	Obligaciones, títulos diferidos.
Deferred stocks.	Acciones diferidas.
Delcredere.	Comisión del credere.
Delivery book.	Libro de entregas.
Delivery order.	Orden de entrega. [pagar.
Demand, on — pay . . .	A vista, ó á presentación, sírvase
Demand draft.	Letra á la vista, á presentación.
Demijohn.	Damajuana.
Demurrage.	Estadías.
Demurrer, law.	Excepción perentoria.
Depositor.	Depositante.
Derelict.	Buque abandonado.
Despatch note.	Nota de expedición.
Devisee.	Legado.
Devisor.	Testador.
Directorate.	Directorio, junta de directores.
Discharge, attending to.	Vigilar la descarga.
Discharge, of steamers, &c.	Descarga.
Discounting bills.	Descontar letras.
Dishonour a bill.	No pagar una letra.
Dissolution of partnership.	Disolución de sociedad.
Distrain, to.	Embargar.
Distrain.	Embargo.
Distress.	Peligro.
Dividend.	Dividendo.
Dock, dry.	Dique seco, de carena.
Dock, floating.	Dique flotante.
Dock, graving.	Astillero, dique para limpiar fondos de buques.
Dock, slip.	Dique de fondo inclinado.
Dock, wet.	Dique de marea, dársena.
Dockets.	Estractos, talones.
Dockyards, commercial.	Diques.
Dockyards, naval.	Arsenales.
Draft, bill.	Libranza, giro, letra.
Draft, depth of ship's water.	Calado.
Draw up (to — — a claim, an invoice, a B/L, &c.).	Formalizar una reclamación, extender una factura, un conocimiento, &c.
Drawback.	Pubaja, devolución de derechos por reexportación.
Drawee.	Girado, aceptador, librado, sacado.

Drawer.	Girador, librador.
Drum.	Tambor.
Drum, coffee.	Tambor de tostar café.
Dry goods.	Mercería.
Dry rubber.	Encerado de suelos.
Dry wine.	Vino seco.
Dues, customs.	Derechos de aduana.
Dues, dock.	Derechos de dique.
Dues, harbour.	Derechos de puerto.
Dues, lighthouse.	Derechos de faro.
Dues, town.	Derechos municipales.
Dues, wharf.	Derechos de muelle.
Earnest money, to clinch a bargain, &c., with.	Señal, anticipo, arras.
Embargo.	Embargo.
Embargo, to lay an —.	Embargar un buque.
Endorse, to — a bill, &c.	Endosar una letra de cambio.
Endorsement, of a bill.	Endose, ratificación, &c., de una letra.
Endorser, of a bill.	Endosante.
Entry, book of entries.	Libro de entradas.
Entry, bookkeeping.	Partida.
Entry, customs, &c.	Entrada ó declaración de aduana.
Entry forms.	Hojas de entrada.
Errors and omissions excepted (E. and O. E.).	Salvo error ú omisión (S. E. U. O.).
Estate, bankrupt's.	Activo de un quebrado.
Estate, landed.	Tierras, propiedades, fincas.
Estate, of a firm.	El activo y pasivo de una razón social.
Estate, personal.	Bienes muebles.
Estate, property in general of a person.	Bienes.
Estate, real.	Bienes raíces.
Estimate.	Presupuesto, avalúo.
Estimation.	Avalúo, tasación.
Estimation, at random.	Cálculo á ojo.
Ex quay.	Puesto en el muelle.
Ex railway station.	Puesto ó entregado, en la estación; en el ferrocarril.
Ex ship.	Al costado del buque, á bordo.
Ex warehouse.	En almacén.
Exchange, a building.	Bolsa, lonja.
Exchange, bill of.	Letra de cambio.
Exchange, rate of.	Tipo del cambio, curso de la bolsa.
Exchanges, list of.	Cotización de cambios.
Exchequer bills.	Pagará del Tesoro Nacional.

Exchequer bonds.	Bonos ó obligaciones del Tesoro Nacional.
Excise, on eatables and liquors.	Sisa, impuestos de consumo.
Expenditure.	Gastos, desembolsos, consumo.
Export trade.	Comercio de exportación.
Exporter.	Exportador.
Exports.	Exportaciones.
Extract, a true copy, of records, &c.	Extracto, copia verdadera.
Face value.	Valor nominal.
f.a.s., free alongside ship.	Libre al costado del buque, entrega al costado.
Fathom.	Braza, medida de seis piés de longitud.
Fathom, to (marine).	Sondear.
Fees, commerce, &c.	Honorarios, gratificaciones, cuotas.
Fiduciary loan.	Préstamo fiduciario.
Fiduciary note issue.	Emisión fiduciera.
Finance.	Hacienda pública, financia.
Financier.	Financiero, hacendista, banquero.
Fire policy.	Póliza de seguro contra incendios.
Firm, a business.	<u>Casa, razón social.</u>
Fold, to.	Doblar, plegar, replegar.
Folds.	Dobleces.
Foolscap, paper.	Papel rayado de 43 X 35 centímetros.
Foot.	Pié, medida equivalente á 0.30479 m.
For account (Stock Exchange).	Á plazos.
Fore and aft (marine).	De popa á proa.
Foreclose, to (law).	Excluir.
Foreclosure (law).	Exclusión.
Fore-deck (marine).	Cubierta de proa.
Fore-hatchway (marine).	Escotilla del pañol de los cables.
Forgery.	Falsificación.
Forwarding.	Expedición, envío.
Foul bill, of health.	Patente bruta.
Free, carriage.	Libre de porte.
Free, cost.	Libre de gastos.
Free at house (delivered).	Franco á domicilio.
Free of average.	Franco de avería.
Free on board (f.o.b.).	Puesto á bordo, franco á bordo (f.á.b.).
Free trade.	Libertad de comercio, libre cambio.
Free trader.	Libre cambista.
Freehold property.	Propiedad libre de carga.

Freight, dead.	Carga, peso muerto, que no paga.
Freight, outwards.	Flete de ida.
Freight, through.	Flete corrido.
Freight home.	Flete de vuelta.
Freight note.	Nota de flete.
Freight out and home.	Flete por viaje redondo, ida y vuelta.
Funds, consols.	Caudal.
Funds, government borrowings.	Fondos públicos.
Funds, investments at interest.	Fondos.
Funds, stock or capital.	Capital.
Garnishee (law).	Secuestro.
Gauge.	Medida, velta, pitómetro, calibre.
Gauging.	Medir, aforar, arquear.
Gauging, of a ship.	Arqueaje de un buque.
Gauging calliper.	Cartabon.
Gauging rod.	Aforador, vara de aforar, ó de arquear.
General average.	Avería general.
Greenback.	Billete de banco americano.
Green ware.	Loza cruda.
Gross.	Gruesa, doce docenas.
Gross amount.	Suma total.
Gross average.	Avería gruesa.
Gross produce.	Producto bruto.
Gross profit.	Beneficio bruto.
Gross weight.	Peso bruto.
Ground-plot.	Solar, lote de tierra.
Ground-rent.	Renta del terreno, renta enfeudada.
Groundage (marine).	Derechos de fondeo, derechos de puerto.
Grounding (marine).	Barada, encallada.
Guarantee fund.	Fondos de reserva.
Guarantor.	Garante fiador.
Guild.	Gremio.
Guild-hall.	Casa de ayuntamiento, ó de consejo, casa consistorial.
Haberdasher.	Mercero.
Haberdashery.	Mercería.
Hall-mark.	Marca del gremio.
Harbour.	Puerto.
Harbour dues.	Derechos de puerto.
Harbour master.	Capitán de puerto.
Haven.	Abra, abrigo, puerto seguro, fondeadero.
High seas.	Altas mares.
Hire.	Alquilado.

Hire-purchase system.
Hold, after (aft).
Hold, fore.
Hold, height of the hold.
Hold, to stow the.
Hold, to trim the.
Holder, bond.

Holder, share.
Home consumption.
Horse-power, h.p.
Hull, hulk of a ship.
Hundredweight.

Hypothecate, to.
Hypothecation, contract of.
Impersonal accounts.
Imports.
Imposts.
Inch.
Incidental expenses.
Included, it is — in the price.
Income.
Indent, order.
Indenture.
Indenture, ship's.
Index.
Ingot.
Ingot, of native gold.
Inland bill.
Insolvent.
Insurance.
Insurance, fire.
Insurance, life.
Insurance, mutual.
Insurance, sea.
Insurance policy.
Insurance premium.
Interest, balance of.
Interest, compound.
Interest, controlling.
Interest, place at.
Interest, rate of.
Invoice, consignment.
Invoice, consular.
Invoice, pro-forma.
Invoice, ship's.

Sistema de compras á plazos.
Bodéga de popa.
Bodéga de proa.
Puntal de la bodéga.
Estivar la bodéga.
Abarrotar la bodéga.
Obligacionista, tenedor de obligaciones.
Accionista.
Consumo del pais.
Fuerza de caballos.
Casco de un buque.
Peso inglés de 112 libras, avoirdupois equivalent a á 50.80 kilos.
Hipotecar.
Contrato hipotecario.
Cuentas ficticias.
Importaciones.
Impuestos.
Pulgada, igual á 2.54 centímetros.
Imprevistos.
Está comprendido en el precio.
Renta, réditos.
Pedido, órden.
Contrato de aprendizaje.
Carta-partida.
Indice.
Lingote, barra de metal, tejo.
Palacra, palacrana, pepita.
Cambial sobre el pais.
Quebrado, insolvente.
Seguro.
Seguro contra incendios.
Seguro de vida.
Seguro mútuo.
Seguro marítimo.
Póliza de seguro.
Premio de seguro.
Saldo de intereses.
Interes compuesto.
Interes superior, mayoría.
Colocar á rédito, á interes.
Tipo de interes.
Factura de consignación.
Factura consular.
Factura simulada.
Conocimiento.

I.O.U.	Vale, pagaré.
Jetsam, jettison.	Lo echado ó arrojado á la mar.
Jetty.	Dique, malecon, muelle.
Jobbers, stock.	Agiotistas.
Joint account.	Cuenta á mitad.
Joint stock.	Capital social.
Joint-stock bank.	Banca anónima.
Joint-stock companies.	Sociedades anónimas.
Journal, day-book.	Diario.
Judge's order.	Orden judicial.
Jury.	Jurado.
Keel.	Quilla.
Keelage.	Quillaje, derechos de quilla.
Keelson.	Sobrequilla.
Keg.	Cuñete.
Kilderkin.	Media barrica, contiene 18 galones.
"Kite" (i.e. accommodation bill).	Giro de acomodación.
Knot (a nautical mile of $\frac{1}{60}$ of a degree = 2208 yd.).	Nudo, una milla náutica de $\frac{1}{60}$ de un grado = 2208 yardas.
Land, arable.	Terrazgo, tierra cultivable.
Land, bog.	Tierra pantanosa.
Land, fruitful.	Tierra fértil.
Land, grass.	Pradera.
Land, gravelly.	Cascajal.
Land, high.	Pais montañoso, tierra alta.
Land, low.	Tierra baja.
Land, made.	Terreno de rellenos.
Land, naked.	Barbecho.
Land, neck of.	Istmo.
Land, pasture.	Pastos.
Land, set landmarks.	Amojonar, aparear, deslíndar.
Land, unappropriated.	Terreno baldío.
Land, unirrigated.	Terreno seco.
Land, unploughed.	Erial.
Land measure.	Medida agraria.
Land measurer.	Agrimensor.
Land tax.	Contribución territorial.
Land telescope.	Telescopio terrestre.
Landing.	Desembarco.
Landing certificate.	Certificado de descarga.
Landing order.	Orden de desembarco.
Landing place.	Atracadero, desembarcadero.
Landmarks.	Linde, lindero, mojon, hito, linderos.
Leakage.	Merma.
Lease.	Arriendo.
Leasehold.	Arrendato.

Ledger.	Libro mayor.
Legacy.	Legado.
Length, 2 yd. in.	Dos yardas de tiro.
Length.	Largo.
Less commission.	Á deducir comisión.
Letter, scrip.	Plumilla.
Letter, stencil.	Letras caladas, letras para estarcir.
Letter of advice.	Carta de aviso.
Letter of credit.	Carta de crédito.
Letter of indemnity.	Garantía de pérdida.
Letter of introduction.	Carta de recomendación.
Letter of marque.	Patente de corso.
Letters, prepaid.	Cartas franqueadas.
Letters, registered.	Cartas certificadas.
Letters patent.	Patente, título de privilegio.
Liabilities, assets and liabilities.	Activo y pasivo.
Lighter.	Gabarra, chata de alijar, lanchon.
Lighterage.	Alijo, arrimaje.
Limited company.	Sociedad anónima, sociedad en comandita.
Lined.	Forrado.
Loading.	Embarque.
Loan.	Préstamo.
Lockout, by masters against workmen.	Cierre de talleres contra los obreros.
Logbook.	Cuaderno de vitacora, diario de navegación.
Lot, job.	Mercancías variadas.
Lot money.	Comisión de pregonero.
Lots.	Lotes, partidas.
Lotting, for auction, &c.	Poner en lotes.
Lumber.	Madera.
Lumberers.	Leñeros.
Lumbering.	Corte de arbolaje.
Mail.	Mala.
Mail day.	Día de mala.
Making out B/L.	Estender el conocimiento.
Making-up textiles.	Doblar textíles.
Manifest, ship's.	Manifiesto de buque.
Market, money.	Mercado financiero.
Market price.	Precio de mercado.
Market rate.	Tipo del mercado.
Master, domestic employer.	Amo.
Master, employer; of an office, works, &c.	Patrón.
Master, fencing.	Maestro de esgrima.
Master, harbour.	Capitán de puerto.

Master, ship's.	Capitán.
Master builder.	Constructor, arquitecto.
Master mason.	Maestro albañil, alarife.
Master spring.	Muelle real, resorte principal.
Masterpiece.	Obra maestra, pieza principal.
Mature, to, of bills.	Vencimiento de una letra.
Measuring, to measure.	Aforar.
Meterage.	Metrage.
Metre.	Metro. 39.570 pulgadas inglesas.
Metric system.	Sistema métrico.
Middlemen.	Intermediarios, comisionistas.
Mileage.	Derechos de cadena.
Mint.	Casa de moneda.
Minute book.	Libro de minutas.
Money changers.	Cambistas.
Money market.	Bolsa.
Money orders, postal.	Vales de correo.
Monopoly.	Monopolio.
Monthly allowance.	Mesada.
Mortgage.	Hipoteca.
National debt.	Deuda pública.
Need, in case of.	En caso necesario.
Negotiable documents.	Documentos negociables.
Negotiable paper.	Papel negociable.
Nett balance.	Saldo neto.
Nett proceeds.	Producto líquido.
Nett weight.	Peso neto.
Nominal.	Nominal.
Nominee.	Persona nombrada, nominatario.
Nonsuit (law).	Deserción de causa ó pleito.
Notarial charges.	Gastos de notario.
Notary public.	Notario público.
Note, promissory.	Vale, pagaré.
Note, to — a bill.	Anotar una libraza.
Note, treasury.	Billete del tesoro.
Notebook.	Libro de notas, agenda.
Note-paper.	Papel de escribir de 12 x 8 pulgadas.
Official notice.	Notificación oficial.
Official receiver.	Síndico.
On demand.	Á la vista, á presentación.
Ordinary shares.	Acciones ordinarias.
Ordinary stocks.	Valores ó obligaciones ordinarias.
Origin, English.	Procedencia inglesa.
Outstanding accounts.	Cuentas abiertas.
Overtime.	Deshoras.
Overweight.	Exceso de peso, buen peso.
Packed in barrels.	Embalado en barriles.

Packed in straw.
 Packing.
 Packthread.
 Paid-up capital.
 Paid-up shares.
 Paper, cambric.
 Paper, carbon.
 Paper, card.
 Paper, check folio.
 Paper, parchment.
 Paper bag.
 Paper clip.
 Paper currency.
 Paper shavings.
 Paper trade.
 Par, at.
 Parcel post.
 Partner.
 Partnership, sleeping.
 Passport.
 Passport, to endorse a.
 Patentee.
 Pattern.
 Pattern, cardbook.
 Payee, of a bill, cheque, &c.
 Payee, receiver.
 Paying-in slip, banks.
 Percentage.
 Perils, sea insurance.
 Personality, estate, property.
 Petty-cash book.
 Phial.
 Pilot.
 Piracy.
 Plaint.
 Plaintiff.
 Plant, engineering.

Plant, rolling.
 Pleadings.
 Portage.
 Portland cement.
 Postdate.
 Preference shares.
 Preferential stock.
 Premium.

Embalado de paja.
 Embalaje, envase.
 Guita, bramante.
 Capital pagado ó cancelado.
 Acciones liberadas.
 Papel de seda.
 Papel de carbon.
 Papel marquilla.
 Papel de 17 X 24 pulgadas.
 Papel de pergamino.
 Cartucho, saco de papel.
 Agarrados.
 Papel moneda.
 Recortes de papel.
 Comercio de papel.
 Al par.
 Encomienda postal, paquete postal.
 Socio.
 Socio comanditario.
 Pasaporte.
 Refrendar un pasaporte.
 Privilegiado, el poseedor de un privilegio ó patente.
 Modelo, dechado, muestra, patron.
 Muestrario.
 Portador.
 Cobrador.
 Vale.
 Tanto por ciento.
 Riesgos de mar, riesgos marítimos.
 Bienes muebles.
 Libro de gastos menores.
 Pomo, redoma, redomilla.
 Práctico.
 Piratería.
 Pleito, demanda.
 Demandante.
 Instalación, planteaje, asentar ó instalar una máquina.
 Material rodante.
 Actuaciones.
 Porte.
 Cimento de Portland.
 Posdatas.
 Acciones de prioridad.
 Acciones privilegiadas.
 Premio, interes, prima.

Premium, bottomry.
 Premium, of insurance.
 Premium, return.
 Prepaid.
 Present worth.
 Prices current.
 Primage.
 Prime cost.
 Principal, head of a firm.
 Principal, money.
 Private companies.
 Probate.
 Produce.

Produce, colonial.
 Produce, daily.
 Produce, farm.
 Produce, home.
 Produce, nett.
 Proportion, in.
 Protest.
 Protest a bill.
 Proxy.
 Proxy, by.
 P.S., postscript.
 Put (Stock Exchange).
 Put to sea.

Qualified acceptance.

Quarantine.
 Quarterly.
 Quartern.

Quartz.
 Quartz, flexible.
 Quartz, gold.
 Quartz, hyaline.
 Quartz, milk.
 Quartz rock.
 Quire, of paper.

Quittance.
 Quotation of prices.
 Railway, centre rail.
 Railway, hydraulic.
 Railway, rope.

Prima del contrato á la gruesa.
 Prima, premio de seguros.
 Devolución de premios.
 Pagado de antemano, franqueado.
 Valor actual.
 Precios corrientes del mercado.
 Capa, regalo, prima.
 Precio de fábrica.
 Jefe.
 Capital.
 Asociación.
 Verificación testamentaria.
 Producto, rendimiento, géneros, efectos.
 Productos coloniales.
 Rendimiento diario.
 Productos agrícolas.
 Productos domésticos.
 Producto líquido.
 Á proporción.
 Protesto.
 Protestar una letra de cambio.
 Apoderado.
 Por poder.
 P.D., i.e. post data.
 Derecho de vender.
 Salir á la mar, hacerse á la vela, zarpar.
 Aceptación condicional ó especificada.
 Cuarentena.
 Trimestral.
 Medida de líquidos, pan de cuatro libras.
 Cuarzo.
 Itacolumita, cuarzo flexible.
 Cuarzo aurífero.
 Cuarzo hialino.
 Cuarzo lechoso.
 Cuarcita.
 Cuadernillo de papel de 24 pliegos, mano.
 Recibo.
 Cotización.
 Ferro-carril de Fell ó de riel central.
 Ferro-carril hidráulico.
 Ferro-carril de cable.

Railway, suspension.	Ferro-carril colgante.
Railway, underground.	Ferro-carril subterráneo.
Railway advice.	Aviso de ferro-carril.
Railway bond.	Bono de ferro-carril.
Railway brake.	Freno, retranca de ferro-carril.
Railway branch.	Ramal.
Railway buffer.	Tope de choques.
Railway guard.	Vigilante, guarda.
Railway plant.	Material del ferro-carril.
Railway platform.	Anden.
Railway siding, — switch.	Desviadero, apartadero en cuba, chucho.
Railway turntable, — turnplate.	Plataforma giratoria.
Raw materials.	Material bruto.
Real estate.	Bienes inmuebles.
Ream of paper.	Resma de papel.
Rebate.	Rebaja; deducción, descuento.
Receiving notes.	Notas de entrega.
Receiving order.	Sindicado de una quiebra.
Re-draw, a bill.	Reformar ó renovar un giro.
Referee.	Arbitro, arbitrador, compromi-sario.
Refund, to.	Reembolsar, reintegrar.
Release, to.	Libertar.
Remittance of funds.	Remesa de fondos.
Rent.	Alquiler.
Re-purchase.	Recompra.
Reserve funds.	Fondos de reserva.
Re-shipment.	Reembarque.
Rest (i.e. bank reserve).	Reserva de un banco.
Retailer.	Vendedor al pormenor.
Retainer, lawyer's fees.	Honorario, anticipo entregado á un abogado.
Retire a bill.	Retirar una libranza, pagar una anticipación.
Returns, income.	Ingresos.
Returns, of an official.	Estadística de entradas.
Returns, proceeds.	Productos.
Revenue.	Renta, rédito, rentas públicas, aduana.
Revenue account.	Cuenta del tesoro público.
Rider, to a document, state-ment, &c.	Anexo.
Ring, of speculators, &c.	Liga de especuladores.
Roadstead.	Rada, surgidero.
Royal letters patent.	Certificado de derecho de privilegio.
Royalty.	Derecho de privilegio de un autor.

Run, to — on a bank.

Salvage.

Sample.

Sample, as per.

Sample, to.

Sampling order.

Schedule.

Scrip.

Search warrant.

Searchers.

Seaworthy.

Securities.

Select, to.

Settlement.

Share, paid-up.

Share, personal.

Share, preference.

Share, to go —s.

Share certificate.

Share list.

Sharebrokers.

Shareholder.

Ship, water-logged.

Shipbroker.

Shipment.

Shipper.

Shipping bill, customs.

Shipping note.

Ship's articles.

Ship's clearance, inwards.

Ship's clearance, outwards.

Ship's papers.

Ship's protest, insurance.

Ship's registry.

Sinking funds.

Smuggling.

So-called.

Soft goods.

Sola of exchange.

Specification.

Spot cash.

Spot goods.

Spotless.

Spotted.

Retirar con pánico los depositos de un banco.

Salvamiento, derechos de salvamiento.

Muestra.

Conforme ó según muestra.

Sacar muestras.

Orden de sacar muestras.

Cédula.

Certificado de acciones.

Orden de revisión.

Revisadores.

Navegable.

Títulos, valores.

Escoger.

Arreglo.

Acción liberada.

Acción intransferible.

Acción privilegiada ó de preferencia.

Ir en partes.

Título de acción.

Cotización de acciones.

Bolsistas, corredor de acciones.

Accionista.

Barco anegado.

Corredor marítimo.

Embarque.

Exportador.

Nota de rebaja.

Vale de buque.

Articulos de la tripulación.

Despacho de aduana.

Despacho ó permiso de salida.

Documentación.

Protesta.

Abanderamiento.

Fondos de amortización.

Contrabando.

Llamado.

Lanas, algodones, tegidos, paños.

Sola de cambio, única de cambio.

Especificación.

Contado al entregar.

Géneros en plaza disponibles.

Puro, sin mancha alguna.

Manchado.

Spotted marble.	Mármol esquizado.
Spotty.	Manchado, moteado.
Stamp duty.	Derechos de timbre.
Stamp note, customs.	Permiso de cargar.
Standard, of timber.	Estandar, tocante á madera.
Statistics.	Estadística.
Stevedore.	Estivador.
Stiffening order.	Permiso de tomar lastre.
Stock in hand.	Existencia.
Stock-in-trade.	Fondos del comercio.
Stock lots.	Partidas existentes.
Stock on hand.	Géneros disponibles.
Stocktaking.	Inventario.
Strike clause.	Cláusula de huelga.
String-aloe, agave.	Bramante de pita, acarreto.
Styles, new; of patterns, &c.	Nuevos modelos.
Sublet, to.	Subalquilar.
Subpoena.	Citación.
Subsidy.	Subvención.
Sue, to.	Procesar, entablar juicio.
Supercargo.	Sobrecargo.
Superficial.	Superficial, somero.
Superficial contents.	Extensión superficial.
Superficial measure.	Medida superficial.
Superfine.	Superfino.
Superintend, to.	Dirigir, vigilar los trabajos.
Superintendent.	Superintendente.
Supervention.	Supervención.
Supple.	Flexible, plegable.
Suppress, to.	Omitir, suprimir.
Surety.	Fiador, garante, fianza.
Surface.	Superficie, cara, sobrehaz.
Surplus.	Demasía, exceso, sobra.
Survey.	Peritage.
Tally.	Talón de resguardo.
Tally trade.	Comercio temporal.
Tare.	Tara.
Tariff.	Tarifa, arancel.
Tarpaulin.	Encerado lienzo alquitranado.
Tasting order.	Orden de sacar muestras de prueba.
Teller (banking).	Cajero.
Tender, legal.	Moneda legal.
Tender, of a price for a contract.	Presupuesto, apuesta.
Term day (Stock Exchange).	Día de pago.
Terms of payment.	Condiciones de pago.
Thick; thickness.	Grueso.

Time bargain.	Mercado, venta ó compra á término.
Time policy.	Póliza á término.
Tonnage.	Tonelaje, porte, derecho de tonelaje.
Towage.	Remolcaje.
Trade, Board of Trade.	Junta de comercio.
Trade, coasting.	Cabotage.
Trade, foreign.	Comercio exterior, ó extranjero.
Trade, free.	Libre cambio.
Trade, home, inland.	Comercio interior.
Trade, maritime.	Comercio marítimo.
Trade mark.	Marca de fábrica.
Trade price.	Precio con rebaja ó descuento.
Trade union.	Sociedad obrera.
Traffic returns.	Estadística de tráfico.
Transfer day (Stock Exchange).	Día de registro de transferencias.
Transhipment.	Transbordo.
Treasury.	Ministerio de Hacienda.
Treasury bills.	Cédulas de Hacienda.
Truss.	Fardito.
Trust.	Union de fabricantes, sindicato, monopolio.
Trust deed.	Asignación, cesión de bienes.
Trustee.	Sindico.
Trustworthy.	Fidedigno.
Turnover.	Movimiento comercial.
Ullage; leakage.	Merma.
Umpire.	Arbitro.
Under protest.	Bajo protesta.
Underwriter.	Asegurador.
Usance.	Usanza.
Usufruct.	Usofructo.
Value received.	Valor recibido.
Venture.	Consignacion, pacotilla.
Verbatim.	Al pie de la letra.
Verification.	Comprobación, verificación.
Voucher.	Comprobante, talón.
Voyage policy.	Póliza de viaje.
Waste-book.	Borrador.
Way-bill.	Conocimiento, hoja de marcha.
Wear and tear.	Desgaste.
Weight, gross.	Peso bruto.
Weight, light.	Peso corto.
Weight, rough.	Peso aproximado.
Weight, standard.	Peso legal, peso patron.
Weight note.	Nota de peso.

Wet gilding.	Dorado al temple.
Wet goods.	Líquidos.
Wharf.	Muelle, cargadero, embarcadero.
Wharfage.	Muellaje, derechos de muelle.
Wharfinger.	Fiel de muelle, capataz.
Wicker-basket.	Cesta de mimbres.
Wicker-bottle flask.	Botella forrada de mimbres.
Wicker-work.	Cestería.
Winch.	Cabria, molinete, cigüeñal.
Without effect.	Anulado.
Witness.	Testigo.
Wrapping-paper.	Papel de envolver.
Yard.	Yarda, medida inglesa igual á 0.914383 metros.
Yeast.	Levadura, fermento.
Zinc.	Cinc ó zinc.
Zinc cement.	Cemento de zinc.
Zinc vitriol.	Sulfuro de zinc.
Zinc white.	Oxido de zinc, blanco de zinc.

COTTON, LINEN, SILK, WOOLLEN, ETC., GOODS

Alpaca.	Alpaca.
Alpaca, cloth.	Género de alpaca.
Alpaca, wool.	Lana de alpaca.
Alpaca, yarn.	Lana hilada de alpaca.
Angolas, printed cotton.	Dril de algodón de color.
Aprons.	Delantales, mandiles.
Back, the — of cloths, &c.	El revés de paños, &c., dorso.
Back, velvet.	Terciopelo de union.
Back cording.	Acordonado por el revés.
Bagging.	Tela para sacos.
Bagging, hemp.	Cañamazo para sacos, arpillera.
Bags, coffee.	Sacos hechos para café.
Baize, green.	Tapiz verde.
Baize, long-napped.	Bayeta de pella.
Baize, scarlet.	Bayeta de grana.
Baize, woollen.	Bayeta de lana.
Balls of thread.	Ovillos.
Band, elastic.	Afianzador de goma.
Bands, girths.	Ceñidores, fajas.
Beetled.	Aplastado.
Beetled twills, Silesias.	Lustrillo de algodón de color.
	Percalinas.
Bengals, linen blue.	Coleta de listas azules de hilo.
Bengals, union blue.	Coleta de listas azules, de hilo y algodón.

Binders.

Blacks, plain, prints.

Blankets, bedcovers.

Blankets, dyed or magenta.

Blankets, grey-blue shoddy.

Blankets, horse, with headpiece.

Blankets, woollen.

Blinds, venetian.

Blinds, window.

Blond, blonde lace.

Blonde, narrow lace.

Blouses.

Blouses, plain, or fancy, or lace-trimmed.

Blouses, trimmed.

Blouses, wool, cotton, silk, &c.

Bodices, slip.

Bolster.

Bombasine, cotton.

Bombazette.

Bookbinder's linen, muslin.

Bookbinder's pressed cloth.

Bookfold.

Bootlaces.

Boot-web, elastic.

Borders, tape and hem-stitched.

Brabants, brown.

Brabants, white.

Braces.

Braid.

Braided.

Bramantes or sheeting, linen.

Bramantes or sheeting, union.

Bright finish.

Brillantine, cotton.

Britannias.

Broché cotton.

Broché stuff or material.

Brown cloth.

Browns, rough or cream, i.e. Hollands.

Buckram.

Cinchas.

Alpin negro, percal negro.

Mantas de cama.

Mantas de bayeta pellón.

Frazadas oscuras de cabrín.

Mantas para caballos, con cabezada.

Mantas de lana.

Persianas.

Persianas transparentes.

Encaje de seda, cruda.

Blondina.

Blusas.

Blusas de lana llanas (lisas), ó de fantasia con encaje.

Blusas adornadas.

Blusas de lana, algodón, seda, &c.

Sobrecorsés.

Travesero.

Bombasí ó alepin de algodón.

Bayeta ordinaria.

Percalina para encuadernar.

Algodón aprensado para encuadernar.

En libreta.

Cordones para calzado, de algodón, cuero, &c.

Persillas de elastico.

Orilla de cordoncitos y dobladillo.

Bramantes crudos.

Bramantes floretes, blancos.

Tirantes.

Trencilla, trenza.

Trenzado, galoneado, acordonado.

Rusias ó bramantes de hilo blanco.

Rusias ó bramantes de hilo y algodón.

Acabado brillo.

Brillantina de algodón.

Bretañas.

Algodón de realce, algodón recamado.

Tegido brochado.

Tela cruda.

Entretelas, crema ó crudas.

Entretela, lanilla.

Bunting.	Estameña, lanilla generos para banderas y vestidos.
Buttons.	Botones.
Cambric.	Cambrai ó batista.
Canvas (hemp sacking).	Lona de cáñamo.
Canvas (jute bed).	Lona de yute para catre.
Carpet, felt.	Alfombra de fieltro.
Carpet, in grain.	Alfombra lisa, sin pelo.
Carpet, stair.	Alfombra de escalera.
Carpet, three-ply.	Alfombra á la escocesa.
Carpet, Turkish.	Alfombra turca, alcatifa.
Carpet, velvet.	Alfombra de terciopelo.
Carpet-bag.	Saco de noche.
Carpet-cleaning machine.	Máquina de limpiar alfombras.
Carpet lining.	Papel de alfombrar.
Carpet stuff.	Género para alfombras.
Carpet sweeper.	Escoba mecánica para barrer alfombras.
Carpeting.	Alfombrado; tripe.
Carpets (cloth, common).	Alfombras de paño burdo.
Carpets (curled crape).	Tapete veneciano de tripe rizado (algodón).
Carpets (printed felt).	Alfombra de fieltro estampada.
Cashmere.	Cachemira.
Cashmere (double milled).	Cachemira apañado.
Cassocks.	Balandran, casacon, sotana.
Castor cloth.	Paño hecho del mismo pelo de castor.
Chain, blue.	Trama azul.
Chain stitch.	Punto de cadeneta.
Chain-stitch seam.	Costura de cadeneta.
Chain stitching.	Bordado al crochet.
Checked.	De cuadros.
Checks (Italian).	Bordado Italiano de algodón.
Chenille.	Felpilla de algodón.
Chenille mats.	Felpudos de algodón.
Chenille needle.	Aguja de tejer felpilla.
Chignons.	Castaña, moño.
Chintz.	Zaraza para muebles.
Cloaks.	Capas, mantas.
Cloaks, men's hooded.	Capas para hombres, con toca.
Cloth, beaver.	Paño de castor.
Cloth, billiard.	Paño de billiar.
Cloth, bleached linen damask.	Manteles blancos de hilo adamas-
Cloth, brattice.	cado.
	Lienzo alquitranado para venti-
	lación.

Cloth, brown.	Tela cruda.
Cloth, coarse.	Paño burdo, basto.
Cloth, coarse, for saddles.	Jerga para monturas.
Cloth, coarse shagged.	Cachera.
Cloth, cotton.	Tejido de algodón.
Cloth, embossed.	Género ó paño estampado.
Cloth, fancy.	Género de capricho.
Cloth, felted.	Paño afieltrado.
Cloth, friezed.	Ratina.
Cloth, fullled.	Paño abatanado.
Cloth, rash.	Sarga apañada.
Cloth, raw.	Paño asargado.
Cloth, scarlet.	Paño de grana.
Cloth, Sedan.	Paño de Sedan.
Cloth, table.	Mantel.
Cloth, tracing.	Tela de calcar.
Cloth, unmilled.	Paño sin tundir.
Cloth, waterproof.	Tela impermeable.
Cloth, woollen.	Tejido de lana; paño.
Cloth, wrong side of.	Paño, contrahaz.
Cloth bars.	Rayas del paño.
Cloth of the first shearing.	Paño de la primera esquiladura.
Cloth of two widths.	Paño de doble ancho.
Coat, double-breasted.	Levita cruzada.
Coat, dress.	Frac, casaca.
Coat, evening.	Frac ó smoking.
Coat, frock.	Levita; frac.
Coat, great.	Sobretudo, abrigo.
Coat, single-breasted.	Levita de una sola botonadura.
Coat, waterproof.	Gaban impermeable.
Coatee.	Casaquin, casaquilla.
Coating, coarse.	Bayeton común.
Coating, spotted.	Bayeton moteado.
Coating, striped.	Bayeton rayado.
Coatings.	Paño para trages; bayetones.
Collar.	Cuello.
Colour, brilliant.	Color vivo, brillante.
Colour, continuous.	Color igual.
Colour, dull.	Color opaco, apagado.
Colour, fading.	Tinte falso.
Colour, fast.	De tinte fijo.
Colour, gaudy.	Color vivo.
Colour, ground.	Fondo, base.
Colour, marbled.	Jaspeado.
Colour, not fast.	De tinte falso.
Colour, plain.	De color entero.
Colour, showy.	Color vistoso.

Combinations.	Camisetas con calzoncillos.
Corahs.	Fulares de China.
Corded fabric.	Tejido acordonado.
Corded silk.	Felpilla.
Corded thread.	Hilo acordonado.
Corduroy.	Tejido acordonado, pana.
Corsets.	Corsés.
Corsets, cane-ribbed.	Corsés con barbas de bijuco.
Corsets, lace.	Corsés de trenza.
Corsets, silk.	Corsés de seda.
Corsets, steel-ribbed.	Corsés con barbas de acero.
Corsets, whalebone-ribbed.	Corsés con barbas de ballena.
Cotton, cambric.	Olan de algodón.
Cotton, cashmere.	Cachemira de algodón.
Cotton, crochet.	Algodón de crochet.
Cotton, curled.	Algodón crespó para sábanas y toallas.
Cotton, darning.	Hilo de zurcir.
Cotton, fancy.	Género de algodón de fantasía.
Cotton, glacé.	Género glacé de algodón.
Cotton, long-stapled.	Algodón de pelo largo.
Cotton, nankeen.	Algodón de Nankin.
Cotton, striped.	Género de algodón rayado.
Cotton, twilled.	Asargado de algodón.
Cotton, waste.	Desperdicio de algodón.
Cotton lace.	Género de punto para camisetas.
Cotton netting.	Género de punta de red.
Cotton tape.	Cinta de algodón.
Cotton warp, cloth with.	Paño con urdimbre de algodón.
Cotton warp, linen with.	Tela de hilo de union.
Cotton yarn.	Hilaza de algodón.
Counterpanes, cotton.	Sobrecamas de algodón.
Counterpanes, embroidered.	Sobrecamas con bordados.
Counterpanes, insertion.	Sobrecamas con embutidos.
Counterpanes, lined.	Sobrecamas forradas.
Counterpanes, quilted.	Sobrecamas colchadas.
Counterpanes, wool.	Sobrecamas de lana.
Counter-stay.	Contracarda.
Covers, furniture.	Cretona para fundas de sillas, &c.
Cravats.	Cravatas, corbatas.
Crepe.	Crespón.
Cretonnes, curtain.	Cretonas de algodón para cortinas.
Cretonnes, damask.	Cretonas de algodón adamascado.
Cretonnes, fancy.	Cretonas de algodón de fantasía.
Cretonnes, furniture.	Cretonas de algodón para muebles.
Cretonnes, plain.	Cretonas de algodón liso.
Cretonnes, twilled.	Cretonas de algodón asargado.

Crown paper

Crowns, hat.

Croydons, striped.

Croydons, white.

Cuffs, blouse.

Cuffs, cotton.

Cuffs, cotton, shirt-.

Cuffs, linen.

Curtain, window.

Curtain hangings.

Curtains, set of.

Cushion.

Cuttings of cloth.

Damask.

Damask, bleached.

Damask, cotton warp.

Damask, fancy figured.

Damask, silk mixture.

Damask tablecloth.

Diaper.

Diaper, bird's-eye.

Domestics.

Domino.

Double casing.

Double medium paper.

Double mesh.

Double royal paper.

Double super royal.

Dowlas.

Dowlas, fancy checked linen.

Dowlas, fancy striped linen.

Down.

Down, eider.

Down bed.

Drawers, ladies' linen.

Drawers, plain gent's.

Drawers, twilled.

Dress, night.

Dressing, stiffening.

Dressing-gowns, cotton.

Dressing-gowns, lace-embroidered.

Papel de 15 X 22 ps. inglesas,
465 X 360 m/m; papel 530 X 398
m/m.

Coronillas ó cascós para sombreros.
Arabís de algodón listados.

Lona, Guayaquil, simpáticos de
algodón.

Puños para blusas.

Puños de algodón.

Puños para camisas de algodón.

Puños de hilo.

Cortina de ventana.

Colgaduras.

Cortinaje.

Cogin, almohadilla.

Recortes de paños y telas.

Damasco, tela de seda ó de hilo.

Alemanisco de hilo blanco.

Trama de urdiembre, de algodón.

Adamascado labrado, de fantasía.

Adamascado con mezcla de seda.

Mantel adamascado.

Lienzo adamascado.

Género moteado.

Tela de algodón comun.

Traje talar con capucha usado para
máscaras, dominó.

Doble forro, doble fondo.

Papel de 24 X 38 ps. inglesas.

Contramalla.

Papel de 26 X 40 ps. inglesas.

Papel de 27 X 42 ps. inglesas.

Lienzo de Douless, paño acolchado.

Cregüelas de hilo y algodón, de
cuadros.

Cregüelas de hilo, con listas.

Plumón.

Plumazon; edredón.

Cama de plumón.

Calzoncillos de lino para señoras.

Calzoncillos llanos para hombres.

Calzoncillos asargados para hom-
bres.

Bata de cama.

Apresto, aderezado.

Batas de algodón.

Batas bordadas con encaje.

Dressing-gowns, trimmed.
Drill, bleached cotton.
Drill, blue cotton.
Drill, cream linen.
Drill, fancy striped.

Drill, fancy woven.
Drill, figured.
Drill, grey.
Drill, plain.
Drill, printed.
Drill, state military linen.
Drill, unbleached.

Duck.
Duck, imperial.
Duck, sail-cloth.
Dull finish.

Edgings.
Face, entire silk.
Face, of cloths, &c.
Fast colour.

Fents.
Figured.
Finish.

Finish, beetled.
Finish, bright.
Finish, dull.

Flannel.
Flannel, white.
Flannelette.
Flounce, dress.

Folding.
Fringe.

Fringe, bullion.
Fringe, dress.
Fringe, trimming.
Fringed chain.
Fronts, shirt.

Fustian.
Fustian, fine.
Gaiters, canvas.
Gaiters, leather.
Gauze.
Gauze, linen.
Gauze, silk.

Batas adornadas.
Dril de algodón blanco.
Dril azul de algodón.
Dril de hilo crema.
Dril, hilo con listas y orillas de colores.

Dril tegido de fantasia.
Dril labrado.
Lienzo asargado; cutí; dril.

Dril liso.
Dril estampado.
Dril militar de hilo plomo.
Dril crudo.

Loneta.
Dril duc imperial de hilo.
Lona para velas.

Acabado mate.
Puntillas.
Faz entera de seda.

La faz; el derecho.
Tinte firme, color fijo.
Retajas, recortes.

Labrado.
Acabado.
Acabado aplastado.

Acabado, brillo.
Acabado, mate.
Franela.

Franela de Sajonia.
Franeleta de algodón.

Vuelo, farbalá, cairel, fleco, volante.

Dobladura.
Franja, márgen, orla, ribete, fleco.

Galon, franja de oro.
Rodapié.
Flocadura.

Cadeneta.
Pecheras para camisas.
Fustan, tela de hilo y algodón.

Cotonía.
Polainas de cañamazo.
Polainas de cuero.

Gaza.
Olan clarin.
Gaza de seda.

Gauze, twilled.	Gaza cruzada.
Gauze, wire.	Tela metálica.
Gig-cloth, American.	Hule para carruage.
Girth buckle.	Hebilla para cinturón (cinchas con hebillas).
Girth strap.	Correa de cincha.
Girth web.	Cinta de cinchar.
Girths, saddle.	Cinchas para monturas.
Gloss, finish.	Lustre, brillo.
Gloves, buff.	Guantes de ante.
Gloves, chicken, skin, Limerick.	Guantes de Limerick.
Gloves, fencing.	Guantes de esgrinia.
Gloves, kid.	Guantes de cabretilla.
Gloves, lace.	Guantes de punto.
Gloves, leather.	Guantes de cuero.
Gloves, mitten.	Mitones, guantes sin dedos.
Gloves, sweet.	Guantes de frangipan.
Gusset, of a shirt.	Cuadrado de camisa.
Gusset, web.	Fajas elásticas.
Haberdashery.	Mercería.
Handkerchiefs.	Pañuelos.
Handkerchiefs, fancy border.	Pañuelos con guarda de mano.
Handkerchiefs, hemmed.	Pañuelos bastillados.
Handkerchiefs, jaconet.	Pañuelos de jacona.
Handkerchiefs, lace-trimmed.	Pañuelos guarnecidos con encaje.
Handkerchiefs, printed cotton.	Pañuelos de algodón estampados.
Handkerchiefs, white cotton.	Pañuelos de algodón blanco.
Hangings, bed.	Cortinas de cama, colgaduras.
Hangings, tapestry.	Empaliada.
Hat, felt.	Sombrero de fieltro.
Hat, high-crowned.	Sombrero de copa alta.
Hat, Leghorn.	Sombrero de paja de Italia.
Hat, Panama.	Sombrero de jipijapa.
Hat, round.	Sombrero hongo.
Hat, silk.	Sombrero de pelo ó de felpa.
Hatband.	Cinta de sombrero.
Hat brim.	Ala de sombrero.
Hat crown.	Copa del sombrero.
Hat lining.	Forro de sombrero.
Hearthrug.	Tapete de hogar; tapiz de chimenea.
Hemstitched.	Con dobladillos.
Hollands, grey.	Holandas crudas; olan crudo.
Hollands, white.	Olan blanco.
Horsehair.	Crin.
Horsehair cloth.	Crinolina.

Horse milliner.	Fabricante de adornos para caballos.
Horse rug.	Manta de caballo.
Hose.	Calcetines.
Hose, socks.	Medias, medias.
Hose band.	Liga.
Hosiery.	Calcetería, tienda de medias.
Hosiery yarn.	Hilo de tejer.
Insertions.	Antolares, tira bordada ó labrada.
Irish linens.	Irlandas.
Italians, figured.	Percalinas labradas.
Italians, Silesias.	Choleta; percalinas.
Jackets, lace.	Chaquetas de encaje ó de punto.
Jaconets.	Chaconá.
Jaconets, printed.	Muselinas de algodón de color.
Jerseys.	Chaquetas de estambre ó punto.
Jute, Hessians.	Arpillera de jute ó cañamo chino.
Jute, printed curtain.	Jute estampado para cortinas.
Lace.	Encaje, randa, pasamano, cordón.
Lace, cotton.	Encaje Inglés, encaje de algodón.
Lace, gold, silver, embroidery.	Esterilla para bordar.
Lace, ground, trimming.	Punto de bobiné.
Lace, Limerick.	Puntas de Irlanda.
Lace, remnants of.	Retazos de puntas ó encajes.
Lace, silk.	Blonda.
Lace, sprigged.	Encaje floreado.
Lace, stitch.	Punto de randa.
Lace, thread.	Hilo para encajes.
Lace, twisted.	Torzal.
Lace, warp.	Puntas de Malinas.
Lace, woven.	Encaje hecho á máquina.
Lambskin.	Corderina, piel de cordero.
Lambskins, grey.	Algodón de pella.
Lambskins, white cotton.	Bambasí blanco de algodón.
Lappets.	Algodones con motitas en relieve.
Lappets, embroidered.	Gasa bordada.
Lawn.	Batista, linó.
Lawn, bleached linen.	Linón de hilo blanqueado.
Lawn, cobweb.	Linó muy fino de fantasía.
Lawn, printed or dyed.	Linón de hilo impreso, ó de color entero.
Lawn, Victoria.	Punto blanco de algodón liso, "Victoria Lawns".
Lawn, white union.	Linó y algodón blanco.
Leather, buckskin.	Gamuza.
Leather, morocco.	Tafilete marroquí.
Leather, sheep's.	Badana.

- Leather-cloth.
 Length, 12 inches.
 Leno muslin.
 Light colour.
 Light makes.
 Linen, bed.
 Linen, bleached.
 Linen, body.
 Linen, brown.
 Linen, diaper, figured.
 Linen, Dutch, Flemish, Flanders.
 Linen, glazed.
 Linen, half.
 Linen, homespun.
 Linen, quilted.
 Linen, table.
 Linen, tape.
 Linen, unbleached.
 Linen goods.
 Linen trade.
 Linen yarn.
 Lining.

 Listings, cotton.
 Long, length.
 Loom, gauze.
 Loom, haircloth.
 Loom Dowlas, union.
 Lustres, cotton generally.
 Lustrings, Italian.
 Mantles, burnous shape.
 Mantles, cloth.
 Mantles, silk-embroidered.
 Matting, coir.
 Matting, for tea chests.
 Mattress.
 Mattress, spring.
 Mittens.
 Mixture, silk, jute, or hemp.

 Mixture, trousering.
 Moleskin.
 Mourning, deep.
 Mourning, half.
 Mufflers.
 Muffs, ladies' fur.

 Hule para la mesa.
 Largo, 30.48 centimetres de tiro.
 Rengue de algodón, linó.
 Color claro.
 Calidades levianas.
 Sábanas.
 Lienzo blanqueado.
 Ropa blanca.
 Bisona, tela de forros.
 Lienzo adamascado.
 Holanda.
 Tela engomada.
 Hilo de union.
 Lienzo doméstico, casero.
 Tela de granos, piqué de hilo.
 Mantelería.
 Cinta de hiladillo.
 Lienzo crudo.
 Géneros de hilo, ó de lienzo.
 Lencería.
 Hilo de lino.
 Entretela, capricho de algodón.
 lino crinolino.
 Listados de algodón.
 Largo, largura, tiro.
 Tela de gasa.
 Paño de crin.
 Coleta de hilo y algodón.
 Lustrinas de algodón, Grisallí.
 Tafetan de lustre italiano.
 Mantas albornoces.
 Mantas de paño.
 Mantas bordadas con seda.
 Estera de coco.
 Estera para embalage.
 Jergón; colchón.
 Jergón de alambre.
 Mitones, confortantes.
 Mezcla de seda, jute, heniquén ó
 cañamo.
 Mezclilla para pantalones.
 Piel de topo.
 Luto rigoroso.
 Medio luto.
 Bufandas.
 Manguítas, estufillas, para
 señoras.

Muslin.
Muslin, cambric.
Muslin, checked.
Muslin, figured.
Muslin, Leno.

Muslin, open.
Muslin, printed.
Muslin, striped.
Nainsooks.
Nankins.
Nap.
Nap, raised cottons.
Nap, pile—warp.
Napkins, bleached linen damask.

Napkins, hemmed.
Napkins, loose.
Napkins in the piece.
Narrow.
Narrow-brimmed (hat).
Narrow cloth.

Neckerchief.
Net, curtain.
Net, lace.
Net, spotted, sprigged.
Netting.
Netting, lace.
Netting, thread-linen.
Netting, white mosquito.
Oilcloth.
Oilcloth, cloth-backed.
Oilcloth, flannelled.
Oilcloth, plain.
Oilcloth, transparent.
Oilcloth, waterproof for hat linings.
Organdi.
Osnaburgs.
Osnaburgs, cream or bleached.
Osnaburgs, grey, stiffened.

Osnaburgs, striped or checked.
Overcoats.
Overcoats, heavy waterproof.

Muselina.
Percala.
Muselina de cuadros.
Muselina labrada.
Rengue de algodón, Perú, gasa de algodón.
Taratana.
Muselina estampada.
Muselina rayada ó de listas.
Nanzús.
Mahones, nanquín.
Lanilla, vello, percha.
Algodón con borra.
Vello del paño.
Servilletas blancas de hilo adamas-cado.
Servilletas con dobladillos.
Servilletas acabadas.
Servilletas en pieza.
Estrecho, angosto, apretado.
Sombrero de ala angosta.
Paño de menos de 52 ps., 851 centimetres.

Corbata.
Tul para cortinas.
Encaje de tul, ó de malla.
Tul de confitillo.
Malla, red, randa, tul.
Punto de red.
Hilo de lino para redes.
Tul, mosquitero blanco.
Encerado, hule.
Hule con revés apañado.
Hule afranelado.
Hule sencillo.
Encerado trasparente.
Encerado para forrar sombreros.

Organdí.
Cregüelas.
Cregüelas crema ó blanqueadas.
Loneta cruda de algodón, lienzo guaraní.
Cregüelas con listas ó de cuadros.
Abrigos, sobretodos, paletós.
Sobretodos impermeables, calidad gruesa.

Oxford stripes.
 Packthread.
 Padding, cotton.
 Pads.
 Pairs, in.
 Parasol.
 Parasolette.
 Pattern.

Peekey, piqué.
 Pekin.
 Petticoats.
 Petticoats, embroidered.
 Petticoats, prints.
 Petticoats, trimmed.
 Piece goods.

Pieces, cloth in.

Pillow, horsehair.
 Pillow, small.
 Pillow fustian.
 Pillow lace.
 Pillow slips.
 Pincushion.
 Plain.
 Plain back.
 Plain cloth.
 Plain colour.
 Plain fabric.
 Plain ground.
 Plain lace.
 Plain linen.
 Plush cotton.
 Plush feather.
 Plush silk.
 Plushed cottons.
 Ponchos, baize-lined cloth.

Ponchos, velvet-collar mackintosh.
 Ponchos, waterproof.
 Pongees, dyed.
 Poplins, fancy.
 Poplins, Irish.
 Printed cotton.
 Printed cotton skirtings.

Regadina de algodón.
 Bramante, guita.
 Entretela, imprimación.
 Franela estampada.
 En pares.
 Quitasol, sombrilla, parasol.
 Sombrilla pequeña.
 Modelo, dechado, muestra, patron.
 Piqué.
 Seda de China.
 Enaguas, sayas, faldas.
 Enaguas bordadas.
 Zagalejos, jupón.
 Enaguas adornadas.
 Géneros vendidos por piezas, fardera.
 En piezas, retazos, piezas de género.
 Almohada de crin.
 Almohadilla, cojincillo.
 Fustana de dos caras.
 Encaje para almohadas.
 Fundas para almohadas.
 Alfiletero, acerfco.
 Liso, común, ordinario, sencillo.
 Pana de fondo unido.
 Paño liso.
 Color entero.
 Tejido unido, liso.
 Fondo unido, liso.
 Encaje lleno.
 Lienzo unido.
 Felpa de algodón, tripe.
 Felpa de pluma y lana.
 Frisado, felpilla de seda.
 Algodones afelpados.
 Ponchos de paño con forro de bayeta.
 Ponchos impermeables con cuello de terciopelo.
 Ponchos impermeables.
 Batista teñida.
 Popelinas de fantasía.
 Popelinas irlandesas.
 Indiana, zaraza, quimon.
 Enaguas, jupón.

Printed goods.
 Printed leather.
 Printed muslin.
 Prints, black.
 Prints, Chinese.
 Prints, fancy.
 Prints, fancy dress.
 Prints, fancy white ground.
 Prints, plain ground.

Quilt.
 Quilted cotton.
 Quilted linen.
 Quilted stuff.
 Quilting.
 Reels.

Regattas, cotton.
 Ribbon guard for a hat.
 Ribbons, baby.
 Ribbons, Chiné.
 Ribbons, fancy.
 Ribbons, ferret.
 Ribbons, flaring.
 Ribbons, goffered.
 Ribbons, imitation gold, silver.
 Ribbons, narrow
 Ribbons, plaid.
 Ribbons, plain.
 Ribbons, plush, velvet, cotton-
 faced, figured, glossed, &c.

Ribbons, silk, half an inch wide.
 Ribbons, twilled.
 Rough cloth.
 Roughts, cream.
 Rove.
 Roving.
 Roving, coarse.
 Roving, fine.
 Rug, hearth.
 Rug, horse.
 Rugs.
 Russia sheetings.
 Sacking, tick.
 Sacking, plain, twilled, jute, and
 tow.

Géneros estampados.
 Guadamacil.
 Muselina estampada.
 Percales negros.
 Zarazas chinas.
 Percales de fantasía.
 Trages de zaraza fantasía.
 Percales, fondo blanco.
 Indianas de fondo liso.
 Sobrecama, cobertor, colcha.
 Algodón picado.
 Tela de granos, piqué de hilo.
 Estofa.
 Acolchadura.
 Carretes, medida de 54 ps. en al-
 godón, ó lino, 7 de 30 ps. en
 estambre.
 Regatas de algodón.
 Barbiquejo.
 Cintas angostas para adornos.
 Cintas adamascadas.
 Cintas de capricho.
 Cintas de hiladillo.
 Cintas vistosas.
 Cintas estampadas.
 Cintas imitación oro, plata.
 Melindre, bocadillo.
 Cintas escocesas.
 Cintas lisas.
 Cintas de felpa, terciopelo, faz de
 algodón, labradas, azargadas,
 glacé, &c.
 Cintas, media, colonia.
 Cintas cruzadas.
 Paño sin abatanar.
 Entretelas crema.
 Madeja de lana tirada.
 Primera torsión.
 Mechon.
 Hilo flojo, mecha.
 Tapiz de chimenea, hogar.
 Manta de caballo.
 Felpudos, tapetes, frazadas.
 Rusias, bramante de hilo, brines.
 Terliz, cotin.
 Cañamazo drilete para sacos, &c.

Sacking, striped, twilled, jute, and tow.	Cañamazo drilete con listas para sacos, &c.
Saddle bags.	Alforjas, en Méjico, cojinillos.
Saddle belt, saddle girth.	Cincha.
Saddle cloth.	Paño de la silla de montar.
Saddle cloths, fringed.	Caronas, sudaderas con franja.
Sailcloth.	Lona para velas.
Sarcanet, plain, single, or double.	Florencia sencilla ó doble.
Sateen.	Rasete, raso de algodón, satinete.
Sateen-faced.	Arrasado.
Satin.	Raso.
Satin, figured.	Raso labrado.
Satin, plain.	Raso liso.
Satin, ribbed.	Raso acanillado.
Satin stitch.	Mosqueteado.
Screen, folding.	Biombo, persiana.
Seam.	Costura.
Seam, back.	Pespunte, puntoatras.
Seam, chain-stitch.	Costura de cadeneta.
Seam, closing.	Remate.
Seam, false.	Costura simulada.
Seam, hem, turned in.	Costura dobladillada.
Seam, lace.	Pasamanería.
Seam, lap.	Costura rebatida.
Seam, monk, moses.	Costura solapada, doble ó de fraile.
Seam, opened.	Costura abierta.
Seam, quilting.	Costura acolchada.
Seam, stitch.	Repulgo.
Seamless.	Sin costura.
Serge, cotton.	Sempiterno de algodón, rasilla, sarga.
Serge, milled.	Sarga apañada.
Serge, shaggy.	Sarga afelpada.
Serge, thin, light.	Sargueta.
Serge, twilled.	Sarga cruzada ó diagonal.
Serge, woollen.	Anascote.
Shawls.	Chales, mantas, rebozos.
Shawls, in Mexico.	Tápalos.
Shawls, men's, in Mexico.	Sarapes.
Sheeting.	Lencería para sábanas, brin.
Sheeting, grey cotton, double width.	Lienzo crudo de algodón de doble ancho.
Sheeting, linen.	Bramantes ó Rusias de hilo.
Sheeting, unbleached.	Sábanas afelpadas.
Shirt, flannel.	Camisa de franela.
Shirt, guernsey.	Camiseta de lana.

Shirt, night.	Camisa de dormir, bata.
Shirt, ruffled.	Camisola.
Shirt collar.	Cuello de camisa.
Shirt cuffs.	Puños de camisa.
Shirt front.	Pechera de camisa.
Shirt loop.	Tirilla de la camisa.
Shirt sleeve.	Manga de camisa.
Shirt tail.	Faldon de camisa.
Shirting.	Tela para camisas.
Shirting, cotton.	Géneros finos de algodón.
Shirting, imperial.	Imperial.
Shirting, prints.	Zarazas.
Shirting, white.	Mandapolan, bramante blanco de algodón.
Shoddy.	Desechos de lana, lana artificial.
Shot, as of silks.	Tornasolado, pasos.
Shot, colour.	Tornasol.
Shot, fabric.	Género tornasolado.
Silesias.	Percalinas, choleta, silesia.
Silk.	Seda, tejido de seda.
Silk, black corded.	Paño de seda.
Silk, bleached.	Seda blanqueada.
Silk, blonde.	Encaje de seda cruda.
Silk, coarse.	Cadarzo.
Silk, corded.	Seda acordonada, paño de seda.
Silk, cotton.	Seda vegetal.
Silk, crossed.	Seda cruzada.
Silk, dressed.	Seda aderezada.
Silk, embroidering.	Seda para bordar.
Silk, figured.	Seda labrada.
Silk, flowered.	Espolin, seda espolinada.
Silk, French glossy.	Seda joyante francesa.
Silk, India.	Seda de la India.
Silk, inferior.	Azache.
Silk, levantine.	Seda de Levante.
Silk, oiled.	Tafetan encerado.
Silk, raw.	Seda en rama, pelo de seda.
Silk, shot with warp and web of different colours.	Sedas batidas tornasoladas.
Silk, slack, soft, untwisted.	Seda floja.
Silk, sleeve.	Seda en ovillos.
Silk, spun.	Seda hilada.
Silk, twilled.	Seda de cadeneta.
Silk, watered.	Muaré.
Silk lace.	Blonda.
Silk muslin.	Muselina de seda.
Silk net.	Tul de seda.

- Silk netting.
 Silk plush.
 Silk tassel.
 Silk waste.
 Silk yarn.
 Singlets.
 Skeins.
 Skirtings, printed.
 Slip bodices.
 Socks.

 Soles of boots and shoes.
 Splits, dyed.

 Splits, prints, &c.
 Spots, white raised. ("Lappets").
 Spotted, blue (grab).
 Spotted, sprigged, net.
 Spotted or speckled.
 Spotty.
 Sprigged, lace.
 Sprigs, muslin with.
 Stays.
 Stiffening, cloth.
 Stiffening, finish.
 Stitch, back.
 Stitch, basting, running.
 Stitch, chain, lock, tambour.
 Stitch, cross.
 Stitch, cut.
 Stitch, darning.
 Stitch, double.
 Stitch, fastening.
 Stitch, festoon.
 Stitch, flower.
 Stitch, half.
 Stitch, hem.
 Stitch, herring-bone.
 Stitch, kettle.
 Stitch, knot.
 Stitch, lace.
 Stitch, loop.
 Stitch, to, loosely.
 Stitch, satin.
 Stitch, tapestry.
 Stitch, whip.
 Stitch, zigzag.
- Cordoncillo de seda.
 Frisado, felpilla de seda.
 Madroño, borla de seda.
 Desperdicios de seda, cadargo.
 Hilo de seda.
 Camisolas.
 Madejas, ovillos, cadejos.
 Enaguas; jupón.
 Sobrecorsés.
 Medias medias, calcetines ó calcetas.
 Suelas, plantillas de calzado.
 Racete de algodón de color, con orillas falsas.
 Zarazas con orillas falsas.
 Algodón con motitas en relieve.
 Picado.
 Tul de confitillo.
 Manchado ó abigarrado.
 Manchado, moteado.
 Encaje floreado.
 Muselina de ramazones bordadas.
 Corsés.
 Capricho de algodón: entretela.
 Aderezo; apresto.
 Pespunte.
 Bastilla.
 Punto de cadeneta.
 Punto cruzado.
 Punto de relieve.
 Punto de zurcido.
 Punto de dos hilos.
 Punto de remate.
 Punto de adorno.
 Puntadas cruzadas.
 Media malla.
 Dobladillo de ojo.
 Punto espigado.
 Punto alto y bajo.
 Punto de nudo.
 Punto de randa.
 Punto de croché.
 Bastear.
 Mosqueteado, de cordoncito.
 Punto de tapicería.
 Sobrecostura.
 Punto de zig-zag.

Stocking, net, web.
 Stockingette.
 Stockings, fulled, milled.
 Stockings, half-s.
 Stockings, open-work.
 Stockings, ribbed.

Stockings, woollen.
 Stockings, worsted.
 Stockings, woven.
 String.
 Striped.
 Stripes, Bengal.

Stripes, Bengal cotton.
 Stripes, fancy.
 Stripes, pantaloons.
 Stripes, satin.
 Strips.
 Stuffs, chiné, clouded, warped,
 watered.

Stuffs, furniture.
 Stuffs, open clear, open worked.
 Stuffs, silk.
 Stuffs, spotted or speckled.
 Stuffs, striped.
 Suitings, men's, women's.

Suitings, waterproof.
 Suits, bathing.
 Suits, children's.
 Suits, fancy.
 Suspenders.
 Suspenders, indiarubber and
 cotton-faced.
 "T" cloths.

Tablecloth.
 Tablecover.

Tape.
 Taped handkerchiefs.
 Tapestry.
 Tapestry, Bergamo, scalloped.

Tapestry, Gobelins.
 Tapestry, high warp.

Punto de media.
 Tejido de malla.
 Medias abatanadas.
 Medias medias, calcetines.
 Medias caladas.
 Medias estriadas, acanilladas ó de
 cortadillo.
 Medias de lana.
 Medias de estambre.
 Medias tejidas.
 Bramante, gaita.
 De listas, de rayas, ó listado.
 Guinga, Carrancian, guingamba
 (S. America).
 Coleta de listas de algodón.
 Rayado capricho (Spain).
 Coleta de listas y cuadros.
 Paño pequinado (Spain).
 Tiras.
 Chiné.

Géneros para forrar muebles.
 Género calado.
 Sederías.
 Tegidos abigarrados.
 Género listado.
 Géneros para trages de hombre y
 señora.
 Vestidos ó trages impermeables.
 Vestidos para baños.
 Tragecitos para niños.
 Vestidos de fantasía.
 Tirantes.
 Tirantes de gebe, con faz de
 algodón.
 Lienzo liso, tocuyo; nanta cruda
 de algodón.
 Mantel de mesa.
 Sobremesa, tapete de mesa, cubre-
 mesa.
 Cinta.
 Pañuelos con cordoncitos.
 Tapicería, colgaduras, tapiz.
 Tapicería de Bergamo, ó en es-
 camas.
 Tapicería de los Gobelinos.
 Tapicería de lazos altos.

Tapestry, with landscapes.	Paños de lampazos.
Tapestry hangings.	Empaliada.
Tarlatan, white cotton.	Tarlatana de algodón blanco.
Tarpaulin.	Lienzo alquitranado, encerado.
Thread, bailing.	Hilo de acarreto.
Thread, basting.	Hilo de hilvanar.
Thread, corded.	Hilo acordonado.
Thread, Coventry.	Hilo de marcar.
Thread, elephant.	Hilo acordonado.
Thread, extra.	Hilo de refuerzo.
Thread, fine pack.	Volantin, bolantin.
Thread, Flanders.	Hilo de Holanda.
Thread, four-threaded.	Cuerda de cuatro hilos, ó de cuatro mechas.
Thread, front.	Hilos delanteros.
Thread, gilling.	Hilo de Irlanda para redes.
Thread, glacé.	Hilo de algodón glaseado.
Thread, hemp.	Hilo de cañamo.
Thread, homespun.	Hilo hecho á mano.
Thread, linen.	Hilo torcido.
Thread, loose.	Caeduras.
Thread, on spools.	Hilo en carreteles.
Thread, packing.	Hilo de empacar.
Thread, raw, unbleached.	Hilo crudo.
Thread, skein.	Hilo en madejas.
Thread, twisted, in the warp.	Escarabajos.
Thread in balls.	Hilo en ovillos.
Thread lace.	Encaje de hilo.
Thrum.	Hilo grueso, cabo de hilo, eadillo.
Tick, coloured cotton.	Cotin de algodón de color.
Tick, grey union.	Cutí, crudo de lino y algodón.
Ticking, bed, sacking.	Terliz, terlí, cotin.
Tow.	Estopa, filástica, hilaza.
Towels, bath.	Toallas de baño.
Towels, jack, roller, round.	Toallas continuas ó gratorias.
Towels (Turkish).	Toallas turcas.
Trimmings.	Recortes, adornos, guarniciones, pasamanería.
Trimmings, fringe.	Flocadura.
Trimmings, lace.	Adorno de encajes y blondas, pasamanería.
Trouserings, fancy cotton.	Casinetas con frisas.
Trouserings, riding.	Calzones de montar á caballo.
Trousers.	Pantalones, calzones.
Tulle, beaded.	Tul con avalorios.
Tulle, bobbin.	Tul de ilusión.
Tulle, mosquito.	Tul para mosquiteros.

Turkey-red.	Coco punzo, rojo turco ó de Andrinópolis.
Turkey-red handkerchiefs.	Pañuelos de pola (Venezuela and adjacent islands).
Turkish-blue.	Azul turquí.
Turkish carpet.	Alfombra turca, alcatifa.
Turkish gloves.	Guantes para dar fricciones.
Turkish Morocco.	Marroquí de Levante.
Twill.	Cruzado.
Twill, biased, regular.	Sarga diagonal.
Twill, broken.	Raso.
Twill, cloth.	Tela cruzada, asargada ó diagonal.
Twill, fancy.	Batavia.
Twill, four-leaved.	Sarga de cuadrículas.
Twill, grey.	Fustan gris.
Twill, reversed, turned.	Sarga revesa.
Twill, striped.	Sarga de listas arrasadas.
Twill, three-leaved.	Sarga de triángulos.
Twilled.	Asargado.
Twilled cassimere.	Casimí cruzado, diagonal.
Twilled cotton.	Bombasí.
Twilled gauze.	Gasa cruzada.
Twilled swansdown.	Paño de vicuña diagonal.
Twills, dyed or printed, beetled, Silesias.	Percalinas asargadas, teñidas ó estampadas.
Twine, sail.	Hilo de velero.
Twines.	Hilos retorcidos, bramantes, guitas, hilo de acarreto.
Twist, double mule.	Hilo torzal doble.
Twist, false.	Torsión errada.
Twist, lace.	Encaje torzal.
Twist, mohair.	Hilo de Turquí.
Twist, mule.	Algodón hilado en mule jenny.
Twist, throstle.	Cadena hilada.
Twisted.	Arrollado, torcido, trenzado, colchado.
Twisted cord.	Cordon retorcido.
Twisted fringe.	Entorchado.
Unions.	Coleta de hilo y algodón.
Unions, blue and white striped.	Driles de mezcla rayados con azul y blanco.
Unions, merino.	Merino mezcla, lana y algodón.
Upholstering.	Tapicería.
Velvet.	Terciopelo.
Velvet, black.	Negro aterciopelado.
Velvet, cotton.	Terciopelo de algodón.

Velvet, double-backed.
 Velvet, figured.
 Velvet, flowered.
 Velvet, imitation work.
 Velvet, plain.
 Velvet, plain back.
 Velvet, ribbed.
 Velvet, short nap.
 Velvet, shot.
 Velvet, terry.
 Velvet, three-cord, three-pile.
 Velvet, twilled.
 Velvet, Utrecht, woollen, worsted.
 Velvet carpet.
 Velvet down.
 Velvet lace.
 Velvet ribbon.
 Velveteen.
 Velvetlike.
 Venetian blinds.
 Venetian carpet.
 Venetian stuff.
 Vest.
 Vesting.
 Victoria lawn, plain.
 Wadding.
 Warp.
 Warp, crossed.
 Warp, cut.
 Warp, hair.
 Warp, main.
 Warp, of 2000 threads.
 Warp, of 2200 threads.
 Warp, of 2400 threads.
 Warp, of 2600 threads.
 Warp, of 2800 threads.
 Warp, pile.
 Warp, ring.
 Warp, staffs.
 Warp, stiff.
 Warp and woof.
 Warp cord.
 Warp ends.
 Warp lace.
 Warp reel.
 Warp thread.
 Wash leather.

Terciopelo con revers de pana.
 Terciopelo estampado.
 Terciopelo con ramazones.
 Tripe, sana, moqueta.
 Terciopelo liso.
 Terciopelo unido.
 Terciopelo acanillado.
 Terciopelo arrasado.
 Terciopelo pulimentado.
 Terciopelo rizado, estriado.
 Terciopelo de tres hilos.
 Terciopelo diagonal.
 Terciopelo de lana.
 Alfombra de terciopelo.
 Felpa.
 Felpilla, cinta de terciopelo.
 Cinta de terciopelo.
 Pana.
 Terciopelado, aterciopelado.
 Celosías, persianas.
 Alfombra veneciana.
 Damasquillo.
 Chaleco.
 Filoseda, género para chalecos.
 Punto blanco de algodón liso.
 Entretela, algodón en rama.
 Urdimbre, ó urdiembre.
 Tejido diagonal.
 Vello del paño.
 Urdimbre de crin.
 Fondo del terciopelo.
 Veinteno.
 Veintidoseno.
 Veintecuatreno.
 Veinteseiseno.
 Veinteocheno.
 Cadena de pelo.
 Cadeneta.
 Lizos altos de la pasamanería.
 Cadena media.
 Trama y urdimbre.
 Lizo.
 Cadillos.
 Punto de Malinas, punto de bobiné.
 Urdidor largo.
 Hilo de urdimbre.
 Gamuza.

Waste silk.	Borra de seda, Cadargo.
Waste wool.	Borra de lana, desperdicios de lana.
Watered.	Moaré.
Watered silk.	Moaré antiguo.
Waterproof coats.	Gabanes impermeables.
Wearing apparel.	Ropa de uso.
Web, cotton girth.	Trencilla de algodón.
Webbing.	Cincha.
Webbing, boot.	Cordoncillo para bordar adornos en el calzado.
Weft.	Trama, tejido, trenza.
Wick, cotton.	Mecha, torcida, pabilo de algodón.
Wide.	Ancho, estenso, amplio, vasto espacioso.
Width.	Anchura, extensión.
Width, double.	Doble ancho.
Wool, back finish, spine.	Lana madre.
Wool, Berlin.	Lana para bordar, estambre.
Wool, best Queretaro.	Lana de Chinchorro.
Wool, carded.	Lana cardada.
Wool, Cashmere.	Lana de cachemira.
Wool, China.	Cosmético de lana.
Wool, coarse.	Lana churla ó burda.
Wool, cod.	Lana muerta.
Wool, comb.	Trancon, entrepeine.
Wool, combing.	Lana larga.
Wool, conej.	Lana de conejo.
Wool, Dutch half.	Friseta.
Wool, Electoral.	Lana de merino de Sajonia.
Wool, felt.	Lana feltrada.
Wool, fine carded.	Lana fina hilada, estambre.
Wool, fleece.	Vellon, toison, tuson.
Wool, flock.	Borra de lana.
Wool, guanaco.	Lana de guanaco.
Wool, long staple.	Lana larga de cardar.
Wool, loose.	Lana floja.
Wool, merino or Spanish.	Lana de merino.
Wool, mixed.	Lana mestiza.
Wool, picked, sorted.	Lana escogida.
Wool, raw.	Lana cruda ó en bruto.
Wool, spun.	Lana hilada.
Wool, tapestry.	Lana de Ternaux.
Wool, washed.	Lana lavada.
Woollen stuff.	Género de lana.
Worsted, fancy.	Paño de lana de fantasía.
Worsted, middle.	Estambre entrefino.

- Worsted, shag.
 Worsted stuff.
 Worsted velvet.
 Worsted yarn, double.
 Worsteds.
 Woven lace.
 Wrap.
 Wrapping paper.
 Wraps, shawls.
 Yard.

 Yarn.
 Yarn, cambric, fine.
 Yarn, carded, Genappe, small
 ware.
 Yarn, cotton.
 Yarn, double, two-cord.
 Yarn, Ermland.
 Yarn, even, smooth.
 Yarn, fancy.
 Yarn, flax.
 Yarn, hard.
 Yarn, hemp.
 Yarn, hosiery, knitting, stocking.
 Yarn, jute rove.
 Yarn, linen.
 Yarn, lustre.
 Yarn, mohair.
 Yarn, sail.
 Yarn, spruce.
 Yarn, woollen.
 Yarn, worsted.
 Zephyr prints.
 Zephyrs, grey-ground striped.
 Zephyrs, plain.
 Zephyrs, striped cotton.

 Triple felpudo.
 Tela de estambre.
 Terciopelo de lana.
 Estambre retorcido.
 Estambre, lana de tejer.
 Encaje hecho á máquina.
 Medida de 300 yardas.
 Papel de envolver.
 Chales, rebozos.
 Yarda, medida inglesa igual á
 0.914.383 m/m.
 Filástica, hilo en general.
 Hilo finísimo.
 Hilo peinado.

 Hilaza de algodón.
 Hilo retorcido.
 Hilo de coser.
 Hilo unido.
 Hilo de fantasía.
 Hilo de lino.
 Hilo torcido.
 Hilo de cañamo.
 Hilo de tejer.
 Trenza de yute.
 Hilaza de lino.
 Hilo de estambre.
 Hilo de pelo de cabra.
 Hilo de vela.
 Hilo crudo.
 Estambre.
 Hilaza de estambre.
 Listados frances.
 Listados de algodón ordinarios.
 Grisalli de algodón (River Plate).
 Arabís de algodón listados.

Pg 155
que

14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

17 Jan '63 RA

REC'D LD

JAN 4 1963

20 Jan '65 VB

REC'D LD

JAN 30 '65 - 10 AM

FEB 09 1998

LD 21A-50m-3, '62
(C7097s10)476B

YC 01059

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C061313794

265292

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

